**C9500**

**DPoE EPON OLT**

**Version 1.02**

**CO-108250-EN**

Copyrightⓒ CommScope Inc. All rights Reserved.

Without prior written approval of CommScope, any contents included in this document shall not be reproduced, copied, or partially extracted in any kind of format, including electrical, mechanical, and acoustical media, and in any other reason.

The information regarding the product in this guide is subject to change without notice for specific reasons.

The figures and information regarding the product in this guide may include some errata and printing errors. Those will be removed and corrected in the next revision version.

## Preface

This preface provides an overview of the C9500 user guide, setting out guide conventions, and listing other publications that may be useful.

### Introduction

This guide provides the information required for configuring and operating the network environment after the installation of the C9500 hardware.

The target readers of this guide are ethernet-based network administrators and related engineers who are responsible for installing and setting network equipment. This guide will help them configure optimum networks and operate & manage them more effectively. This guide also provides information on how to solve problems that may occur during the network operation. Therefore, this guide assumes that readers have a basic working knowledge of:

* Local Area Networks (LAN) and Metro Area Network (MAN)
* Ethernet, Fast Ethernet, and Gigabit Ethernet concepts
* Ethernet switching and bridging concepts
* Routing concepts
* TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol) concepts
* Routing Information Protocol (RIP) and Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)
* Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Notice** | For more information on the installation and the initial configuration of C9500 hardware, refer to the hardware installation guide of each system. |

### Conventions

The following Conventions Table and list conventions and icons used throughout this guide.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Text Convention | Description |
| Screen displays | The information displayed on the OAM terminal screen as a result of command execution  This typeface indicates command syntax |
| **Screen displays bold** | This typeface indicates how you would type a particular command |
| [Key] Input | To indicate pressing a key of the keyboard, a square bracket is used with the key, for example, [Enter] or [Ctrl].  When two or more keys are pressed at the same time, the two keys are connected with ‘+’, for example, [Ctrl] + [z] |
| *Italics* | Used to emphasize a point or denote new terms where they are defined in the text.  Parameters that users enter in the system command syntax |

### Notice and Warning Icons

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Icon | Type | Description |
|  | Notice | Important features, characteristics, commands or tips |
|  | Warning | There is a danger of bodily injury, data loss, or system damage |

### Related Documents

For additional information on this equipment, refer to the following manuals:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Manual | Contents |
| *Hardware Installation Guide* | Switch hardware installation  Initial operating environment configuration  Trouble Shooting |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Notice** | Updated document or specification can be acquired from the homepage of CommScope at [http://www.CommScope.com](http://www.ubiquoss.com) . |

## Table of Contents

[Preface 1](#_Toc444694486)

[Introduction 1](#_Toc444694487)

[Conventions 1](#_Toc444694488)

[Notice and Warning Icons 3](#_Toc444694489)

[Related Documents 3](#_Toc444694490)

[Table of Contents 4](#_Toc444694491)

[Chapter 1. Overview 21](#_Toc444694878)

[Command Line Editor and Help 22](#_Toc444694879)

[Command Syntax 22](#_Toc444694880)

[Command Syntax Helper 22](#_Toc444694881)

[Abbreviated Syntax 24](#_Toc444694882)

[Command Symbols 24](#_Toc444694883)

[Command Line Editing Key and Help Function 25](#_Toc444694884)

[Switch Command Mode 26](#_Toc444694885)

[C9500 Series startup 27](#_Toc444694886)

[User Interface 28](#_Toc444694887)

[Connection through Console Port 28](#_Toc444694888)

[Connection through Telnet 29](#_Toc444694889)

[Connection through SSH 29](#_Toc444694890)

[Connection through SNMP Network Manager 29](#_Toc444694891)

[User Management 30](#_Toc444694892)

[Add/Delete User 30](#_Toc444694893)

[Password Setting 31](#_Toc444694894)

[AAA (Authentication Authorization Accounting) 34](#_Toc444694895)

[Authentication 34](#_Toc444694896)

[User Authentication 34](#_Toc444694897)

[Setting User Authentication 36](#_Toc444694898)

[Authorization 36](#_Toc444694899)

[Accounting 38](#_Toc444694900)

[Session Access Management 38](#_Toc444694901)

[Privilege level Configuration 39](#_Toc444694902)

[Server Configuration 41](#_Toc444694903)

[RADIUS Server Configuration 41](#_Toc444694904)

[TACACS+ Server Configuration 42](#_Toc444694905)

[Setting Hostname 43](#_Toc444694906)

[SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) 45](#_Toc444694907)

[SNMP Configuration 45](#_Toc444694908)

[SNMP Community 45](#_Toc444694909)

[SNMP Trap host 46](#_Toc444694910)

[SNMP Trap 48](#_Toc444694911)

[SNMPv3 Configuration 48](#_Toc444694912)

[SNMP engineID 49](#_Toc444694913)

[User of SNMPv3 50](#_Toc444694914)

[ACL (Access Control List) 51](#_Toc444694915)

[Rules for ACL Creation 51](#_Toc444694916)

[Configuration of Standard IP Access List 51](#_Toc444694917)

[Configuration of Access List for Telnet Connection 52](#_Toc444694918)

[Banner Configuration 53](#_Toc444694919)

[AFSMGR (Alarm Fault Status Manager) 55](#_Toc444694920)

[Setting AFS Alarm 55](#_Toc444694921)

[Clear AFS Alarm Event 56](#_Toc444694922)

[Clearing AFS history 56](#_Toc444694923)

[Setting AFS Masking Function 57](#_Toc444694924)

[Setting AFS Severity Class 57](#_Toc444694925)

[Setting AFS SNMP Trap 58](#_Toc444694926)

[Changing AFS Configuration with default-config 59](#_Toc444694927)

[Chapter 2. Interface environment setting 60](#_Toc444694928)

[Overview 61](#_Toc444694929)

[Common Commands 62](#_Toc444694930)

[Interface name 62](#_Toc444694931)

[Interface id 62](#_Toc444694932)

[Interface mode prompt 63](#_Toc444694933)

[Description Command 63](#_Toc444694934)

[Show Interface Information 64](#_Toc444694935)

[Show interface Command 64](#_Toc444694936)

[Show Interface status Command 64](#_Toc444694937)

[Show interface trunk Command 65](#_Toc444694938)

[show idprom Command 65](#_Toc444694939)

[Physical Port Configuration 68](#_Toc444694940)

[Shutdown 68](#_Toc444694941)

[Speed and duplex 68](#_Toc444694942)

[Uplink Line Speed setting 68](#_Toc444694943)

[Storm Control 70](#_Toc444694944)

[Port mirroring 71](#_Toc444694945)

[Layer 2 Interface Configuration 72](#_Toc444694946)

[VLAN Trunking 72](#_Toc444694947)

[Layer 2 Interface mode 72](#_Toc444694948)

[Layer 2 Interface Defaults 72](#_Toc444694949)

[Enabling/disabling Layer 2 Interface 72](#_Toc444694950)

[Trunk port setting 73](#_Toc444694951)

[Access port setting 73](#_Toc444694952)

[Port group 75](#_Toc444694953)

[Overview of Port Group 75](#_Toc444694954)

[Port group configuration 75](#_Toc444694955)

[MAC Filtering 76](#_Toc444694956)

[MAC Filtering Overview 76](#_Toc444694957)

[MAC Filtering Setting 76](#_Toc444694958)

[MAC Filtering according to CPU Load 77](#_Toc444694959)

[MAC Filtering according to CPU Load OverView 77](#_Toc444694960)

[MAC Filtering according to CPU Load Setting 77](#_Toc444694961)

[Traffic-control 78](#_Toc444694962)

[Traffic-control OverView 78](#_Toc444694963)

[Traffic-control Setting 78](#_Toc444694964)

[Chapter 3. VLAN 79](#_Toc444694965)

[VLAN overview 80](#_Toc444694966)

[Advantages of VLAN 81](#_Toc444694967)

[Efficient Traffic Control 81](#_Toc444694968)

[Enhanced Network Security 81](#_Toc444694969)

[Flexible Network and Device management 81](#_Toc444694970)

[VLAN Types 82](#_Toc444694971)

[Port-based VLANs 82](#_Toc444694972)

[Tagged VLANs 84](#_Toc444694973)

[Uses of Tagged VLANs 84](#_Toc444694974)

[Assigning a VLAN Tag 84](#_Toc444694975)

[Hybrid VLAN (Mixing Port-based VLAN and Tagged VLAN) 85](#_Toc444694976)

[VLAN Configuration 86](#_Toc444694977)

[VLAN ID 86](#_Toc444694978)

[Default VLAN 86](#_Toc444694979)

[Native VLAN 86](#_Toc444694980)

[VLAN Setting 87](#_Toc444694981)

[Commands for VLAN Configuration 87](#_Toc444694982)

[Examples of VLAN Configuration 88](#_Toc444694983)

[Displaying VLAN Settings 92](#_Toc444694984)

[Private Edge VLAN 93](#_Toc444694985)

[Chapter 4. IP Configuration 94](#_Toc444694986)

[Assigning an IP address 95](#_Toc444694987)

[ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) 96](#_Toc444694988)

[Configuring Static Routes 97](#_Toc444694989)

[IP Configuration Example 98](#_Toc444694990)

[Chapter 5. DHCP 100](#_Toc444694991)

[DHCP Server Features and Configuration 101](#_Toc444694992)

[Overview of DHCP Server Functions 101](#_Toc444694993)

[DHCP Pool Configuration 103](#_Toc444694994)

[Enabling DHCP Server Function 107](#_Toc444694995)

[DHCP relay agent Features and Configuration 108](#_Toc444694996)

[DHCP relay agent Overview 108](#_Toc444694997)

[Enabling DHCP Relay Function 108](#_Toc444694998)

[DHCP Server Configuration on DHCP Relay Agent 109](#_Toc444694999)

[DHCP relay information option (OPTION82) Configuration 110](#_Toc444695000)

[DHCP Smart Relay Configuration 112](#_Toc444695001)

[DHCP Relay Verify MAC-Address Configuration 113](#_Toc444695002)

[DHCP relay rate-limit Set-up 114](#_Toc444695003)

[DHCP Class based DHCP packet forwarding 116](#_Toc444695004)

[DHCP Snooping Function 118](#_Toc444695005)

[DHCP Snooping Function Overview 118](#_Toc444695006)

[Activation of DHCP Snooping Function 118](#_Toc444695007)

[DHCP Snooping Vlan Configuration 119](#_Toc444695008)

[DHCP Snooping information option (OPTION82) Configuration 119](#_Toc444695009)

[DHCP Snooping Trust Port Configuration 120](#_Toc444695010)

[DHCP Snooping max-entry Configuration 121](#_Toc444695011)

[DHCP Snooping Entry Time Configuration 122](#_Toc444695012)

[DHCP Snooping Rate-Limit Configuration 122](#_Toc444695013)

[DHCP Snooping Verify MAC-Address Configuration 122](#_Toc444695014)

[DHCP Server Monitoring and Management 124](#_Toc444695015)

[DHCP Server Pool Information Inquiry 124](#_Toc444695016)

[DHCP Server Binding Information Search 124](#_Toc444695017)

[DHCP Server Statistics Search 124](#_Toc444695018)

[DHCP Server Conflict Search 124](#_Toc444695019)

[DHCP Server Variables Initialization Command 125](#_Toc444695020)

[DHCP Server Debug command 125](#_Toc444695021)

[DHCP relay Monitoring and Control 125](#_Toc444695022)

[DHCP Snooping Monitoring and Control 125](#_Toc444695023)

[DHCP Configuration Examples 126](#_Toc444695024)

[DHCP Network Pool Configuration 126](#_Toc444695025)

[DHCP Server Monitoring and Control 126](#_Toc444695026)

[DHCP Relay Agent Configuration 128](#_Toc444695027)

[Chapter 6. RIP 130](#_Toc444695028)

[Information about RIP 131](#_Toc444695029)

[How to Configure RIP 132](#_Toc444695030)

[Enabling RIP 132](#_Toc444695031)

[Allowing Unicast updates for RIP 132](#_Toc444695032)

[Passive interface 132](#_Toc444695033)

[Applying Offsets to Routing metrics 133](#_Toc444695034)

[Adjusting Timers 133](#_Toc444695035)

[Specifying a RIP Version 133](#_Toc444695036)

[Applying Distance 135](#_Toc444695037)

[Enabling Split Horizon 135](#_Toc444695038)

[Configuration Examples for RIP 136](#_Toc444695039)

[RIP construction 136](#_Toc444695040)

[Offset-list Set-UP 137](#_Toc444695041)

[Passive-interface Configuration 137](#_Toc444695042)

[Chapter 7. OSPF 139](#_Toc444695043)

[OSPF Overview 140](#_Toc444695044)

[Link-state Database 140](#_Toc444695045)

[Areas 140](#_Toc444695046)

[AREA 0 140](#_Toc444695047)

[Stub areas 141](#_Toc444695048)

[Virtual links 141](#_Toc444695049)

[Route Redistribution 141](#_Toc444695050)

[OSPF Configuration 142](#_Toc444695051)

[OSPF interface parameters 142](#_Toc444695052)

[Different Physical Networks 142](#_Toc444695053)

[OSPF Network type 142](#_Toc444695054)

[Point-to-Multipoint, Broadcast Networks 143](#_Toc444695055)

[Nonbroadcast Networks 143](#_Toc444695056)

[OSPF Area parameters 144](#_Toc444695057)

[OSPF NSSA 144](#_Toc444695058)

[OSPF Area Route summarization 145](#_Toc444695059)

[Route Summarization of Redistributed Routes 145](#_Toc444695060)

[Virtual Links 146](#_Toc444695061)

[Generating a Default Route 146](#_Toc444695062)

[Router ID Choice with a Loopback Interface 146](#_Toc444695063)

[Default metric 147](#_Toc444695064)

[OSPF administrative Distance 147](#_Toc444695065)

[Passive interface 147](#_Toc444695066)

[Route Calculation Timers 147](#_Toc444695067)

[Logging Neighbors Going Up/Down 148](#_Toc444695068)

[Blocking LSA Flooding 148](#_Toc444695069)

[Ignoring MOSPF LSA Packets 148](#_Toc444695070)

[Monitoring and Maintaining OSPF 148](#_Toc444695071)

[Chapter 8. IS-IS 157](#_Toc444695072)

[IS-IS Overview 158](#_Toc444695073)

[IS-IS PDU Types 158](#_Toc444695074)

[LSPDB Synchronization 159](#_Toc444695075)

[Shortest Path Calculation 160](#_Toc444695076)

[Route Redistribution 160](#_Toc444695077)

[Enabling IS-IS as an IP Routing Protocol on the Device 161](#_Toc444695078)

[Chapter 9. BGP 166](#_Toc444695079)

[BGP Configuration 167](#_Toc444695080)

[Enabling BGP Protocol 167](#_Toc444695081)

[Neighbor Configuration 167](#_Toc444695082)

[BGP Filtering 167](#_Toc444695083)

[BGP Attribute Configuration 172](#_Toc444695084)

[Routing Policy Modification 182](#_Toc444695085)

[BGP Peer Groups 183](#_Toc444695086)

[BGP Multipath 184](#_Toc444695087)

[BGP graceful-restart 185](#_Toc444695088)

[BGP default-metric 186](#_Toc444695089)

[BGP redistribute-internal 186](#_Toc444695090)

[BGP Password encryption 186](#_Toc444695091)

[BGP disable-adj-out 187](#_Toc444695092)

[Use of set as-path prepend Command 187](#_Toc444695093)

[Route Flap Dampening 188](#_Toc444695094)

[Chapter 10. IGMP Snooping 189](#_Toc444695095)

[IGMP Snooping Overview 190](#_Toc444695096)

[IGMP Snooping Configuration 191](#_Toc444695097)

[Enable IGMP Snooping on a VLAN 191](#_Toc444695098)

[Configure IGMP Snooping Functionality 191](#_Toc444695099)

[Display System and Network Statistics 197](#_Toc444695100)

[Chapter 11. IP Multicast Routing 198](#_Toc444695101)

[IP Multicast Routing Overview 199](#_Toc444695102)

[IGMP Overview 200](#_Toc444695103)

[PIM-SM Overview 201](#_Toc444695104)

[IP Multicast Routing Configuration 202](#_Toc444695105)

[Enable IP Multicast Routing 202](#_Toc444695106)

[Enable IGMP and PIM on an interface 202](#_Toc444695107)

[Configure Multicast Functionality 202](#_Toc444695108)

[Configure IGMP Functionality 205](#_Toc444695109)

[Configure PIM-SM Functionality 214](#_Toc444695110)

[Display System and Network Statistics 221](#_Toc444695111)

[Chapter 12. Statistics Monitoring 223](#_Toc444695112)

[Status Monitoring 224](#_Toc444695113)

[System Threshold Configuration 225](#_Toc444695114)

[Temperature Configuration 225](#_Toc444695115)

[CPU Usage Configuration 225](#_Toc444695116)

[Memory Usage Configuration 225](#_Toc444695117)

[Application Memory Usage Display 226](#_Toc444695118)

[Port Statistics 227](#_Toc444695119)

[RMON (Remote MONitoring) 230](#_Toc444695120)

[RMON Overview 230](#_Toc444695121)

[RMON Alarm and Event Group Configuration 231](#_Toc444695122)

[Logging 234](#_Toc444695123)

[System Log Message 234](#_Toc444695124)

[Default Logging Value 234](#_Toc444695125)

[Examples of Logging Configuration 235](#_Toc444695126)

[sFlow 237](#_Toc444695127)

[sFlow agent 237](#_Toc444695128)

[sFlow collector 238](#_Toc444695129)

[Chapter 13. STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) & SLD (Self-loop Detection) 242](#_Toc444695130)

[Understanding Spanning-Tree Features 243](#_Toc444695131)

[STP Overview 243](#_Toc444695132)

[Bridge Protocol Data Units 243](#_Toc444695133)

[Election of Root Switch 244](#_Toc444695134)

[Bridge ID, Switch Priority, and Extended System ID 245](#_Toc444695135)

[Spanning-Tree Timers 245](#_Toc444695136)

[Creating the Spanning-Tree Topology 245](#_Toc444695137)

[Spanning-Tree Interface States 246](#_Toc444695138)

[Understanding RSTP 249](#_Toc444695139)

[RSTP Overview 249](#_Toc444695140)

[Port Roles and the Active Topology 249](#_Toc444695141)

[Rapid Convergence 250](#_Toc444695142)

[Bridge Protocol Data Unit Format and Processing 251](#_Toc444695143)

[Understanding MSTP 252](#_Toc444695144)

[MST Region 252](#_Toc444695145)

[IST, CST and CIST 252](#_Toc444695146)

[Configuring Spanning-Tree Features 254](#_Toc444695147)

[Default STP Configuration 254](#_Toc444695148)

[STP Configuration Guidelines 254](#_Toc444695149)

[Enabling STP 254](#_Toc444695150)

[Enable STP in no default Bridge 255](#_Toc444695151)

[Configuring the Port Priority 256](#_Toc444695152)

[Configuring the Path Cost 257](#_Toc444695153)

[Configuring the Switch Priority of a VLAN 259](#_Toc444695154)

[Configuring the Hello Time 261](#_Toc444695155)

[Configuring the Forwarding-Delay Time for a VLAN 263](#_Toc444695156)

[Configuring the Maximum-Aging Time for a VLAN 264](#_Toc444695157)

[Changing the Max-hops for switch 266](#_Toc444695158)

[Changing the Spanning-Tree mode for switch 266](#_Toc444695159)

[Configuring portfast for switch 268](#_Toc444695160)

[Changing transmit-holdcount for switch 270](#_Toc444695161)

[Changing Cisco-interoperability for switch 271](#_Toc444695162)

[Configuring autoedge for port 271](#_Toc444695163)

[Configuring the Port as Edge Port 271](#_Toc444695164)

[Specifying the Link Type to Ensure Rapid Transitions 273](#_Toc444695165)

[Configuring force-version for port 274](#_Toc444695166)

[Configuring root guard for port 275](#_Toc444695167)

[Configuring hello-time for port 276](#_Toc444695168)

[Configuring portfast for port 276](#_Toc444695169)

[Configuring transmit-holdcount for port 276](#_Toc444695170)

[Configuring restricted-role for port 276](#_Toc444695171)

[Configuring restricted-tcn for port 278](#_Toc444695172)

[Configuring MSTP Features 279](#_Toc444695173)

[Instance Creation and VLAN Connection 279](#_Toc444695174)

[Instance and port configuration 280](#_Toc444695175)

[Setting region and revision number for MST 284](#_Toc444695176)

[Pathcost for MSTP 285](#_Toc444695177)

[Displaying the Spanning-Tree Status 286](#_Toc444695178)

[Configuring Bridge MAC Forwarding 289](#_Toc444695179)

[Self-loop Detection 291](#_Toc444695180)

[Understanding Self-loop Detection 291](#_Toc444695181)

[Default SLD Configuration 291](#_Toc444695182)

[Configuring Self-loop Detection 292](#_Toc444695183)

[Displaying Self-loop Status 296](#_Toc444695184)

[Chapter 14. BFD (Bidirectional Forwarding Detection) 297](#_Toc444695185)

[Understanding BFD 298](#_Toc444695186)

[BFD Operation 298](#_Toc444695187)

[Benefits of using BFD for Failure Detection 298](#_Toc444695188)

[BFD Session Type 298](#_Toc444695189)

[BFD Version Interoperability 299](#_Toc444695190)

[BFD Restrictions 300](#_Toc444695191)

[Default BFD Configuration 301](#_Toc444695192)

[Configuring BFD 302](#_Toc444695193)

[Configuring BFD session parameters on the interface 302](#_Toc444695194)

[Configuring multi-hop BFD session parameters 302](#_Toc444695195)

[Configuring BFD support for BGP 303](#_Toc444695196)

[Configuring BFD support for OSPF 303](#_Toc444695197)

[Configuring BFD support for Static routing 305](#_Toc444695198)

[Configuring Passive Mode on the Interface 305](#_Toc444695199)

[Configuring BFD Echo Mode 306](#_Toc444695200)

[Configuring BFD slow timer 306](#_Toc444695201)

[Displaying BFD information 306](#_Toc444695202)

[BFD Configuration Samples 307](#_Toc444695203)

[Sample One: Configuring BFD in an OSPF Network 307](#_Toc444695204)

[Sample Two: Configuring BFD in a BGP Network 309](#_Toc444695205)

[Sample Three: Configuring BFD for static routing 311](#_Toc444695206)

[Chapter 15. LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol) 313](#_Toc444695207)

[Understanding Link Aggregation Control Protocol 314](#_Toc444695208)

[LACP Operation Principle 314](#_Toc444695209)

[LACPDU Composition 314](#_Toc444695210)

[LACP Modes 315](#_Toc444695211)

[LACP Parameters 315](#_Toc444695212)

[Configuring LACP and SLA 316](#_Toc444695213)

[Specifying the System Priority 316](#_Toc444695214)

[Specifying the Port Priority 316](#_Toc444695215)

[Specifying the Timeout Value 317](#_Toc444695216)

[Configuring LACP and static port group 317](#_Toc444695217)

[Clearing LACP Statistics 318](#_Toc444695218)

[Displaying 802.3ad Statistics and Status 319](#_Toc444695219)

[Chapter 16. IP-OPTION 321](#_Toc444695220)

[IP OPTION Command Paremeters 322](#_Toc444695221)

[Chapter 17. VRRP (Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol) 325](#_Toc444695222)

[Information About VRRP 326](#_Toc444695223)

[VRRP Operation 326](#_Toc444695224)

[VRRP Benefits 327](#_Toc444695225)

[Multiple Virtual Rouer Support 328](#_Toc444695226)

[VRRP Router Priority and Preemption 328](#_Toc444695227)

[VRRP Advetisements 328](#_Toc444695228)

[VRRP Object Tracking 328](#_Toc444695229)

[How to Configure VRRP 330](#_Toc444695230)

[Enabling VRRP 330](#_Toc444695231)

[Disabling VRRP on an Interface 330](#_Toc444695232)

[Configuring VRRP Object Tracking 331](#_Toc444695233)

[Configuration Examples for VRRP 333](#_Toc444695234)

[Configuring VRRP: Example 333](#_Toc444695235)

[VRRP Object Tracking: Example 334](#_Toc444695236)

[VRRP Object Tracking Verification: Example 334](#_Toc444695237)

[Disabling a VRRP Group on an Interface: Example 335](#_Toc444695238)

[Chapter 18. NTP 336](#_Toc444695239)

[Understanding Time Sources 337](#_Toc444695240)

[Network Time Protocol 337](#_Toc444695241)

[Hardware Clock 337](#_Toc444695242)

[Configuring NTP 338](#_Toc444695243)

[Configuring Poll-Based NTP Associations 338](#_Toc444695244)

[Configuring NTP Authentication 338](#_Toc444695245)

[Configuring the Source IP Address for NTP Packets 339](#_Toc444695246)

[Configuring the System as an Authoritative NTP Server 339](#_Toc444695247)

[Updating the Hardware Clock 339](#_Toc444695248)

[Configuring Time and Date Manually 340](#_Toc444695249)

[Configuring the Time Zone 340](#_Toc444695250)

[Configuring Summer Time (Daylight Savings Time) 340](#_Toc444695251)

[Manually Setting the Software Clock 340](#_Toc444695252)

[Using the Hardware Clock 341](#_Toc444695253)

[Setting the Hardware Clock 341](#_Toc444695254)

[Setting the Software Clock from the Hardware Clock 341](#_Toc444695255)

[Setting the Hardware Clock from the Software Clock 341](#_Toc444695256)

[Monitoring Time and Calendar Services 342](#_Toc444695257)

[Clock Calendar and NTP Configuration Examples 342](#_Toc444695258)

[Chapter 19. Dynamic ARP Inspection 343](#_Toc444695259)

[Understanding DAI 344](#_Toc444695260)

[Understanding ARP 344](#_Toc444695261)

[Understanding ARP Spoofing Attacks 344](#_Toc444695262)

[Understanding DAI and ARP Spoofing Attacks 345](#_Toc444695263)

[Interface Trust States and Network Security 346](#_Toc444695264)

[Rate Limiting of ARP Packets 347](#_Toc444695265)

[Relative Priority of ARP ACLs and DHCP Snooping Entries 348](#_Toc444695266)

[Logging of Dropped Packets 348](#_Toc444695267)

[Default DAI Configuration 348](#_Toc444695268)

[DAI Configuration Guidelines and Restriction 349](#_Toc444695269)

[Configuring DAI 350](#_Toc444695270)

[Enabling DAI on VLANs 350](#_Toc444695271)

[Configuring the DAI Interface Trust State 352](#_Toc444695272)

[Applying ARP ACLs for DAI Filtering 352](#_Toc444695273)

[Configuring ARP Packet Rate Limiting 353](#_Toc444695274)

[Enabling DAI Error-Disabled Recovery 354](#_Toc444695275)

[Enabling Additional Validation 355](#_Toc444695276)

[Configuring DAI Logging 358](#_Toc444695277)

[DAI Logging Overview 358](#_Toc444695278)

[Configuring the DAI Logging Buffer Size 358](#_Toc444695279)

[Configuring the DAI Logging System Messages 358](#_Toc444695280)

[Configuring the DAI Log Filtering 359](#_Toc444695281)

[Displaying DAI Information 360](#_Toc444695282)

[DAI Configuration Samples 362](#_Toc444695283)

[Sample: Interoperate with DHCP Relay 362](#_Toc444695284)

[Chapter 20. Qos and ACL 364](#_Toc444695285)

[QOS 365](#_Toc444695286)

[Global Configuration 365](#_Toc444695287)

[TX Scheduling Configuration 365](#_Toc444695288)

[Port trust mode 366](#_Toc444695289)

[DSCP Conversion Map Configuration 367](#_Toc444695290)

[COS Conversion Map Configuration 368](#_Toc444695291)

[ACL Configuration 369](#_Toc444695292)

[Standard IP ACL 369](#_Toc444695293)

[Extended IP ACL 370](#_Toc444695294)

[MAC ACL 372](#_Toc444695295)

[Application of ACL to Interface 372](#_Toc444695296)

[Service-policy Configuration 374](#_Toc444695297)

[Class-map 374](#_Toc444695298)

[Policy-map 375](#_Toc444695299)

[Service-policy 376](#_Toc444695300)

[COPP 377](#_Toc444695301)

[Service-policy on COPP 377](#_Toc444695302)

[Rate-limit on COPP 377](#_Toc444695303)

[Equipment Protection feature 377](#_Toc444695304)

[Chapter 21. Utilites 378](#_Toc444695305)

[Status dump command 379](#_Toc444695306)

[Commands used 379](#_Toc444695307)

[Command history Function 381](#_Toc444695308)

[Output Post Processing 382](#_Toc444695309)

[Overview of output post processing 382](#_Toc444695310)

[Examples of output post processing 382](#_Toc444695311)

[DDM (Digital Diagnostic Monitoring) 383](#_Toc444695312)

[SFP DDM Monitoring 383](#_Toc444695313)

[Chapter 22. Saving Config File and Software Upgrade 384](#_Toc444695314)

[File System 385](#_Toc444695315)

[Image/Configuration/BSP Down/Up Load 386](#_Toc444695316)

[Download/Upload with the FTP 386](#_Toc444695317)

[Down/Up Loading File with the TFTP server 387](#_Toc444695318)

[Configuration File Management 388](#_Toc444695319)

[Running configuration 388](#_Toc444695320)

[Startup configuration 388](#_Toc444695321)

[Saving Configuration File 388](#_Toc444695322)

[Configuration File Erase 388](#_Toc444695323)

[Boot Mode Setting and System Restart 390](#_Toc444695324)

[Boot Mode Setting 390](#_Toc444695325)

[Restarting an SCM 390](#_Toc444695326)

[Restarting entire system 392](#_Toc444695327)

[Chapter 23. DPoE Provisioning ３９３](#_Toc444695328)

[Background and Theory of Operations ３９４](#_Toc444695329)

[Cable and Bundle Interface management ３９５](#_Toc444695330)

[Bundle Create and View ３９５](#_Toc444695331)

[Bundle VLAN ３９６](#_Toc444695332)

[IP(HSD) and L2HSD Services ３９６](#_Toc444695333)

[Bundle Sub-Interface ３９７](#_Toc444695334)

[Cable Bundle Setting and View ３９８](#_Toc444695335)

[vCM and CPE’s DHCP Relay management ３９９](#_Toc444695336)

[vCM’s DHCP helper-address Setting and View ３９９](#_Toc444695337)

[CPE’s DHCP helper-address Setting and View ３９９](#_Toc444695338)

[CPE’s DHCP Option82 Setting ４００](#_Toc444695339)

[Cable GIADDR ４０１](#_Toc444695340)

[DHCP Option 43/17 for Vendor Specific Information ４０１](#_Toc444695341)

[DHCP Option 6 for MSO defined text ４０３](#_Toc444695342)

[DHCP Option 82 Sub-option for DPoE Version ４０３](#_Toc444695343)

[Source Address Verification (SAV) management ４０４](#_Toc444695344)

[CPE’s SAV Setting ４０４](#_Toc444695345)

[Static SAV Setting ４０４](#_Toc444695346)

[Subscriber Management ４０６](#_Toc444695347)

[CPE Learning Control at the DPoE System ４０６](#_Toc444695348)

[CPE Learning Control at the ONU ４０７](#_Toc444695349)

[Filtering at the DPoE System ４０７](#_Toc444695350)

[ONU Encryption and Authentication ４１０](#_Toc444695351)

[Security and Certificate Settings ４１０](#_Toc444695352)

[CA Certificate ４１１](#_Toc444695353)

[CM Certificate ４１２](#_Toc444695354)

[Certificate Revocation List ４１３](#_Toc444695355)

[Online Certificate Status Protocol ４１５](#_Toc444695356)

[EAE Exclusion List ４１６](#_Toc444695357)

[ONU White List ４１７](#_Toc444695358)

[CM Offline List ４１８](#_Toc444695359)

[CM Offline List ４１８](#_Toc444695360)

[CM Flap List ４１８](#_Toc444695361)

[Optical Monitoring ４２０](#_Toc444695362)

[CM Power Levels ４２０](#_Toc444695363)

[CM TFTP Client Settings ４２２](#_Toc444695364)

[CM Event Management ４２３](#_Toc444695365)

[Event Log Control ４２３](#_Toc444695366)

[Event Log Size ４２５](#_Toc444695367)

[Event Throttling ４２６](#_Toc444695368)

[CM Secure Software Download ４２８](#_Toc444695369)

[MEF-MN Interface ４２９](#_Toc444695370)

[Subscriber’s Provider Bridging (PB) Serivces ４３０](#_Toc444695371)

[Provider Bridging Services ４３０](#_Toc444695372)

[802.1ad PB Encapsulation Mode ４３０](#_Toc444695373)

[802.1Q PB Encapsulation Mode ４３１](#_Toc444695374)

[PB Transport Mode ４３２](#_Toc444695375)

[Subscriber’s Provider Backbone Bridging (PBB) Serivces ４３５](#_Toc444695376)

[PBB Encapsulation Mode ４３５](#_Toc444695377)

[PBB Transport Mode ４３５](#_Toc444695378)

[IP(HSD) Services ４３８](#_Toc444695379)

[DPoE IP(HSD) ４３８](#_Toc444695380)

[Serving Groups ４３９](#_Toc444695381)

[Legacy IP(HSD) ４３９](#_Toc444695382)

[Quality of Service (QoS) ４４０](#_Toc444695383)

[Service Flows ４４０](#_Toc444695384)

[Statistics per Service Flow ４４３](#_Toc444695385)

[Classifiers ４４６](#_Toc444695386)

[Downstream ４４６](#_Toc444695387)

[Upstream ４４６](#_Toc444695388)

[Upstream Drop Classifiers ４４６](#_Toc444695389)

[DPoEv2.0 Multicast ４４８](#_Toc444695390)

[Multicast Operation ４４８](#_Toc444695391)

[Single Session vs Aggregate Session ４４８](#_Toc444695392)

[Multicast QoS ４４８](#_Toc444695393)

[Rate setting for PON interface port ４５０](#_Toc444695394)

[Available rates for PIM-8XE ４５０](#_Toc444695395)

[Setting for Turbo PON mode ４５０](#_Toc444695396)

# Overview

This chapter provides the following information required for system users to set up configuration and start up C9500.

* Command line edit and help
* Switch command mode
* Switch startup
* C9500 user interface
* Login and password setting
* SNMP configuration
* Viewing and saving the files and configuration of switch
* Access list
* Telnet Client

## Command Line Editor and Help

This chapter provides the information on command line editor and help.

### Command Syntax

The following are the steps necessary to enter a command. More information about using command-line interface is described in the following chapter.

To use command-line interface, do the following steps:

1. When entering a command at the prompt, make sure that you have the appropriate privilege level. Most configuration commands require the administrator privilege level.
2. Enter a command. If the command does not include a parameter or value, go to step 3.

* If the command includes a parameter, enter the parameter name and any values.
* The value of the command specifies how you want the parameter to be set. Values include numbers, strings, or addresses, depending on the parameter.

1. Press [Return] to execute.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| *알림 및 경고* | **Notice** | When entering a command, you may receive a message - %command incomplete. This means that the command you entered was not executed. If you press **Up** arrow key, your last command will be displayed. |

The following shows an example that a command was not fully entered.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# show ⮠  % Command incomplete.  Switch # |

### Command Syntax Helper

The CLI of C9500 has built-in command syntax helper. Help may be requested at any point in a command by entering a question mark ‘?’. C9500 provides two styles of help.

**Full Help**

* Available when ready to enter a command argument (e.g. ‘show?’). Describes each possible argument. (Note: a space between command and question mark is required).

**Partial Help**

* Provided when an abbreviated argument is entered and to know which arguments match the input (e.g. ‘show me?’.) There is no space between the command and question mark.

The following shows an example of full help with ‘show’ command.

When ‘?’ mark is used together with a space after ‘show’ command, the list of parameters and values that the administrator can use will be displayed. Then the cursor awaits input from the administrator, blinking in the “Switch# show” prompt. The question mark ‘?’ is not displayed on the terminal screen.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# show ?  10gpon 10G PON information  access-list List IP access lists  afs AFS(Alarm,Fault,Status) information or configuration  arp Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)  auth-mac IPI MAC-Based Authentication  authentication Shows Auth Manager registrations or sessions  auto-config-write write running-config automatically  bfd Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD)  bgp Border Gateway Protocol (BGP)  bootvar Boot and related environment variable  bridge Bridge information  buffers Adjust system buffer pool parameters  cal CAL show  calendar Display the hardware calendar  ce-vlan COS Preservation for Customer Edge VLAN  class-map Class map entry  cli Show CLI tree of current mode  clns Connectionless-Mode Network Service (CLNS)  clock Display the system clock  command shell command  config Config file information  control-plane Control-plane  cpu cpu status and configuration  cpu-mac-filter CPU rate limit based on Source MAC address  cpu-packet-counter CPU packet-counter  cpu-rx-queue Cpu rx packet queue  customer Display Customer spanning-tree  cvlan Display CVLAN information  debugging Debugging functions (see also 'undebug')  dot1x IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control  enhanced-hash Enhanced Hashing Algorithm (RTAG7)  environment Temperature and FAN status information  etherchannel EtherChannel information  ethernet ethernet service parameters  flash: display information about flash: file system  flow-sampler Display the flow samplers configured  flowcontrol IEEE 802.3x Flow Control  fm-status Show the current status  gw-ping-check Specifies the Gateway Ping Check  ha-fib-summary HA FIB summary  Switch# show |
|  |

The result of ‘show’ command when the partial help function is used is as below. If ‘?’ is entered after ‘show’ command, the description on the show command is displayed, and a blinking cursor waits the next command input.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show?**  show Show running system information  Switch# show |

Enter ‘p’ and a question mark ‘?’ with no space when you wish to check the status of a port, but do not know the right command. CLI helper provides a list of options for the remainder of command as below. The command entered by the administrator is displayed again, and a blinking cursor waits the next input.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show p?**  policy-map Policy map entry  pon PON Information  port Port status and configuration  port-mib Port-Mib Count  pppoe Point-to-Point over Ethernet (PPPoE)  privilege Show current privilege level  Switch# show p |

### Abbreviated Syntax

C9500 CLI supports abbreviated syntax, the shortest, most unambiguous, allowable abbreviation of a command or parameter. Typically, this is the first two or three letters of the command.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| *알림 및 경고* | **Notice** | When using abbreviated command syntax, users must enter enough characters to make the command unambiguous and distinguishable to C9500. Users may receive - %Ambiguous command, which means there are more than one command with the same prefix that you have entered in the mode. |

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# show i⮠  % Ambiguous command.  Switch# show i ?  idprom show IDPROMs for FRUs  imi Integrated Management Interface (IMI)  inet-service Display enabled internet services  interface IP interface status and configuration  ip IP information  ipv6 Internet Protocol version 6 (IPv6)  Switch# show i |

### Command Symbols

Various symbols are used to describe the command syntax in this guide. These symbols explain how to enter the command and parameters. The following table summarizes the symbols applied to the system command syntax.

Table 1 Command Syntax Symbol

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Symbol | Name | Description |
| <>: | Angle brackets | * Enclose a variable or value in the command syntax. You must specify the variable or value.   For example, in the syntax  access-list <1-99> *{deny|permit}* address   * You must supply standard access control list number for <1-99> when entering the command. |
| {}: | Braces | Enclose a required value or list of parameters in the command syntax. The administrator must enter at least one necessary item among the parameter list.  For example, in the syntax  router {*rip|ospf*}   * You must enter one of the two parameter lists to specify the routing protocol. |
| []: | Square brackets | Enclose a required value or list of parameters in the command syntax.  The administrator can specify necessary items among the list selectively. There may be no need to specify an item.  For example, in the syntax  show interfaces [*ifname*]   * You can enter the interface name for ifname or not. |
| |: | Vertical bar | Separate mutually exclusive items in the list, one of which must be entered. For example, in the syntax  switch port mode *{access|trunk}*   * You must specify either the access or trunk mode of the switch port in the command. Do not type the vertical bar. |
| *Italic* |  | Variables to enter |
| **Bold** |  | The command the administrator must enter |
| A.B.C.D |  | IP address or subnet mask |
| A.B.C.D/M |  | IP prefix (e.g. 192.168.0.0/24) |
| X:X::X:X/M |  | IPv6 address |

### Command Line Editing Key and Help Function

The CLI of C9500 supports Emacs-like line editing commands. The following table describes the line-editing keys used in the CLI.

Table 2 Basic Command Line Editing Command and Help

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| [Ctrl] + [A] | Moves the cursor to the beginning of the line. |
| [Ctrl] + [E] | Moves the cursor to the end of the line. |
| [Ctrl] + [B] | Moves the cursor to the left character. |
| [Ctrl] + [F] | Moves the cursor to the right character. |
| Backspace | Deletes the character in front of the cursor. |
| [Ctrl] + [K] | Deletes all the characters from the cursor to the end of the line |
| [Ctrl] + [U] | Deletes all the letters from the cursor to the beginning of the line. |
| Tab | If you type a part of a command and press [tab], the commands with the same prefix on the prompt will be listed.  If there is only one command with the prefix, the remaining part of the command is completed. |
| [Ctrl] + [P] or ↑ | Displays the history of the last 20 commands you have entered. |
| [Ctrl] + [N] or ↓ | Displays the next command. |
| ? | Displays the list of the available commands on the prompt and the description on the commands.  If you type ‘?’ after a command, the parameters required after the command will be listed.  If you type ‘?” right after a part of a command, the commands with the same prefix will be listed. |
| Return or Spacebar or Q | If you press [Return] in —More --, the next one line will be displayed.  When you press spacebar, the next page will be displayed. Press Q to exit from the program and switch to the prompt state. |

## Switch Command Mode

C9500 provides the following various CLI (Command Line Interface) access modes, as shown in the follwing table. Various commands of each switch offer different authority to an administrator.

Table 3 Switch Command Mode

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Access Mode | Prompt | Description |
| User mode | Switch> | Displays common statistical information. |
| Privileged mode | Switch# | Uses the Show or Debug commands |
| Config mode | Switch(config) # | Changes the scope of the switch configuration into global. |
| Interface mode | Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)#  Switch(config-if-vlan1)# | Changes the configuration of the switch interface. |
| Router mode | Switch(config-rip)#  Switch(config-ospf)# | Changes the configuration of routing protocols such as RIP or OSPF. |
| DHCP pool mode | Switch(config-dhcp)# | Configures the DHCP address pool. |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| *알림 및 경고* | **Notice** | The command prompt uses the name of the C9500 as the host name in front of character(s) of each mode. The prompt ‘Switch’ will be used as common host name throughout this manual. |

When you set up the configuration of C9500, you will face various kinds of prompts. The prompt shows the path where you are in the configuration mode. To change the configuration of the switch, you have to check prompts. Commands that are used to change command prompt mode are described in the following table:

Table 4 Change of Switch Command Modes

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| enable | Moves from the User mode to the Privileged mode.  Needs to enter the password of the Privileged mode. |
| disable | Moves from the Privileged mode to the User mode. |
| configure terminal | Moves from the Privileged mode to the Config mode. |
| interface *ifname* | Moves from the Config mode to the Interface mode. |
| router {bgp|rip|ospf|isis} | Moves from the Config mode to the Router mode. |
| pon | Moves from the Config mode to PON mode. |
| ip dhcp pool *name* | Moves from the Config mode to the DHCP Pool mode. |
| exit | Moves back to the previous mode. |
| end | Moves from any mode to the Privileged mode.  Do not move from the User mode. |

## C9500 Series startup

When starting up the switch for the first time, C9500 performs a self test and starts the system loading the OS image from the flash memory. When the system is finished booting, it loads the previous configuration (startup-config) which has been stored in the flash memory.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| *알림 및 경고* | **Notice** | For the purpose of system reliability, C9500 manages two OS images including Primary and Secondary. The Primary OS image can be loaded by the default settings. The system administrator can change the configuration in either switch boot mode or privileged mode. |

## User Interface

Network administrators can access the OLT for configuration setting, configuration verification, and switch status management, etc. The simplest way to access the switch is by local OAM terminal connected to a separate console port that C9500 offers (Out-of-band management).

Another way to access the switch is to use a Telnet program from a remote site. The switch does not support a separate port for the Telnet connection. Therefore, access must take place through the service port (In-band management).

The system administrator can use the following methods to manage C9500.

* Access the CLI by connecting a local terminal to the switch console port.
* Access the CLI over a TCP/IP network through Telnet connection.
* Access the CLI over a TCP/IP network through SSH connection.
* Use SNMP network manager over a network running the IP protocol.

C9500 supports multiple user sessions concurrently, as follows:

* 1 console session
* Up to 16 Telnet or SSH sessions

### Connection through Console Port

The command-line interface built into the system is accessible by RJ-45 type Ethernet port console. OAM terminal (or workstation with terminal-emulation software) must support 9-pin, RS-232 DB9 port. Console port is located on the front of C9500 SGIM (Switching, Gigabit Ethernet I/O & Management Module).

Connect the terminal to the console port provided by C9500, as shown in the following figure. Once a connection is established, you will see the switch prompt and you can log in.



Figure 1 Connection of C9500 and OAM Terminal

Console Terminal

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| *알림 및 경고* | **Notice** | For the information on the terminal configuration and console port pinouts, refer to the C9500 Hardware Installation Guide. |

### Connection through Telnet

You can connect to C9500 at a workstation with Telnet or TCP/IP. In order to use Telnet you must setup an ID and password first, and your switch must have at least one IP address.

|  |
| --- |
| Telnet [<ipaddress> | <hostname>] {<port\_number>} |

After the Telnet connection is successfully completed, a prompt for user password will be displayed. When you type in the Telnet user password, you will enter into User mode of the switch.

For security purposes, you can use access list to restrict the Telnet connection. For this refer to chapter <ACL(Access Control List> in this manual.

### Connection through SSH

System operators can access to C9500 via a workstation which has TCP / IP and SSH. For SSH to be used, the operator should set an ID and password, and the switch must have more than one IP address.

ssh {<ipaddress> | <hostname>}

When SSH connection is successfully established, the prompt for entering a password is shown on screen. Once you enter the password, the switch gets in User mode.  
  
In addition, for the sake of system security the users who access via SSH can be limited by using of Access Control List. Refer to the section <ACL(Access Control List)>.

SSH should be enabled at the equipment.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch(config)#**service ssh** |

### Connection through SNMP Network Manager

Any network manager running the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) can manage the C9500.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| *알림 및 경고* | **Notice** | For more information refer to SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) Network Manager. |

## User Management

### Add/Delete User

A system manager can connect to the system using a console port or Telnet to configure or manage C9500. You can manage users connected to the system by configuring ID and password, and give different authorities using the privilege level.

A new user has a privilege level set as 1 and can enter the privileged mode. If you execute “enable” command in user mode, you can enter privileged mode.

The following list describes privilege levels:

* Privilege level 0 is non-privileged status.
* Privilege level 1-14 can execute user mode commands.
* Privilege level 15 can execute privilege mode commands.

Table 5 Commands for User Registration, Deletion, and management

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| username *name*  { nopassword|password [0|7] *password*|secret [0|5] *password*} | * Registers a user. * **nopassword**: Password is not required when you log in. * **Password or secret**: When you log in the system, the system prompts for this. The password and secret value are as follows: * 0 – No encryption. * 5 – MD5 encryption. * 7 – DES encryption. | Config |
| no username *name* | * Deletes a user. * In case that user is root, the password is changed as default value. | Config |
| username *name* privilege <0-15> | * Changes a user’s privilege level. | Config |
| username *name*  access-class *<1-99>* | * Enables access-list. * <1-99> : IP standard access list | Config |
| no username *name* access-class | * Disable access-list. | Config |
| username *name* user-maxlinks *value* | * Sets maximum session numbers | Config |
| no username *name* user-maxlinks *value* | * Changes maximum session number as default value. * Default: 32 | Config |
| username *name* unlimited-session-ip *A.B.C.D* | * Enables unlimited session ip as user name. | Config |
| no username *name* unlimited-session-ip | * Disables unlimited session ip as user name. | Config |

#### Adding user

The following example shows how to set user name, password and privilege level:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **username testuser2 password testpw**  Switch(config)# **username testuser3 privilege 15 password testpw**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch # **show running-config**  !  username testuser2 password 0 testpw username **testuser3** privilege 15 password 0 **testpw**  !  Switch# |

The following shows an example where ‘testuser3’, privilege level 15, logs into privileged mode.

|  |
| --- |
| CommScope L3 Switch  Switch login: ***testuser3***  Password: ***testuser3***  Hello.  Switch> enable  Switch# |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| *알림 및 경고* | **Notice** | After you set AAA authorization exec command, in the case that your level is more than the privilege level 15, you can enter the privileged mode directly. |

### Password Setting

C9500 is able to configure user password and enable password for system security.

For security purposes C9500 allows to setup user password and enable password.

#### Enable password

* Used for security in privileged mode.

#### User password

* Used by the user to access the switch through Telnet in the user mode.

The following table describes the commands related to enable password setting.

Table 6 Commands for Enable Password Setting

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| enable password [0|7] *password* | * Sets the password to access the privileged mode. * When you enter the privileged mode, you need to enter the password which differs according to encryption method. * 0 – No Encryption. * 7 – DES Encryption | Config |
| enable secret [0|5] *password* | * Sets the password to access the privileged mode. * When you enter the privileged mode, you need to enter the password which differs according to encryption method. * 0 – No Encryption. * 5 – MD5 Encryption | Config |
| no enable password | * Disables the password configuration to enter the privileged mode. | Config |

#### Setting Enable password

The following example shows how to enable a password for access to privileged mode.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **enable password testpw**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show running-config**  !  enable password 0 testpw  ! |

If you enter the set password, access is granted to privileged mode.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch  Switch login: root  Password:  Hello.  Switch>enable  Password: *testpw*  Switch# |

As in the examples above, anybody can see passwords with **show running-config** command after the password setting. For security purposes, the system supports an encryption mode setting.

Table 7 Commands for Setting Password Encryption Mode

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| service password-encryption | Enables password-encryption. | Config |
| no service password-encryption | Disables password-encryption. | Config |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| *알림 및 경고* | **Notice** | You can not decrypt with “**no service password-encryption**” command. This command is only to disable the encryption-password service. |

#### Password Encryption Mode Setting

As seen above the assigned password is visible. Anyone can retrieve it by a command, like show running-config. To prevent this C9500 Series provides encryption capability while assigning the passwords.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **service password-encryption**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show running-config**  !  enable password 7 xxEp88GxHJIgc  username lns nopassword  username test password 7 XX1LtbDbOY4/E  username admin privilege 15 password 7 xxiz1FI3TBLPs  !  Switch# |

## AAA (Authentication Authorization Accounting)

The system can set up various types of user authentication. Normally, user authentication is given by user ID and password. But with RADIUS and TACACS+, the authorization to access to the subscriber database of each server is given.

### Authentication

Three ways of user authentication are as follows:

* Local
* RADIUS
* TACACS+

You can set authentication more than one way. In the case of setting various methods of authentication, the system attempts authentication in the order set. In the case that the user does not receive a result of the success or failure of authentication, you must set various methods of authentication for trying authentication with ways of other authentication. In the case of trying authentication with Local system, if the information about the user who wants to log in or enter privileged mode does not exist, the system attempts authentication with the next set.

Local authentication is always enabled. In case that you do not specify an authentication setting, the sytem defaults to user authentication with Local authentication.

### User Authentication

The system attempts authentication with the user name and password for the user. It is possible to authenticate via the local system for user information, as well as via RADIUS or TACACS+. To authenticate via the local system, the user must be already registered.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| aaa authentication login default {local|radius|tacacs+} | Chooses the authentication system (local, radius, and tacacs+).  Various authentication methods are possible. | Config |
| no aaa authentication login default | Backs to default about authentication login.  Default: Local | Config |
| aaa authentication login template-user *name* | User authenticated by RADIUS or TACACS+ can not login without local account. The user should set up account to use. | Config |
| no aaa authentication login template-user | Clears the account of users without an account | Config |
| aaa authentication login authen-type (chap|pap) | In the case of authentication with TACACS+, it sends an authentication message by the chap or par methods.  Default: Ascii | Config |
| no aaa authentication login authen-type | Clears the account of users without account | Config |
| aaa authentication login console | Applies RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication to the console  (By default, local authentication is applied to the console. This configuration applies RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication first, and then applies local authentication (if RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication fails.).) | config |
| no aaa authentication login console | Disables RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication. |  |

### Setting User Authentication

Three ways of user authentication are as following:

* Check access with user ID and password
* Use a RADIUS server
* Use a TACACS+ server

When using more than one method, you authenticate based on the authentication priority. If authentication is successful, allow login. If it is not, authenticate with the next priority.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **aaa authentication login default tacacs+ radius**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# |

#### Enable Password Authentication

When you want to enter the privileged mode, you can authenticate with the password enabled. In case of authentication with the local system, it performs authentication via the password enabled for the system.

It can also perform authentication via RADIUS or TACACS+. When you do not set a password to the local system, the authentication method always succeeds. So you must enable a password to perform authentication with privileged mode.

Table 8 Commands for Setting User Authentication of Privileged Mode

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| aaa authentication enable default *{enable|radius|tacacs+}* | Authenticates about enable password. | Config |
| no aaa authentication enable default | Backs to default.  Default: enable password(Local system) | Config |

#### Setting User Authentication of Privileged Mode

If the user enters privileged mode, the system attempts authentication to the TACACS+ server with the password enabled. If the system does not receive a response from TACACS+, it attempts authentication to the RADIUS server. In the same way, if the system dose not receive a response from the RADIUS server, it tries authentication via the local system.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **aaa authentication enable default tacacs+ radius**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# |

### Authorization

The system checks the authorization level using the system resources via privilege level. When you execute EXEC shell, it compares the user’s privilege level with the user’s privilege level setting using the local system or a remote server (RADIUS or TACACS+). In the case that the prilvilege level of a user who wants to use the particular system resource is lower than the set privilege level, the system shows an error message and fails to execute. Also, when you execute a specific command, the sysem compares the privilege level of each command with the privilege level set. Then the system can check the executive authorization of relevant commands via the local system or remote server (TACACS+).

In the case that the system does not receive the result from the authorization server or else fails to connect with the authorization server, you must always add the method of authorization verification from the local system. In the case of failing authoriztion verification with the local system, changes will need to be made via the settings console. The user who logs in the system via the console does not need to have authorization checked.

#### Authorization for EXEC Activation

When you enter the privileged mode, the EXEC shell executed is the user definition shell. The authorization that can execute the EXEC shell makes sure that the user’s privilege level is registered with the system. In the case that the system makes sure the user’s EXEC shell execution authorization is with a RADIUS or TACACS+ server, you must set the user’s privilege information for checking authorization to the relevant server.

Table 9 Commands for Setting EXEC Shell Authorization

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| aaa authorization exec default [local|*radius*|*tacacs+*] | Checks authorization to execute EXEC shell with user’s privilege level. | Config |
| no aaa authorization exec default | Does not check authorization to execute EXEC shell. | Config |

#### Checking EXEC shell Execution Autorization with TACACS+ Server

When you execute EXEC shell, the system checks authorization by referring to the user’s privilege level setting to TACACS+. Furthermore, in the case that the system does not receive a result from the TACACS+ server, the system can check authorization from the local system.

The following example shows how to set authorization for EXEC activation.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **aaa authorization exec default tacacs+** local  Switch(config)#  Switch# exit |

In the case that ‘testuser1’ user is registered with a TACACS+ server and the privilege level is set with 15, you can do EXEC shell after logging in as in the following (In this case, as the privilege level is more than 15, you can enter privileged mode directly).

|  |
| --- |
| username: *testuser1*  Password: *testuser1*  Hello.  Switch# |

#### Authorization of Command Execution

When you execute a specific command, you can check the command execution authorization with the privilege level given to a command. In other words, the preivilege level of each command has the privilege level of the mode that the command is executed and you can change the settings as necessary. The system can check the execution authorization of a specific command via the local system or a TACACS+ server.

You can set the command group for checking autorization with designating privilege level that the command is executed. The system can check the executable autorization from the local system or TACACS+ server to verify if the command has the relevant privilege level.

Table 10 Authorization of Command Execution

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| aaa authorization commands <0-15> default (tacacs+|local) | Sets to do checking authorization to execute command in privilege level with the local system or TACACS+ server.  <0-15>: privilege level | Config |
| no aaa authorization commands <0-15> default | Sets to do not check for authorization to execute the command at the privilege level.  <0-15>: privilege level | Config |

#### Checking Command Execution Authorization with TACACS+ Server

The following example shows how to check the authorization of command execution using a TACACS+ server when the interface command is executed in config mode. When there is a failure to connect to the TACACS+ server, the command execution authorization is checked by the local server. Set the interface command to Privilege Level 2 and then check the authorization for the Privilege Level 2. When the TACACS+ server successfully operates, the TACACS+ server determines whether to deny or permit the command authorization set. When the TACACS+ server does not successfully operate, this is determined by the local server. If the privilege level of the connected user is lower than the specified level, user access is denied based on the privilege config level 2 interface command.

The following example shows how to check authorization of command execution with TACACS+.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **privilege config level 2 interface**  Switch(config)# **aaa authorization commands 2 default tacacs+ local**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch#  Switch# **show command privilege**  COMMAND-MODE LEVEL Command  ===========================================  config 2 interface  Switch# |

When you execute the interface command in the case of authorization, the following error occurs:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch (config)# interface VLAN 1  % Command authorization failed  Switch (config)# |

### Accounting

The system can manage session access history and command execution history via the AAA accounting.

### Session Access Management

You can record the system access history to the TACACS+ server with the following command:

Table 11 Session Access Management

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| aaa accounting exec default (start-stop|stop-only) tacacs+ | Sends system access history to TACACS+ server.  start-stop: Records start-stop log  stop-only: Only records stop log | Config |
| no aaa accounting exec default | Does not send system access history to TACACS+ server. | Config |

The following example shows how to send session access status to TACACS+ server.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# **aaa accounting exec default start-stop tacacs+** |

#### Managing Command Execution History

When you execute a specific command, you can manage execution history with TACACS+ server.

In other words, each command has a privilege level, and you can change the settings as necessary.

Table 12 Managing Command Execution History

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| aaa accounting commands  <0-15> default tacacs+ | Records command execution history having relevant privilege level to TACACS+ server.  <0-15>: privilege level. | Config |
| no aaa accounting commands <0-15> default | Does not record command execution history having relevant privilege level to TACACS+ server.  <0-15>: privilege level. | Config |

#### Command Execution Status Management

The following example shows how to change the privilege level of all show commands in the EXEC mode as 15 and send execution history to TACACS+ server. In other words, all commands being privilege level 15 also send the execution history to the TACACS+ server.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **privilege exec level 15 show**  Switch(config)# **aaa accounting commands 15 default tacacs+**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch#  Switch# **show command privilege**  COMMAND-MODE LEVEL Command  ===========================================  config 15 show  Switch# |

### Privilege level Configuration

The system is able to perform authorization and accounting functions for specific commands via the privilege level. In the case that you do not set the privilege level around a specific command, each command refers to the executed mode of the privilege level.

Table 13 Privilege level Configuration

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| privilege *node* level <0-15> *command* | Assigns privilege level about specfic command.  <0-15>: privilege level | Config |
| no privilege *node* level  <0-15> *command* | Changes privilege level to default value about specific command.  Default: privilege level of command execution mode. | Config |
| show command privilege | Shows the current information. | Privileged |

## Server Configuration

The C9500 provides features such as authentication through remote server, authorization, and account management to control the RADIUS or TACACS+ server. The following are the various configurations of the RADIUS and TACAS+ servers.

### RADIUS Server Configuration

Table 14 RADIUS Server Configuration Commands

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| radius-server host (*A.B.C.D/X:X::X:X)* [key [0|7] *key-string*] | Sets RADIUS server.  *A.B.C.D*: RADIUS server address  X:X::X:X : RADIUS server IPv6 address  key: Sets encryption key.  0 – Does not encryption  7 – DES encryption | Config |
| no radius-server host (*A.B.C.D/X:X::X:X)* | Deletes the set RADIUS server.  *A.B.C.D*: RADIUS server address  X:X::X:X : RADIUS server IPv6 address | Config |
| radius-server host (*A.B.C.D/X:X::X:X)* [auth-port *PORT*] | Sets RADIUS server and auth-port for using to server.  *A.B.C.D*: RADIUS server address  X:X::X:X : RADIUS server IPv6 address  *PORT*: auth-port number | Config |
| no radius-server host (*A.B.C.D/X:X::X:X)* auth-port *PORT* | Sets auth-port for using to server with default value.  Default: 1812 | Config |
| radius-server key [0|7] *key-string* | Sets common encryption key for using when the system connects to RADIUS server. | Config |
| no radius-server key | Deletes common encryption key. | Config |
| radius-server retransmit *count* | Sets count retransmitting AAA information to RADIUS server.  *count*: Sets count number. | Config |
| no radius-server retransmit | Sets retransmitting number with default value.  Default: 3 times | Config |
| radius-server timeout *seconds* | Sets timeout from RADIUS server.  *seconds*: Timeout setting with second | Config |
| no radius-server timeout | Sets timeout with default value.  Default: 5 seconds | Config |
| ip radius source-interface *ifname* | Sets source IP address of information for sending to RADIUS server.  *ifname*: interface name information | Config |
| no ip radius source-interface | Disables the set source IP address. | Config |

The following example shows how to set some RADIUS server and common secret keys with test 123. It sends AAA information to server. If the system does not receive a response, the system attempts to send it to the next RADIUS server.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **radius-server host 192.168.0.1**  Switch(config)# **radius-server key test123**  Switch(config)# **radius-server host 192.168.0.2 key lns**  Switch(config)# **radius-server host 192.168.0.2 auth-port 3000**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show running-config**  !  radius-server key test123  radius-server host 192.168.0.1  radius-server host 192.168.0.2 key lns  radius-server host 192.168.0.3 auth-port 3000  !  Switch# |

### TACACS+ Server Configuration

You can set several TACACS+ servers. In the event of an authentication failure due to communication with the primary server, authentication will be carried out using the secondary server.

Table 15 TACACS+ Server Commands

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| tacacs-server host (*A.B.C.D/X:X::X:X)*  key [0|7] *key-string* | Sets TACACS+ server.  *A.B.C.D*: TACACS+ server address  X:X::X:X : RADIUS server IPv6 address  Key: Sets security key.  0 – None Encryption  7 – DES Encryption | Config |
| no tacacs-server host (*A.B.C.D/X:X::X:X)* | Deletes tacacs+ server setting.  *A.B.C.D*: TACACS+ server address  X:X::X:X : RADIUS server IPv6 address | Config |
| tacacs-server host (*A.B.C.D/X:X::X:X)* timeout *seconds* | Sets timeout vaule with TACACS+ server.  *seconds*: Timeout value | Config |
| tacacs-server host (*A.B.C.D/X:X::X:X)* timeout | Sets default timeout  Default: 5 seconds | Config |
| ip tacacs source-interface *ifname* | Sets source IP address of information sent to TACACS+ server.  *ifname*: Interface name | Config |
| no ip tacacs source-interface | Remove source IP address. | Config |

The following example shows how to set TACACS+ Server.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **tacacs-server host 192.168.0.1 key lns**  Switch(config)# **tacacs-server host 192.168.0.2 key test123**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show running-config**  tacacs-server host 192.168.0.1 key lns  tacacs-server host 192.168.0.2 key test123  !  Switch# |

## Setting Hostname

Hostname can be used to identify systems during the operation, and the prompt of the **console/Telnet** screen consists of the combination of hostname and current command mode. In C9500, the system model name is the **default** hostname and the administrator can change the default hostname to a new hostname.

Table 16 Hostname setting command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| hostname *string* | * Changes hostname | Config |
| no hostname | * Changes hostname with default name | Config |

The following example shows how to set or change the hostname.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#**configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **hostname C9500**  C9500 (config)# **end**  C9500 #  C9500 # **configure terminal**  C9500 (config)# **no hostname**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch(config)# |

**SCM information in prompt**

The control unit of the C9500 is implemented to be redundant, which means it has two SCM cards in a system. The currently active SCM is indicated in a prompt string. The acronym which represents the operation status (i.e. Active or Standby) and position of SCM (i.e. Left or Right) is present next to the hostname information in a prompt string.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Acronym** | **Meaning** |
| [A/L] | SCM1 (Left position) with active status |
| [A/R] | SCM2 (Right position) with active status |
| [S/L] | SCM1 (Left position) with standby status |
| [S/R] | SCM2 (Right position) with standby status |

The prompts look like the following examples.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch[A/L]>  Switch[A/L]>enable  Switch[A/L]#configure terminal  Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.  Switch[A/L](config)#telnet scu2  telnet scu2  Trying 169.254.253.2...  Connected to scu2.  Escape character is '^]'.  Switch login: root  Password:  Hello.  Switch[S/R]> |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| *알림 및 경고* | **Notice** | Not all the examples in ths manual have applied this prompt generation rule. |

## SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol)

SNMP network manager can manage the switch that provides the Management Information Base (MIB). The network manager provides a user interface for ease of management. You have to properly configure the switch environment in order to use the SNMP manager to manage the system.

### SNMP Configuration

The following commands are for setting the SNMP configuration.

Table 17 Commands for Setting SNMP Configuration

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| snmp-server contact *string* | Enters the information of system manager | Config |
| no snmp-server contact | Deletes the information of system manager | Config |
| snmp-server location *string* | Enters the location information where switch is installed. | Config |
| no snmp-server location | Deletes Input the location information where switch is installed. | Config |

The following example shows how to set the information of the system manager:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **snmp-server contact “gil-dong hong.** [**hong@CommScope.com**](mailto:hong@ubiquoss.com)**”**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show running-config**  !  snmp-server contact “gil-dong hong. [hong@CommScope.com](mailto:hong@ubiquoss.com)”  !  Switch# |

The following example shows how to set the system location information:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **snmp-server location “Wonhyoro-3Ga, Yongsan-gu, Seoul.”**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show running-config**  !  snmp-server location “Wonhyoro-3Ga, Yongsan-gu, Seoul.”  !  Switch# |

### SNMP Community

Network Operator can access the SNMP agent and read or write MIB information. When connecting to the SNMP agent, the network manager is authenticated as a community. There are two types of community strings on the C9500.

#### Read-only community

* Access to the system in read-only mode

#### Read-write community

* Access to the system in read and write mode

Table 18 Setting SNMP Community

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| snmp-server community *string* [*access-type*|  view *view-name*|  <1-99>] | Set the SNMP community  access-type: SNMP Agent access type  ro: read only  rw: read write  View: designates MIB access scope, the detail information refers to snmp-server view setting.  <1-99>: Applys access-list about access host. | Config |
| no snmp-server community *string* | Deletes SNMP community. | Config |

The following example shows how to set ‘testcom’ community of read-write access type:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **snmp-server community testcom rw 99**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show running-config**  !  snmp-server community testcom rw access-class 99  !  Switch# |

### SNMP Trap host

The system can provide the event like system running error or system status change to a network manager with a setting trap. The system provides the following trap version. In other words, if you can not set trap command or trap host, the trap does not occur.

#### SNMPv1 Trap

#### SNMPv2c Trap

* Basic trap version

#### SNMPv3 Trap

* Supports authentication and encrption function, you can set security model.

1. noAuth: does not authentication and encryption.
2. Auth: does authentication.
3. Priv: does authentication and encpyption.

Table 19 Commands for Setting SNMP Trap Host

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| snmp-server trap-host *A.B.C.D*  [version 1|2c|3 *sec-level*]  *community-string* | Sets the host for sending trap.  *A.B.C.D*: trap host address  version: trap version (Default: 2c)  *sec-level:* In the case of trap version , sets security model.  *community-string*: community configuration | Config |
| no snmp-server trap-host *A.B.C.D*  [version 1|2c|3 *sec-level*]  *community-string* | Deletes trap host | Config |
| snmp-server trap-source  *ifname* | Sets source IP address of trap for sending.  *ifname*: interface name | Config |
| no snmp-server trap-source | Removes source IP address | Config |

Table 20 Commands for Setting Enable Basic SNMP Trap

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| snmp-server enable traps  alarm [fallingAlarm| risingAlarm] | Enables trap for sending RMON alar. | Config |
| no snmp-server enable traps  alarm [fallingAlarm| risingAlarm] | Disables trap for sending RMON alarm. | Config |
| snmp-server enable traps envmon [ext-supply|fan|supply|  temperature] | Enables trap for sending system environment (fan, power, etc) information. | Config |
| no snmp-server enable traps envmon [ext-supply|fan|supply|  temperature] | Disables trap for sending system environment (fan, power, etc) information. | Config |
| snmp-server enable traps fru-ctrl | Enables trap for sending module, slot status information. | Config |
| no snmp-server enable traps fru-ctrl | Disables trap for sending module, slot status information. | Config |
| snmp-server enable traps  interface | Enables trap for sending interface information. | Config |
| no snmp-server enable traps  interface | Disables trap for sending interface information. | Config |
| snmp-server enable traps resource [cpu-load-monitor|  memory-free-monitor] | Enable trap for sending system resource information. | Config |
| no snmp-server enable traps resource [cpu-load-monitor|  memory-free-monitor] | Disables trap for sending system resource information. | Config |
| snmp-server enable traps  snmp [coldStart|warmStart|authFail] | Enables trap for sending Cold start, warm start, authentication failure information. | Config |
| no snmp-server enable traps  snmp [coldStart|warmStart|authFail] | Disables trap for sending Cold start, warm start, authentication failure. | Config |

### SNMP Trap

The following example shows how to set to send a trap of pan, power, and temperature information to 192.168.0.1 host.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **snmp-server host 192.168.0.1 public**  Switch(config)# **snmp-server enable traps envmon**  Switch(config)# **snmp-server enable traps snmp**  Switch#(config)# **end**  Switch# **show running-config**  !  snmp-server enable traps interface  snmp-server enable traps envmon fan supply temperature ext-supply  snmp-server host 192.168.0.1 version 2c public  !  Switch# |

### SNMPv3 Configuration

The system provides SNMPv3 for system management. SNMPv3 provides audentication about user and encryption about data.

Table 21 Commands for Setting SNMPv3

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| snmp-server engineID *engineid-string* | Sets engine ID for dividing SNMP agent only.  In the case of changing SNMP engineID, you again set the set user because user setting makes MD5 and security digest of SHA using engine ID. | Config |
| no snmp-server engineID | Sets Engine ID with default value made automatically.  Default value is made by enterprise OID (1.3.6.1.4.1.7800) of our commany and first MAC address of system. | Config |
| show snmp engineID | Shows Engine ID. | Privileged |
| snmp-server group *groupname* {v1|v2c|v3 *sec-level*}[read *read-view*|  write *write-view*] | Sets SNMP group.  *group-name*: Group name  v1, v2c, v3: Group version  *sec-level*: In the case of trap version 3, sets sercurity model.  read: Read view setting. In case that you do not specify Read-view, the system sets default value with **internet** (1.3.6.1).  write: Write view setting | Config |
| no snmp-server group  *groupname*  {v1|v2c|v3 *sec-level*} | Deletes SNMP group | Config |
| show snmp group | Displays SNMP group | Privileged |
| snmp-server user *username* *groupname* {v1|v2c|v3  [auth (md5|sha) *auth-passwd*]  [priv (des|aes) *priv-passwd*]  [access <1-99>]} | Sets SNMP user  v1, v2c, v3: User versions  auth: In the case of SNMPv3, the system can do user authentication and you can set MD5 or SHA with a specified method of encryption.  Auth-passwd: password setting for authentication.  *priv:* You can encrypt SNMP PDU, set DES or AES with the specified method of encryption.  *priv-passwd*: Setting password for encryption.  *access:* applies access-list about user.  *<1-99> :* IP standard access list | Config |
| no snmp-server user *username* *groupname* {v1|v2c|v3} | Removes SNMP user | Config |
| show snmp user | Shows SNMP user. | Privileged |
| snmp-server view *viewname* *viewoid* {excluded|included} | Sets SNMP view.  *viewoid*: Designates scope of MIB that can do read / write function with User or community and can designate MIB name or OID.  excluded| included: Sets viewoid as excluded or included. | Config |
| no snmp-server view *viewname*  *viewoid* | Deletes SNMP view | Config |

### SNMP engineID

The following example shows how to change SNMP engine ID of the system. If SNMPv3 user is already set, after you change engine ID, the network manager can access as relevant user.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show snmp engineID**  Local SNMP engineID: 0x80001f8880236ed0864b7a760f  Switch#configure terminal Switch(config)# **snmp-server engineID 0x1234567890**  Switch(config)# **exit**  Switch#  Switch# **show snmp engineID**  Local SNMP engineID: 0x1234567890 |

### 

### User of SNMPv3

The following example shows how to make ‘testuser’ user that does authentication and encryption. **‘testgroup’** includes ‘testuser’, it applies ‘testview’ that reads or writes ifEntry(1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1).

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **snmp-server user testuser testgroup v3 auth md5 mysecretpass** **priv des myprivpass**  Switch(config)# **snmp-server group testgroup v3 priv read testview write** **testview**  Switch(config)# **snmp-server view testview 1.3.6.1 included**  Switch(config)# **snmp-server view testview 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1 excluded**  Switch#(config)# **end**  Switch# **show running-config**  !  snmp-server group testgroup v3 priv read readview write writeview  snmp-server view testview 1.3.6.1 included  snmp-server view testview 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1 excluded  !  Switch#  Switch# **show snmp user**  User name : testuser  Engine ID : 0x80001f8880236ed0864b7a760f  storage-type: nonvolatile active  Authentication Protocol: MD5  Group-name: testgroup |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| *알림 및 경고* | **Notice** | Due to the password security in SNMPv3, user settings do not show with **show running-config** command. You can verify using the **show snmp user** command. |

## ACL (Access Control List)

ACL enables the network manager to closely control the traffic delivered through the inter-network . The manager can get basic statistical data on the state of packet transmission and establish a security policy based on the data. In addition, the manager can protect the system from unauthorized access. ACL can be used to allow or reject the packets from the router, or it can be used to access the router through Telnet (vty), SSH2 or SNMP.

The access list is classified into the standard IP access list and the extended IP access list, each of which is assigned the numbers <1-99>.

Table 22 Commands for setting ACL (Access Control List)

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| **access-list** <**1-99**> {**deny|permit**} *address* | Set up the standard IP access list  Set up the Source address/network only   * *address* ::= {any | A.B.C.D A.B.C.D | host A.B.C.D} | Config |
| **no access-list <1-99>** | Delete the access list | Config |

### Rules for ACL Creation

* Declare the access list with a smaller range first.
* Declare an access list that satisfies the condition more frequently first.
* If you don’t specify ‘permit any’ at the end of an access-list, ‘deny any’ is set up as default.

When you declare the conditions of an access list in many lines, you cannot delete or modify anything between lines, and the newly added conditions will be added as the last line(s).

### Configuration of Standard IP Access List

#### Permitting any access

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **access-list 1 permit any**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show running-config**  !  access-list 1 permit any  ! |

#### Denying any access

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **access-list 1 deny any**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show running-config**  !  access-list 1 deny any  ! |

#### Permit the Access from a Specific Host Only

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **access-list 1 permit host 192.168.0.3**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show running-config**  !  access-list 1 permit host 192.168.0.3  ! |

#### Permit the Access from a Specific Network Only

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **access-list 1 permit 192.168.0.0 255.255.255.0**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show running-config**  !  access-list 1 permit 192.168.0.0 255.255.255.0  ! |

#### Deny the Access from a Specific Network Only

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **access-list 1 deny 192.168.0.1 255.255.255.0**  Switch(config)# **access-list 1 permit any**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show running-config**  !  access-list 1 deny 192.168.0.0 255.255.255.0  access-list 1 permit any  ! |

### Configuration of Access List for Telnet Connection

Access list is applied by user and the configured access list can be set to permit/limit from remote access. The commands shown below are used to configure access list for Telnet connection.

The following example shows the procedure in the case of creating access list allowing 192.168.0.0/24 network to access the switch and limiting the Telnet access:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **access-list 1 permit 192.168.0.0 255.255.255.0**  Switch(config)# **username admin access-class 1**  Switch# **show running-config**  !  username admin privilege 15 password 0 admin  username admin access-class 1  !  access-list 1 permit 192.168.0.0 255.255.255.0  !  Switch# |

## Banner Configuration

The C9500 can register a login banner and MOTD banner. The login banner is a message displayed before a user logs into the system, while a MOTD banner is a message displayed after logging into the system. You can send messages like cautions to the user via a banner.

Table 23 Command for Login Banner and MOTD Banner

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| **banner login** *banner-string*  **banner login default** | Registers login banner.  *banner-string*: login banner message  default: default setting banner | Config |
| **no banner login** | Deletes login banner. | Config |
| **banner motd** *banner-string*  **banner motd** **default** | Registers MOTD banner.  *banner-string*: MOTD banner message  default: default MOTD banner message | Config |
| **no banner motd** | Deletes MOTD banner. | Config |

The system is basically registered as follows:

|  |
| --- |
| **L3 Switch** <- Login Banner  Switch login: root  Password:  **Hello.** <- MOTD Banner  Switch >enable  Switch # |

The following example shows how to change the logging in a banner. The banner can be several lines. The banner message is registered while the same end-character appears with start-character.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Switch#configure terminal  Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.  Switch(config)# banner login .  Enter TEXT message. End with the character '.'.  C9500 Switch  Login Banner TEST!  .  Switch(config)#  Switch(config)#exit  Switch(config)#**show running-config**  …  !  banner login ^C  C9500 Switch  Login Banner TEST!  ^C  !  … | | |
| *알림 및 경고* | | **Notice** | When you show the banner with the **‘show running-config’** command, make sure the start and end characters are **‘^C’** | |

The following example shows the login banner when logging in:

**C9500 Switch**

**Login Banner TEST!**

Switch login: root

Password:

Hello.

Switch >

## AFSMGR (Alarm Fault Status Manager)

AFS manager privides the log masking, report masking, fault class setting and management about Alarm, Status, and fault message in the SNMP trap event occurring from the system. Moreover it provides a search about faults currently occurring and a past history.

### Setting AFS Alarm

Table 24 Commands for Setting AFS

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| afs current *clear [alarm-index]* | Clears alarm that does not clear in the AFS event.  *alarm-index :* index <1-99999> | Config |
| afs history *clear* | removes the history of AFS event | Config |
| afs mask *enable|disable [afs-type [event-type [afs-id]]]* | Enables or disables the masking function about AFS event. If masking is enabled, the event does not occur.  *afs-*type: type of message *(*alarm, fault, status)  *event-*type: type of event (communications, environment, equipment, processing, protocol, qos, security)  *afs-id :* A01001, S01001, F01001,… | Config |
| afs severity *critcal|major|minor*  *afs-id* | Changes class about AFS event.  *afs-id :* A01001, S01001, F01001,… | Config |
| afs snmp *enable|disable [afs-type [event-type [afs-id]]]* | Enables or disables snmp trap reporting about AFS event. If SNMP trap reporting enable, the SNMP trap does not occur.  *afs-*type: type of message *(*alarm, fault, status)  *event-*type: type of event (communications, environment, equipment, processing, protocol, qos, security)  *afs-id :* A01001, S01001, F01001,… | Config |
| afs factory-default running-config [*mask|snmp*] | Changes the mask set to current afs running-config and snmp value with default-config.  *mask:* changes mask configuration only  *snm :* changes snmp configuration only |  |

### 

### Clear AFS Alarm Event

You can forcefully clear the Alarm when the error is not cleared while there is still an AFS Event.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show afs current**  -----------------------------------------------------------------------------  no id type level date  -----------------------------------------------------------------------------  3 A04003 processing major 2006-09-07 10:43:59  -----------------------------------------------------------------------------  Switch# **show afs current 3**  -----------------------------------------------------------------------------  Probable Cause MEMORY OVERLOAD ALARM  ID A04003  Type processing  Level major  Date 2006-09-07 10:43:59  Physical Location sys<1>  Logical Location  Addtional Text vlaue<45> thres<50>  -----------------------------------------------------------------------------  Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **afs current clear**  Switch# **show afs current**  -----------------------------------------------------------------------------  no id type level date  -----------------------------------------------------------------------------  ----------------------------------------------------------------------------- |

### Clearing AFS history

You can clear AFS history. The following example shows how to clear AFS history:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show afs history**  2006-08-06 09:21:22 A04002 processing maj on sys<1> vlaue<4> thres<1>  2006-08-06 09:21:22 A04001 processing maj on sys<1> vlaue<4> thres<3>  2006-08-06 09:21:22 A04003 processing maj on sys<1> vlaue<49> thres<50>  2006-08-06 09:21:23 A01002 equipment maj off sys<1>  Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **afs history clear**  Switch# **show afs history**  ########### start history ###########  Switch# |

### 

### Setting AFS Masking Function

In an AFS event, you can set AFS masking about a specific event. Before the event, set masking clears any masking, no message occurs.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show afs running-config**  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  ID Type Level Mask Snmp Desc  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  A01001 equipment critical disable enable system cold start alarm  A01002 equipment major disable enable system warm start alarm  Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **afs mask enable alarm**  Switch(config)# **afs mask enable status equipment**  Switch(config)# **afs mask enable fault qos F03023**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show running-config**  !  afs snmp enable alarm equipment A01001  afs snmp enable alarm equipment A01002  afs snmp enable status equipment S01003  afs snmp enable status equipment S01006  afs snmp enable fault qos F03023  !  Switch# **show afs running-config**  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  ID Type Level Mask Snmp Desc  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  A01001 equipment critical enable enable system cold start alarm  A01002 equipment major disable enable system warm start alarm  Switch# |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | Default value is disabled in masking setting and follows the setting value of default-config.  The default value of some messages (S02009, S06002, and F02003) are enabled. |

### Setting AFS Severity Class

In the middle of an AFS event you can change the alarm level of the event.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show afs running-config**  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  ID Type Level Mask Snmp Desc  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  A01001 equipment critical disable enable system cold start alarm  A01002 equipment major disable enable system warm start alarm  Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **afs severity major A01001**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show running-config**  !  afs severity major A01001  !  Switch# **show afs running-config**  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  ID Type Level Mask Snmp Desc  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  A01001 equipment major disable enable system cold start alarm  A01002 equipment major disable enable system warm start alarm  Switch# |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | Error class obeys the set value of the AFS default-config. |

### Setting AFS SNMP Trap

You can set SNMP Trap about an AFS event. Moreover, you can set All for AFS events or else set for each event accordingly.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show afs running-config**  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  ID Type Level Mask Snmp Desc  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  A01001 equipment critical disable enable system cold start alarm  A01002 equipment major disable enable system warm start alarm  S01003 equipment warning disable enable slot status change  S01006 equipment warning disable enable SFP status change  F03023 QoS warning disable enable crc count threshold alarm  Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **afs snmp disable alarm**  Switch(config)# **afs snmp disable status equipment**  Switch(config)# **afs snmp disable fault qos F03023**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show running-config**  afs snmp disable alarm equipment A01001  afs snmp disable alarm equipment A01002  afs snmp disable status equipment S01003  afs snmp disable status equipment S01006  afs snmp disable fault qos F03023  Switch# **show afs running-config**  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  ID Type Level Mask Snmp Desc  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  A01001 equipment critical disable disable system cold start alarm  A01002 equipment major disable disable system warm start alarm  S01003 equipment warning disable disable slot status change  S01006 equipment warning disable disable SFP status change  F03023 QoS warning disable disable crc count threshold alarm  Switch# |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | The default snmp trap setting is disabled. It obeys AFS default-config value. |

### Changing AFS Configuration with default-config

You can change afs mask and SNMP setting values when running the current system. You can also change the mask or SNMP as required.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# show afs default-config  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  ID Type Level Mask Snmp Desc  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  A01001 equipment critical disable disable system cold start alarm  A01002 equipment major disable disable system warm start alarm  A01006 equipment major disable disable power alarm  A01007 equipment critical disable disable fan alarm  A01014 equipment critical disable disable olt alarm  A02004 communication major disable disable onu ld shutdown  A02005 communication critical disable disable olt dying gasp alarm  A02006 communication critical disable disable olt link fault alarm  Switch# show afs running-config  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  ID Type Level Mask Snmp Desc  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  A01001 equipment critical disable disable system cold start alarm  A01002 equipment major enable enable system warm start alarm  A01006 equipment major enable disable power alarm  A01007 equipment critical enable enable fan alarm  A01014 equipment critical disable disable olt alarm  A02004 communication major disable disable onu ld shutdown  A02005 communication critical disable disable olt dying gasp alarm  A02006 communication critical disable disable olt link fault alarm  Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# afs factory-default running-config  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# show afs running-config  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  ID Type Level Mask Snmp Desc  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  A01001 equipment critical disable disable system cold start alarm  A01002 equipment major disable disable system warm start alarm  A01006 equipment major disable disable power alarm  A01007 equipment critical disable disable fan alarm  A01014 equipment critical disable disable olt alarm  A02004 communication major disable disable onu ld shutdown  A02005 communication critical disable disable olt dying gasp alarm  A02006 communication critical disable disable olt link fault alarm |

# Interface environment setting

This chapter describes the system interface.

## Overview

The interfaces supported in the C9500 are as follows:

Table 25 Interfaces Supported in C9500

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Interface | Type |
| Physical interfaces | * Gigabit Ethernet * 1000Base-X * TenGigabit Ethernet * 10GBase-X |
| PON interface | * GE-PON |
| * 10GE-PON |
| port-group interfaces | * Port-group |
| VLAN Interfaces | * VLAN |
| Loopback interface | * Loopback |
| Management interface | * Out of band interface for management |

To configure the interface environment, the following processes should be performed in advance:

1. Enter the config mode from the privileged mode using “configure terminal” command.
2. Enter into the interface mode using “interface” command.
3. Use the configuration commands for a particular interface.

## Common Commands

The commands commonly used in interface configuration are as follows:

Table 26 Common Commands

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **interface** *IFNAME* | Enters into the interface.  *IFNAME*: Name of the specific interface for configuration. |
| **description** *string* | Registers a description for the interface.  *string*: The description of the interface within a length of 80 characters maximum |
| **no description** | Deletes the description of the registered interface. |

### Interface name

The C9500 uses an interface name in all interface configurations. The interface name consists of an interface type identifier and an interface ID as shown below:

Table 27 Interface name

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Interface | Interface type | Interface name | Example |
| Physical interface | Gigabit Ethernet | “gi” + slot\_id + “/” + port\_id | gi7/1 |
|  | TenGigabit Ethernet | “te” + slot\_id + “/” + port\_id | te7/1 |
| PON interface | General PON | “pon” + slot\_id + “/” + port\_id | pon1/1 |
|  | GE-PON | “ep” + slot\_id + “/” + port\_id | ep1/1 |
|  | 10GE-PON | “tp” + slot\_id + “/” + port\_id | tp1/1 |
| Port-group interface | Port group | “po” + port-group id | po1 |
| VLAN interface | VLAN | “vlan” + vlan id | vlan10 |
| Loopback interface | Loopback | “lo” + id | lo0 |
| Management interface | Fast Ethernet | “eth” + id | eth0 |

### Interface id

Interface name consists of interface type and id. The following shows the naming of the C9500 interface and range supported.

Table 28 Interface ID and Range Supported

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Interface Type | ID | ID Range | Name |
| Gigabit ethernet  TenGigabit ethernet  General PON  GEPON  10GEPON  Port group  VLAN  LoopBack  management | slot id/port id  slot id/port id  slot id/port id  slot id/port id  slot id/port id  port-group id  vlan id  interface id  interface id | slot id:6~7, port id: 1-8  slot id:6~7, port id: 1-8  slot id:1~5 & 8~12, port id: 1-8  slot id:1~5 & 8~12, port id: 1-8  slot id:1~5 & 8~12, port id: 1-81 – 255  1 – 4094  0 – 3  0 | gi7/1  te6/1  pon1/1  ep1/1  tp1/1  po1, po255  vlan4094  lo0, lo3  eth0 | |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| *알림 및 경고* | **Notice** | PON cards are to be placed in slot #1~#5 and #8~#12 meanwhile Ethernet Line interface cards should be placed in slot #6 and #7. |

### Interface mode prompt

When you enter the interface mode with the interface command, the following prompt will be displayed on the screen. You can configure and change the interface environment in the interface mode.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch [A/L] (config-if-Giga6/1)# |

### Description Command

The description command is used to add a description on each interface. The description is the comment used to help the administrator remember the interface purpose and you can see the result with the “**show interface description**” command.

## Show Interface Information

The following commands are used to view the interface configuration information, the status information, and the statistical data:

Table 29 Interface information and status related commands

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| **show interface** [*ifname*] | * Displays the status and configuration of the interface. | Privileged |
| **show interface** **status** | * Displays the status of all the physical interface | Privileged |
| **show interface transceiver**  **[detail]** | * Displays the information of DDM (Digital Diagnostic Monitoring). | Privileged |
| **show interface trunk** | * Displays the switchport of physical/port-group interface | Privileged |

### Show interface Command

The show interface command is used to view the interface configuration information, the link status, and the interface-related statistics. The show interface command shows the information on all the interfaces defined. In the case of the GBIC interface if the DDM feature is supported the Diagnostic of the corresponding GBIC can be retrieved also. (Refer to DDM feature in DDM (Digital Diagnostic Monitoring)

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show interface**  gi1/1 is down  type 1000Base-GBIC,LC, 10,000M, 1,490nm  gbic inserted  vendor EZCONN  part name ETB43341-8LNT  Rev No Info  SN R00169  Date 061218  gbic diagnostic  temperature 47.0 'C vcc 3.25 Volt  rx power -inf dBm tx power -6.10 dBm  bias 14.1 mA  no auto-negotiation  speed set 1G  duplex set full  vlan ingress check enabled  Last clearing of counters 00:03:54  1 minutes input rate 0 bytes/sec, 0 packets/sec  1 minutes output rate 0 bytes/sec, 0 packets/sec  0 packets input, 0 bytes  Received 0 broadcasts, 0 multicasts  0 CRC, 0 oversize, 0 dropped  0 packets output, 0 bytes  Sent 0 broadcasts, 0 multicasts |

### 

### Show Interface status Command

This command is used to show the link, shutdown status, auto negotiation mode, speed/duplex mode, flow control, and interface type of all the physical interfaces.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show interface status  Port Name Status Vlan Duplex Speed Type  -------- -------------- ------------ ---------- ------- ------- ---------  Gi6/1 connected 100 full a-1000 1000BaseLX  Gi6/2 connected 100 full a-1000 1000BaseLX  Gi6/3 connected 100 full a-1000 1000BaseLX  Gi6/4 connected 100 full a-1000 1000BaseLX  Gi6/5 connected 200 full a-1000 1000BaseLX  Gi6/6 connected 200 full a-1000 1000BaseLX  Gi6/7 connected 200 full a-1000 1000BaseLX  Gi6/8 connected 200 full a-1000 1000BaseLX |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Notice** | The Captured image of CLI execution per each configuration case may be different according to equipped interface module and name. Refer to the interface id in Table 22. |

### Show interface trunk Command

Switchport means the port and port-group which operate at layer 2 switching mode. The command, ‘**Show interface trunk’, displays the** switchport information of physical port and port-group. The mode, native and tagged vlan lists are included in this Switchport information.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show interface trunk  Port Mode Native vlan  ---------- -------------------- -----------  Gi6/1 access 100  Gi6/2 access 100  Gi6/3 access 100  Gi6/4 access 100  Gi6/5 access 200  Gi6/6 access 200  Gi6/7 access 200  Gi6/8 access 200  Po10 access 100  Po20 access 200  Port Vlans allowed on trunk  ---------- --------------------------------------------------  Gi6/1 none  Gi6/2 none  Gi6/3 none  Gi6/4 none  Gi6/5 none  Gi6/6 none  Gi6/7 none  Gi6/8 none  Po10 none  Po20 none |

### show idprom Command

**show idprom** command is used to display the FRU (Field Replaceable Unit) information of the system. C9500 OLT presents relevant information for the following modules of FRU type.

* Chassis
* FAN
* FMU
* Module
* SCM
* PMU
* Power
* Slot
* Tranceiver

Below is the message to be displayed on the console window when **show idprom all** is executed.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show idprom all  IDPROM for chassis  Name = 'CommScope Epon System'  Description = 'CommScope Chassis System'  SNMP index = '1'  IDPROM for scu 1  Name = 'Physical Module SCM 1'  Description = 'CommScope Physical Module SCM 1'  SNMP index = '2'  IDPROM for scu 2  Name = 'Physical Module SCM 2'  Description = 'CommScope Physical Module SCM 2'  SNMP index = '3'  IDPROM for slot 1  Name = 'Physical Slot 1'  Description = 'CommScope Physical Slot 1'  SNMP index = '10'  IDPROM for slot 3  Name = 'Physical Slot 3'  Description = 'CommScope Physical Slot 3'  SNMP index = '14'  IDPROM for slot 4  Name = 'Physical Slot 4'  Description = 'CommScope Physical Slot 4'  SNMP index = '16'  IDPROM for slot 5  Name = 'Physical Slot 5'  Description = 'CommScope Physical Slot 5'  SNMP index = '18'  IDPROM for slot 6  Name = 'Physical Slot 6'  Description = 'CommScope Physical Slot 6'  SNMP index = '20'  IDPROM for slot 7  Name = 'Physical Slot 7'  Description = 'CommScope Physical Slot 7'  SNMP index = '22'  IDPROM for slot 8  Name = 'Physical Slot 8'  Description = 'CommScope Physical Slot 8'  SNMP index = '24'  IDPROM for pmu 1  Name = 'Container of Power Module 1'  Description = 'Container of Power Module 1'  SNMP index = '30'  IDPROM for pwr 1  Name = 'Power 1'  Description = 'Power 1'  SNMP index = '31'  IDPROM for slot 12  Name = 'Physical Slot 12'  Description = 'CommScope Physical Slot 12'  SNMP index = '32'  IDPROM for pmu 2  Name = 'Container of Power Module 2'  Description = 'Container of Power Module 2'  SNMP index = '40' |

## Physical Port Configuration

The following commands are used for the configuration of physical ports:

Table 30 Physical port configuration commands

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| **shutdown**  **no shutdown** | * Disables/enables the physical port | Interface |
| **auto-negotiation**  **no auto-negotiation** |      Enable/Disable speed auto-negotiation. | Interface |
| **speed (10|100|1000)**  **speed auto** | * Speed setting (Unit: Mbps) | Interface |
| **duplex (full-duplex|half-duplex)**  **duplex auto** | * Duplex mode setting | Interface |
| **flowcontrol**  **no flowcontrol** | * Turn flow-control On and Off | Interface |
| **carrier-delay** <0-60>  **carrier-delay msec** <0-1000> | * Configure Carrier-delay with the unit of second and milli second. | Interface |

### Shutdown

This command is to disable the physical port. To check the shutdown status of the physical port, use the show interface command.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch # **configure terminal**  Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.  Switch(config)# **interface TenGigabitEthernet 7/1**  Switch (config-if-TenGi7/1)# **shutdown** <- disable port  Switch (config-if-TenGi7/1**no shutdown** <- enable port  Switch (config-if-TenGi7/1)# |

### Speed and duplex

The speed options supported in each interface of C9500 are as follows:

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Type** | **auto-negotiation** | **speed** | **Duplex** |
| 1000Base-X | on | 1000 | Full |
| off | 1000 | Full |
| 10GBase-X | off | 10000 | Full |

When configuring speed or duplex, note the following:

* In case of 1000Base-X, speed configuration is not available. But auto-negotiation can be configured as either on or off. When auto-negotiation is set to “on” if any one optic cable is disconnected, both end will detect the disconnection. (remote fault detection)
* If both ends support auto-negotiation, we recommend auto-negotiation. However, either end of the link does not support auto-negotiation mode then you should operate them as manual mode at both ends.

### Uplink Line Speed setting

LIM-8X+ card, which takes care of uplink interface in a C9500 system, can support either 1Gbps or 10 Gbps transmission speed. The actual speed of any port is determined by two factors; its position in a card and the optic module to be plugged in. Eight ports are available on a LIM-8X+ card but not all of them can support 1Gbps speed. Only the second half of the eight, i.e. from port #5 to #8, can.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Port** | **Rates available** | **Remark** |
| #1 ~ #4 | 10 Gbps only | SFP+ type optic module should be used. |
| #5 ~ #8 | Either 1Gbps or 10 Gbps | To make it work at 1Gbps, SFP type module should be used and relevant setting is required. |

The following example shows how to configure a LIM-8X+ card to support 1Gbps operation.

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Switch[A/L](config)#liu10g 7 setmode ?

10g\_1g           ports 1~4 are 10GE mode, ports 5~8 are 1GE mode

default\_all\_10g  all 8 ports are 10GE mode(default)

Switch[A/L](config)#**liu10g 7 setmode 10g\_1g**

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Storm Control

Broadcast suppression refers to a function that limits broadcast traffic from flowing in the system in order to prevent the system overload caused by a broadcast storm. A broadcast storm refers to a phenomenon where a broadcast/multicast packet is flooded in the subnet and too much traffic deteriorates the network performance.

Errors in protocol stack implementation or in network configuration can cause a broadcast storm. Broadcast suppression measures the rate of the broadcast traffic on the subnet, compares the value with the threshold, and discards the broadcast traffic over the threshold.

Table 31 Broadcast Suppression

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| storm-control (*broadcast|multicast|unicast*) | Suppression of Multicast, broadcast, unicast, packet | Interface |
| storm-control level LEVEL  no storm-control level | Sets broadcast suppression rate | Interface |

To set broadcast suppression, it’s required to set the rate first. Then the setting for the traffic is required.

The following example shows a configuration of storm-control:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch # **configure terminal**  Switch(config)#  Switch(config)# int GigabitEthernet 5/3  Switch(config-if-Giga5/3)# **storm-control broadcast**  Switch(config-if-Giga5/3)# **storm-control multicast**  Switch# **show interface counters storm-control**  Port UniLvl MulLvl BrdLvl UcastDiscards McastDiscards BcastDiscards  ------------ ------ ------ ------ --------------- --------------- ---------------  Tp1/1 0 0 0 0 0 0  Tp1/2 0 0 0 0 0 0  Tp1/3 0 0 0 0 0 0  Tp1/4 0 0 0 0 0 0  Tp1/5 0 0 0 0 0 0  Tp1/6 0 0 0 0 0 0  Tp1/7 0 0 0 0 0 0  Tp1/8 0 0 0 0 0 0  Ep4/1 0 0 0 0 0 0  Ep4/2 0 0 0 0 0 0  ……  Switch# |

To disable storm-control, use ‘no storm-control’ command.

## Port mirroring

Port mirroring mirrors all the I/O traffic of a particular port (source port) to the destination port (target port) which the administrator has set so that the administrator can monitor all the packets of the port.

C9500 can monitor RX/TX traffic from different source ports to any one port by mirroring.

Table 32 Port Mirroring

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| mirror interface IFNAME direction (receive|transmit|both) | * Specifies the port which will be mirrored and traffic direction. | Interface |
| no mirror interface IFNAME  direction (receive|transmit) | * Release the port which is mirrored | Interface |

The following is an example of port mirroring.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#**configure terminal**  Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.  Switch(config)# **int TenGigabitEthernet 7/1**  Switch (config-if-TenGi7/1)# **mirror interface Te7/2 direction receive**  Switch (config-if-TenGi7/1)# **mirror interface Te7/3 direction receive**  Switch (config-if-TenGi7/1)# **mirror interface Te7/4 direction receive**  Switch (config-if-TenGi7/1)# end  Switch#**show mirror**  Mirror Test Port Name: TenGi7/1  Mirror option: Enabled  Mirror direction: receive  Monitored Port Name: TenGi7/2  Mirror Test Port Name: TenGi7/1  Mirror option: Enabled  Mirror direction: receive  Monitored Port Name: TenGi7/3  Mirror Test Port Name: TenGi7/1  Mirror option: Enabled  Mirror direction: receive  Monitored Port Name: TenGi7/4  Switch(config)# |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Notice** | Port mirroring cannot be configured at the same time with netflow. In case netflow is enabled, mirroring should be tried only after ‘**no mls netflow**’ is executed in config mode. |

## Layer 2 Interface Configuration

Layer 2 is an interface that works in the Layer 2 switching mode (IEEE 802.3 Bridged VLAN). In the C9500, the physical port and the port-group interface works in the Layer 2 switching mode.

This section describes the Layer 2 interface and the commands to set the physical port and the port-group as Layer 2 interface with examples.

### VLAN Trunking

Trunk refers to the point-to-point link between the ethernet switch and other network equipment (router, switch). Trunk can transmit multiple VLAN traffic to a link and you can extend VLAN to the entire network using trunks.

The C9500 supports 802.1Q trunking encapsulation for all ethernet interfaces and you can set up trunks in the single ethernet interface or the port-trunk interface.

### Layer 2 Interface mode

Layer 2 interface modes supported by the C9500 are the trunk mode and the access mode.

Table 33 Layer 2 Interface mode supported in C9500

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Mode | Description |
| switchport mode access | Non trunking mode.  Only native VLAN can be configured |
| switchport mode trunk | Trunking mode.  Single native VLAN and multiple tagged VLAN can be configured |

### Layer 2 Interface Defaults

The C9500 has the following default values when a physical port or a port-group is set as Layer 2 interface:

Table 34 Layer 2 Interface Defaults

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Item | Default |
| interface mode | switchport mode access |
| native VLAN | VLAN 1 |

### Enabling/disabling Layer 2 Interface

The commands for Layer 2 interface configure/cancel are as follows:

Table 35 Commands to enable/disable Layer 2 interface configuration

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| switchport | Enables Layer2 interface | Interface |
| no switchport | Disables Layer2 interface | Interface |

When an interface is set up as the first Layer 2 interface, the interface will have the defaults of Layer 2 interface and when the Layer 2 interface configuration is canceled, VLAN settings are also canceled, but if Layer 2 interface is enabled by switchport command, the previous configurations are recovered.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Notice** | All the physical ports of C9500 are configured as Layer 2 interface by default. |

### Trunk port setting

The following commands are used to set a physical port or a port-group interface as Layer 2 trunk port:

Table 36 Commands for Trunk port configuration

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| switchport mode trunk | * Configures trunk mode | Interface |
| switchport trunk native <*1-4094*> | * Configures trunk port native VLAN | Interface |
| no switchport trunk native | * Sets trunk port native VLAN to default | Interface |
| switchport trunk allowed vlan add <*2-4094*> | * Adds the trunk port as tagged VLAN | Interface |
| switchport trunk remove <*2-4094*>  switchport trunk remove all | * Removes the trunk port from the tagged VLAN | Interface |

The following example shows how to set a physical port as a Layer 2 trunk port:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#**configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **interface TenGigabitEthernet 7/1**  Switch (config-if- TenGi7/1)# **switchport mode trunk** ! trunk port set  Switch (config-if- TenGi7/1)# **switchport trunk allowed vlan** **add 2** ! tagged vlan set  Switch (config-if- TenGi7/1)# **switchport trunk native 2** ! native vlan set  Switch (config-if- TenGi7/1)# **switchport trunk allowed vlan** **add 3** ! tagged vlan set  Switch (config-if- TenGi7/1)# **switchport trunk allowed vlan add 4**  Switch (config-if- TenGi7/1)# **end** |

The following example shows how to set a port-group interface as a Layer 2 trunk port:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#**configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **interface po2**  Switch (config-if-po2)# **switchport mode trunk** ! trunk port set  Switch (config-if- TenGi7/1)# **switchport trunk allowed vlan** **add 2** ! tagged vlan set  Switch (config-if-po2)# **switchport trunk native 2** ! native VLAN set  Switch (config-if-po2)# **switchport trunk allowed vlan** **add 3** ! tagged vlan set  Switch (config-if-po2)# **switchport trunk** **allowed vlan add 4**  Switch (config-if-po2)# **end** |

### Access port setting

The commands to set a physical port or a port-group interface as a Layer 2 access port:

Table 37 Commands for Access port configuration

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| switchport mode access | Sets to access mode | Interface |
| switchport access VLAN <*1-4094*> | Sets native VLAN | Interface |
| no switchport access VLAN | Sets native VLAN to default (VLAN 1) | Interface |

The following example shows how to configure a physical port as a Layer 2 access port:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#**configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **interface TenGigabitEthernet 7/1**  Switch (config-if- TenGi7/1)# **switchport** ! layer2 interface set  Switch (config-if- TenGi7/1)# **switchport mode access** ! access port set  Switch (config-if- TenGi7/1)# **switchport access vlan 5** ! native vlan set |

The following example shows how to configure a port-group interface as a Layer 2 access port.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#**configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **interface po2**  Switch (config-if-po2)# **switchport mode access** ! access port set  Switch (config-if-po2)# **switchport access vlan 5** ! native vlan set |

## Port group

### Overview of Port Group

Port group is used to bring together more than one physical ports into a logical group to increase bandwidth and to get the link redundancy. A port group interface in the C9500 can be used as Layer 2 interface.

The following table shows the number of port groups available in C9500 by model:

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Model | Number of port groups | Max. no of ports per group |
| C9500 Series | 256 | 8 |

### Port group configuration

The commands for configuring Port group are as follows:

Table 38 Port Group Configuration Commands

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| **channel-group** *key* **mode on** | * Create a static port group. | Interface |
| **no port-group** *ifname* | * Remove a port-group | config |
| **port-channel load-balance dst-ip-port** | * Conduct load-balancing per destination ip and port address | Interface |
| **port-channel load-balance dst-mac** | * Conduct load-balancing per destination MAC address | Interface |
| **port-channel load-balance enhanced-hash** | * Conduct load-balancing based on improved hashing (RTAG7) | Interface |
| **port-channel load-balance src-dst-mac** | * Conduct load-balancing per MAC address | interface |
| **port-channel load-balance src-dst-ip** | * Conduct load-balancing per ip field | interface |
| **port-channel load-balance src-dst-port** | * Conduct load-balancing per tcp/udp port | interface |
| **no channel group** | * Remove the specified interface from the port-group. | Interface \* |
| **no interface port-channel <1-256>** | * Remove the specified Port group interface.   + Executed only when no member is present in the Port group | config |
| **show etherchannel** | * Shows port group configuration | Privileged |

## MAC Filtering

### MAC Filtering Overview

MAC filtering is used to filter traffic to a specific MAC address for L2 Switching. You can set MAC filtering for each VLAN.

### MAC Filtering Setting

The commands used for setting MAC filtering are given below.

Table 39 Commands for Setting MAC-filter

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| **mac-filter** *vlan-id mac-addr* **(all-drop | dst-drop | trap)** | * MAC Filter add | Config |
| **no mac-filter** *vlan-id mac-addr* | * MAC Filter delete | Config |

## MAC Filtering according to CPU Load

### MAC Filtering according to CPU Load OverView

The C9500 supports MAC Filtering for preset VLAN based on the CPU Load. The switch does not allow traffic for the Source MAC over the specific rate for specified time. So the abnormal activity like excessive traffic rate can be blocked in advance.

### MAC Filtering according to CPU Load Setting

Table 40 CPU-MAC-FILTER related commands

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| **cpu-mac-filter** | * Enable cpu-mac-filter function for specific vlan. | Interface |
| **cpu-mac-filter (broadcat| multicast)** | * Enable cpu-mac-filter function for broadcast/multicast packets of specific vlan. | Interface |
| **no cpu-mac-filter** | * Disable cpu-mac-filter function for specific vlan. | Interface |
| **no cpu-mac-filter (broadcat| multicast)** | * Disable cpu-mac-filter function for broadcast/multicast packets of specific vlan. | Interface |
| **cpu-mac-filter cpu-load <1-99>** | * Set the CPU Load threshold to apply MAC-filtering. | Config |
| **no cpu-mac-filter cpu-load** | * Set the CPU Load threshold to apply MAC-filtering to default. | Config |
| **cpu-mac-filter packet-threshold <1-5000>** |  | Config |
| **no cpu-mac-filter packet-threshold** | * Set the Threshold Rate of MAC for MAC-filtering to default. | Config |
| **cpu-mac-filter duration <1-1440>** | * Set the blocking duration time to apply MAC-filtering in minutes. | Config |
| **no cpu-mac-filter duration** | * Set the blocking duration time for MAC-filtering to default. | Config |
| **clear cpu-mac-filter <1-4094>** | * Clears the Filtering information for vlan Interface in which Cpu-mac-filter is set. | Privileged |
| **show cpu-mac-filter information** | * Shows the settings of Cpu-mac-filter and details of Interface. | Privileged |
| **show cpu-mac-filter table** | * Shows the information on the source mac in which currently mac-filtering is applied. | Privileged |

When enabling CPU-MAC-FILTERING in a specific VLAN, it works by the parameter set by the Default value. When changing this value, as described in the above table, the settings can be made in config mode for blocking duration time and packet threshold and cpu load. The settings can be checked by show cpu-mac-filter information, the information on source mac being filtered can be checked by show cpu-mac-filter table.

## Traffic-control

### Traffic-control OverView

This command is a measure to prevent the ingress of excessive traffic through a specific port. If the ingress traffic is more than the preset value, the traffic of the port is blocked. If the traffic is decreased down to the preset value, the mode will return to the normal mode.

### Traffic-control Setting

Basic commands for setting Traffic-control are as follows.

Table 41 Commands for setting traffic-control

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| **traffic-control pps {all | multicast | unicast | broadcast} | {inbound | outbound} <10-1400000> <10-1400000> block-mode** | Set the traffic amount which is allowed for either ‘in’ or ‘out’ direction by the unit of pps. If more than the set amount would flow in the port will be shut down. | Interface |
| **traffic-control pps {all | multicast | unicast | broadcast} | {inbound | outbound} <10-1400000> <10-1400000> alarm-only** | Set the traffic amount which is allowed for either ‘in’ or ‘out’ direction by the unit of pps. If more than the set amount would flow in the port will not be shut down. Instead the system generates syslog and snmp-trap. | Interface |
| **traffic-control kbps {inbound | outbound} <10-1400000> <10-1400000> block-mode** | Set the traffic amount which is allowed for either ‘in’ or ‘out’ direction by the unit of kbps. If more than the set amount would flow in the port will be shut down. | Interface |
| **traffic-control kbps {inbound | outbound} <10-1400000> <10-1400000> alarm-only** | Set the traffic amount which is allowed for either ‘in’ or ‘out’ direction by the unit of kbps. If more than the set amount would flow in the port will not be shut down. Instead the system generates syslog and snmp-trap. | Interface |
| **no traffic-control** | Remove the traffic limit for the port. | Interface |
| **show port traffic-control** | Display the traffic-control information. | Privileged |

# VLAN

This chapter describes the VLANs of the system.

Virtual LAN (VLAN here-after) is the logical group of network users and resources. The users and resources are connected through the ports of the switch. VLAN enables simplified network management that was once time-consuming tasks of network administration, while increasing efficiency in network operations.

This chapter covers the following subjects:

* VLAN overview
* VLAN types
* VLAN settings
* Displaying VLAN Settings

## VLAN overview

VLAN (Virtual LAN) is an advanced LAN technology for devices to communicate as if they were on the same physical LAN regardless of their physical network. Devices that belong to the same VLAN constitute a broadcast domain. VLAN is logically classified by a certain function, organization, or application, and prevents traffic from flowing into other VLANs; it transmits traffic only to the same VLAN equipment to improve network performance and security. That is, with VLAN, LAN segments are not classified by the physical hardware connection but flexibly by the logical groups made by the administrator.

For example, all the workstations and servers used by a particular workgroup can be connected in a same VLAN regardless of their physical network connection. That is, the system administrator can reconfigure a network just through a software configuration without the physical movement or arrangement of equipment or a cable.

VLAN is used to provide a segmentation service, which was provided by routers in the conventional LAN configuration. VLAN provides scalability, security, and network management. In VLAN configuration, a router provides broadcast filtering, security, short address, and traffic flow control. The switch in the defined group does not deliver any frames including the broadcast frames between two VLANs.

## Advantages of VLAN

VLANs have the following advantages:

### Efficient Traffic Control

With traditional networks, network congestion can be caused by broadcast traffic that is transmitted to all network devices, regardless of whether they require it or not. Only devices in the same VLAN are the members of the same broadcast domain and receive all broadcast packets. Meanwhile, broadcast traffic is not transmitted to the port of the switch in another VLAN. Therefore, VLAN prevents broadcast traffic from spreading to other networks and thus increases network efficiency.

### Enhanced Network Security

With traditional networks, anybody who accesses the network can access the network resources. That is, if a user accesses the network analyzer through a hub, he/she can see the network flow. In a VLAN, only the devices in the same VLAN can be seen, and the users can no longer access all the network resources just by connection a computer to the switch port. If a device in VLAN *A* wants to communicate with a device in VLAN *B*, the traffic must pass through a routing device.

### Flexible Network and Device management

System administrators of traditional networks spend much of their time in dealing with moves and changes of facilities. For example, if the equipment is moved to other sub-network, the network administrator should update the IP addresses of each terminal manually. However, the network administrator can solve this problem by implementing logical network through VLAN that ensures easy movement of equipment to support flexible network management.

## VLAN Types

The C9500 supports up to 4094 VLANs and creates VLANs according to the following criteria:

* Physical port
* 802.1Q tag
* Hybrid type (Combination of the port-based VLAN and Tag-based VLAN)

### Port-based VLANs

In a port-based VLAN, a VLAN name is given to a group of one or more ports on the switch. A switch port can be a member of only one port-based VLAN. The switch port assigned to a port-based VLAN is called the *access port*. One access port belongs to only one port-based VLAN. In other words, all ports are assigned as the access ports of VLAN 1 (default VLAN).

For example, the C9500 assigns 2 ports to each VLAN A and VLAN B, and 2 ports to VLAN C.



**VLAN A**

**VLAN B**

**VLAN C**

Figure 2 Example of a Port-based VLAN Configuration (C9500)

For the members of different VLANs to communicate with one another, they are physically in a same I/O module and the traffic must be routed by the switch. This means each VLAN must be set as a router interface with a unique IP address.

#### Connecting Switches with a Port-Based VLAN

To connect two switches with a port-based VLAN, do the following tasks:

1. Assign the access ports of each switch to the VLAN.
2. Use one of the access port assigned from each switch to the VLAN to connect the two switches with cable. To connect several VLANs, you have to connect the switches for each VLAN with cable.

The figure below illustrates how to bind two systems into one VLAN. First, two ports of switch 1 are assigned to VLAN A, and two ports of switch 2 are assigned to an access port of VLAN A. Two switches are connected to each other and form a single broadcast domain like the following figure.



**VLAN A**

**Switch 1**

**Switch 2**

Figure 3 Single Port-based VLANs Connecting 2 Switches

To create multiple VLANs that span two switches in a port-based VLAN, a port on switch 1 must be cabled to a port on switch 2 for each VLAN you want to have span across two switches. At least one port on each system must be assigned as the access port of the corresponding VLANs. The following figure illustrates two VLANs spanning two systems. Port 1~4 in switch 1 is an access port of VLAN A, and Port 9~14 are assigned as an access port of VLAN B. Port 1~4 in switch 2 are an access port of VLAN A, and Port 9~14 are assigned as an access port of VLAN B.



**VLAN A**

**VLAN B**

**Switch 1**

**Switch 2**

Figure 4 Two Port-based VLANs Connecting 2 Switches

VLAN A binds switch 1 and switch 2 as a connection between port 2 of switch 1 and port 1 of switch 2. VLAN B binds switch 1 and switch 2 as connecting port 11 of switch 1 and port 12 of switch 2.

With this way of configuration, you can create multiple VLANs that connect many switches in a daisy-chained fashion. Each switch must have a dedicated access port for each VLAN connection and each dedicated access port must be connected to the access port that is a member of its VLAN on the next switch.

### Tagged VLANs

Tagging is the process of inserting markers (called a *tag*) into the Ethernet frame. The tag contains the identification number of a specific VLAN, called the *VLANid*.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Notice** | With 802.1Q tag frame, you can generate a frame larger than 1,518 bytes, the maximum size of IEEE 802.3/Ethernet frame. However, this large frame can affect the frame error counter of other devices that do not support 802.1Q and can cause network connection problems, if there are any bridge and router that do not support 802.1Q on the path. |

### Uses of Tagged VLANs

Tagging a VLAN is the most common way to generate a VLAN binding many switches. A point-to-point link connecting two switches or a switch and a router is called a *trunk*. A trunk can transmit many VLANs traffic and extends VLANs from one switch to another switch. A port that is a member of a tagged VLAN and that sends and receives tagged frames is called the *trunk port*. Using tags, several VLANs can send and receive frames by using one or more trunks.

As the previous figure describes, in a port-based VLAN, a pair of ports must be assigned in each VLAN to connect two switches. In a tagged VLAN, multiple VLANs connecting two switches can be generated with a single trunk.

Another advantage of a tagged VLAN is that a port can be a member of multiple VLANs. A tagged VLAN is particularly useful for the network equipment (such as a server) that must belong to multiple VLANs. In this case, the network equipment must be equipped with a network interface card (NIC) that supports 802.1Q tagging.

### Assigning a VLAN Tag

Each VLAN may be assigned a VLANid when generated. When a port is assigned and used as a trunk port of a tagged VLAN, the port uses a frame with 802.1Q VLAN tag. In this case, the VLANid of the tagged VLAN is used as the frame tag.

Not all ports of a VLAN must be tagged. When the traffic from a port is forwarded out of a switch, the switch determines whether each destination port of the frame should use tagged or untagged frame formats for that VLAN. The switch adds or deletes tags, as required, based on the port configuration for that VLAN.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Notice** | When a frame with VLAN tag is sent to a port with no VLAN configured, the frame is discarded. For example, if a frame whose VLANid is 30 is sent to a port that is a member of VLANs whose ids are 10 and 20, the switch discards the frame. |

The figure below illustrates the physical configuration of a network using tagged frames and untagged frames:



**VLAN A**

**VLAN B**

**Switch 3** supported IEEE 802.1Q

**Trunk port**

**Switch 1**

**Switch 2**

Figure 5 Physical Diagram of Tagged and Untagged Frame

The following figure shows the logical diagram of the same network:

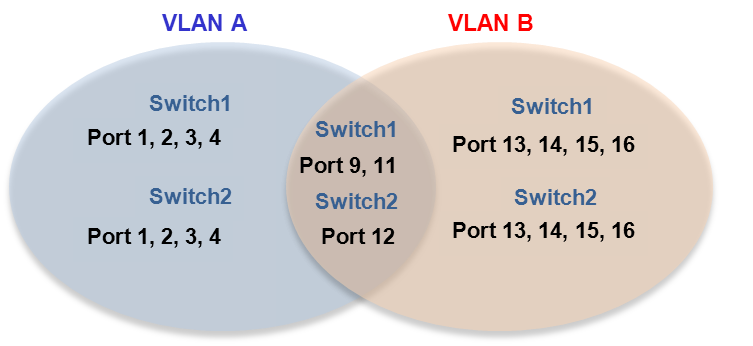


Figure 6 Logical Diagram of Tagged Frame and Untagged frame

* In previous figures, the trunk port (tagged port) of each switch transmits the traffic for both VLAN *a* and VLAN *b*.
* The trunk port of each switch transmits the frame tagged.
* The server connected to port 17 of System 1 is equipped with the NIC that supports 802.1Q tagging
* All other terminals send and receive untagged frames.

When a frame passes through a switch, the switch decides whether to use tagged frames or untagged frames for the destination port. All the frames from/to the server/the trunk port are tagged, but the frames from/to other devices of the network are not untagged.

### Hybrid VLAN (Mixing Port-based VLAN and Tagged VLAN)

You can use both a port-based VLAN and a tagged VLAN in one switch. Under the condition that there is only one port-based VLAN that a port belongs to, a port can be a member of many VLANs. That is, a port can be a member of one port-based VLAN and many tagged VLANs at the same time.

## VLAN Configuration

### VLAN ID

You can use a number between 1 and 4094 as VLANid, the identifier of VLAN. When a switch is initialized, a VLAN 1 is generated as *default VLAN*. Therefore, newly generated VLANs cannot use 1 as their VLANid. The VLANid is used as the tag that the port belonging to the tagged VLAN attaches to a frame when it operates in the trunk mode. If you set a wrong VLANid, frames may be sent to a wrong VLAN, so you have to consider the entire network configuration to set the VLANid.

### Default VLAN

Each switch has a default VLAN with the following characteristics:

* Default VLAN uses 1 as VLANid.
* It contains all the interface ports on a new or initialized switch.
* Default VLAN does not use any tags.
* All the ports in the switch initialization status have native VLAN as the default VLAN.

### Native VLAN

Each physical port has Port VLAN ID (PVID). In all 802.1Q ports, the ports’ native VLAN IDs are assigned as PVID. All the untagged frames are sent to the VLAN that the PVID indicates. When a tagged frame is sent to a port, the tag is used as it is. However, if an untagged frame is sent to a port, the PVID in the frame is regarded as a tag.

As shown in the following figure, since untagged frames and frames with PVID can co-exist in the network, the bridges or end station supporting the VLAN can be connected with the bridges or end station not supporting VLAN through cable.

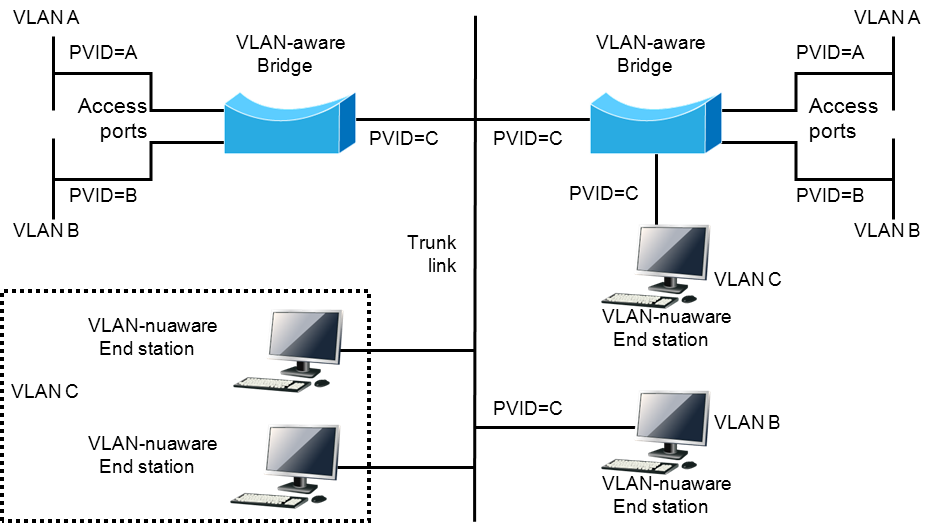


Figure 7 Native VLAN

For example, assume that two end stations not supporting the VLAN are connected through the trunk link as shown in the left bottom of above figure. The two end stations cannot be aware of VLAN, but since the PVID of the bridge that recognizes VLAN is configured as VLAN *c*, they are included in VLAN *c*. The end stations that cannot be aware of VLAN only transmit untagged frames, and when a bridge that recognizes VLAN receives these untagged frames, it sends them to VLAN *c*.

## VLAN Setting

This section describes the commands used for VLAN configuration on C9500. VLAN configuration has the following steps.

1. Create and name the VLAN.
2. Set the mode of the port according to the type of the VLAN where the port will be assigned
3. Assign one or more ports to the VLAN. When you add each port to the VLAN, decide whether to use 802.1Q tags or not.

### Commands for VLAN Configuration

The following table is the commands used for VLAN configuration:

Table 42 Commands for VLAN Configuration

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Commands | Description | Mode |
| VLAN database | Access to the VLAN database mode | Config |
| VLAN *vlanid* | Creates VLAN as a value of v*lanid*  Default VLAN (VLANid=1) name cannot be changed.  *vlanid* : The unique VLAN identifier, a number between 2-4094 | VLAN database |
| VLAN *vlanid* name WORD (state (enable|disable)|) | Creates VLAN as a value of v*lanid*  WORD: VLAN ascii value | VLAN database |
| VLAN *vlanid* bridge <1-256> name WORD (state (enable|disable)|) | Creates VLAN as a value of v*lanid*  WORD: VLAN ascii value  Creates valn to bridge. |  |
| switchport | Changes type of port as L2.  If it changes to L2 port, it becomes a member of VLAN to access mode. | Interface |
| switchport mode {access|hybrid|trunk} | Set the type of VLAN on the corresponding port.  *access:* Set the port as an access mode (Port-based VLAN). It works as an interface of a single VLAN that sends and receives untagged frames.  *hybrid*: Set the port as a hybrid mode  *trunk* :Set the port as a trunk mode (Tagged-VLAN). The port sends and receives tagged frame. In the case of untagged frame, it regards as native VLAN ID. | Interface |
| switchport access  VLAN *vlanid* | Set the port as VLAN access port.  When the access mode is set, the port works as a member of the VLAN.  *Vlanid*: VLANid, a number between 2 and 4094 | Interface |
| Switchport hybrid VLAN *vlanid* | Sets VLAN member port.ln case that the received frame is untagged, set relevant frame as VLAN id.  *Vlanid:* 2-4094 | Interface |
| switchport trunk  allowed VLAN  (add|all|except)  *vlanid* | Sets port as trunk port of VLAN.  *Vlanid:* 2-4094 | Interface |
| switchport trunk  native *vlanid* | If the port is 802.1Q trunk mode, that is, a trunk port of a tagged VLAN set a native LAN for the untagged traffic that is sent and received.  If a native VLAN is not set, the default VLAN (VLANid = 1) is set as the native VLAN.  *vlanid* : a number between 2 and 4094 | Interface |
| switchport trunk  (remove|none) *vlanid* | Exclude the port from the members of the specified VLAN.  *vlanid:* a number between 2 and 4094.  *none:* Exclude from all VLAN members. | Interface |

### Examples of VLAN Configuration

The following example shows how to configure VLAN whose VLAN id is 1000, assign the IP address 132.15.121.1 to VLAN, and assign the VLAN into two ports:

|  |
| --- |
| shu#  shu#configure terminal  Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.  shu(config)#**VLAN database**  shu(config-VLAN)#**VLAN 1000**  shu(config-VLAN)#exit  shu(config)#interface VLAN 1000  shu(config-if-Vlan1000)#ip address 132.15.121.1/24  shu(config-if-Vlan1000)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/1  shu(config-if-Giga6/1)#**switchport mode access**  shu(config-if-Giga6/1)#**switchport access VLAN 1000**  shu(config-if-Giga6/1)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/3  shu(config-if-Giga6/3)#**switchport mode access**  shu(config-if-Giga6/3)#**switchport access VLAN 1000**  shu(config-if-Giga6/3)#end  shu#**show VLAN**  VLAN Name Status Ports  ---- -------------------------------- --------- -------------------------  1 default active Gi6/2  2 VLAN0002 active  3 VLAN0003 active  4 VLAN0004 active  5 VLAN0005 active  6 VLAN0006 active  7 VLAN0007 active  8 VLAN0008 active  9 VLAN0009 active  10 VLAN0010 active  11 VLAN0011 active  12 VLAN0012 active  100 VLAN0100 active  **1000 VLAN1000 active Gi6/1 Gi6/3**  shu# |

The following example shows how to configure a tagged VLAN and to assign trunk port. The example creates a tagged VLAN which the vlanid is 2000 and adds two ports as a trunk port of VLAN 2000.

|  |
| --- |
| shu#configure terminal  Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.  shu(config)#**VLAN database**  shu(config-VLAN)#**VLAN 2000**  shu(config-VLAN)#exit  shu(config)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/4  shu(config-if-Giga6/4)#**switchport mode trunk**  shu(config-if-Giga6/4)#**switchport trunk allowed VLAN add 2000**  shu(config-if-Giga6/4)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/5  shu(config-if-Giga6/5)#**switchport mode trunk**  shu(config-if-Giga6/5)#**switchport trunk allowed VLAN add 2000**  shu(config-if-Giga6/5)#end  shu#**show VLAN all**  Bridge VLAN ID Name State Member ports  (u)-Untagged, (t)-Tagged  --------------- ------- ---------------- ------- -------------------------------  0 1 default ACTIVE Gi6/1 (u) **Gi6/4 (u)**  **Gi6/5 (u)**  0 2 VLAN0002 ACTIVE  0 3 VLAN0003 ACTIVE  0 4 VLAN0004 ACTIVE  0 5 VLAN0005 ACTIVE  0 6 VLAN0006 ACTIVE  0 7 VLAN0007 ACTIVE  0 8 VLAN0008 ACTIVE  0 9 VLAN0009 ACTIVE  0 10 VLAN0010 ACTIVE  0 11 VLAN0011 ACTIVE  0 12 VLAN0012 ACTIVE  0 100 VLAN0100 ACTIVE  0 1000 VLAN1000 ACTIVE Gi6/2 (u) Gi6/3 (u)  **0 2000 VLAN2000 ACTIVE Gi6/4 (t) Gi6/5 (t)**  shu# |

The following example shows how to configure a hybrid VLAN (Tagged, Untagged VLAN). Two ports are set to VLAN 3000 as a hybrid port and VLAN 4000 as tagged ports.

|  |
| --- |
| shu#configure terminal  Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.  shu(config)#VLAN database  shu(config-VLAN)#**VLAN 3000**  shu(config-VLAN)#**VLAN 4000**  shu(config-VLAN)#exit  shu(config)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/6  shu(config-if-Giga6/6)#switchport  shu(config-if-Giga6/6)#**switchport mode hybrid**  shu(config-if-Giga6/6)#**switchport hybrid VLAN 3000**  shu(config-if-Giga6/6)#**switchport hybrid allowed VLAN add 4000 egress-tagged enable**  shu(config-if-Giga6/6)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/7  shu(config-if-Giga6/7)#switchport  shu(config-if-Giga6/7)#**switchport mode hybrid**  shu(config-if-Giga6/7)#**switchport hybrid VLAN 3000**  shu(config-if-Giga6/7)#**switchport hybrid allowed VLAN add 4000 egress-tagged enable**  shu(config-if-Giga6/7)#end  shu#show VLAN all  Bridge VLAN ID Name State Member ports  (u)-Untagged, (t)-Tagged  --------------- ------- ---------------- ------- -------------------------------  0 1 default ACTIVE Gi6/1 (u) Gi6/4 (u)  Gi6/5 (u)  0 2 VLAN0002 ACTIVE  0 3 VLAN0003 ACTIVE  0 6 VLAN0006 ACTIVE  0 7 VLAN0007 ACTIVE  0 8 VLAN0008 ACTIVE  0 9 VLAN0009 ACTIVE  0 10 VLAN0010 ACTIVE  0 11 VLAN0011 ACTIVE  0 12 VLAN0012 ACTIVE  0 100 VLAN0100 ACTIVE  0 1000 VLAN1000 ACTIVE Gi6/2 (u) Gi6/3 (u)  0 2000 VLAN2000 ACTIVE Gi6/4 (t) Gi6/5 (t)  **0 3000 VLAN3000 ACTIVE Gi6/6 (u) Gi6/7 (u)**  **0 4000 VLAN4000 ACTIVE Gi6/6 (t) Gi6/7 (t)**  shu# |

The example shown in the following figure creates a *sales* VLAN whose VLAN id is 120. VLAN includes both tagged port (trunk port) and untagged port (access port). Port gi 6/1and gi 6/2 has tags, and port gi 6/3 and gi 6/4 are untagged. If not explicitly set, ports are configured as untagged.

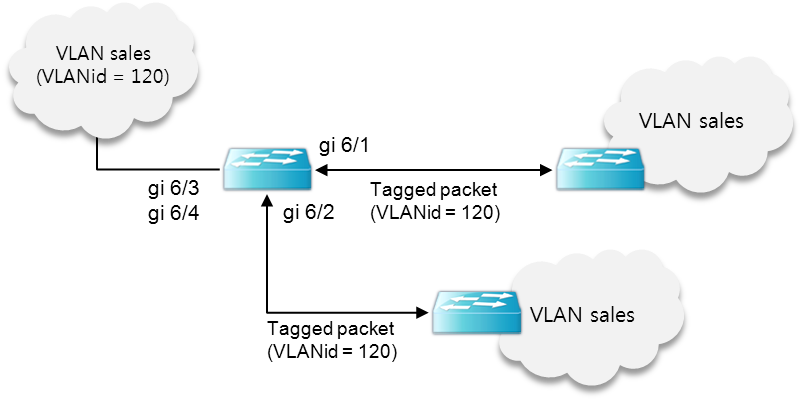


Figure 8 Configuration Example – Tagged and Untagged VLAN

|  |
| --- |
| shu#configure terminal  Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.  shu(config)#**VLAN database**  shu(config-VLAN)#**VLAN 120**  shu(config-VLAN)#exit  shu(config)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/1  shu(config-if-Giga6/1)#switchport  shu(config-if-Giga6/1)#**switchport mode trunk**  shu(config-if-Giga6/1)#**switchport trunk allowed VLAN add 120**  shu(config-if-Giga6/1)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/2  shu(config-if-Giga6/2)#switchport  shu(config-if-Giga6/2)#**switchport mode trunk**  shu(config-if-Giga6/2)#**switchport trunk allowed VLAN add 120**  shu(config-if-Giga6/2)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/3  shu(config-if-Giga6/3)#switchport  shu(config-if-Giga6/3)#**switchport access VLAN 120**  shu(config-if-Giga6/3)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/4  shu(config-if-Giga6/4)#switchport  shu(config-if-Giga6/4)#**switchport access VLAN 120**  shu(config-if-Giga6/4)#end  shu#**show VLAN all**  Bridge VLAN ID Name State Member ports  (u)-Untagged, (t)-Tagged  --------------- ------- ---------------- ------- -------------------------------  **0 1 default ACTIVE Gi6/1 (u) Gi6/2 (u)**  **Gi6/5 (u)**  **0 120 VLAN0120 ACTIVE Gi6/1 (t) Gi6/2 (t)**  **Gi6/3 (u) Gi6/4 (u)**  shu# |

The following example shows how to configure port gi 6/1 as a member of the port-based VLAN *Marketing* and the tagged VLAN *Engineering*. VLAN *Marketing* VLAN ID is 200, and VLAN *Engineering* VLAN ID is 400.

|  |
| --- |
| shu#configure terminal  Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.  shu(config)#**VLAN database**  shu(config-VLAN)#**VLAN 200**  shu(config-VLAN)#**VLAN 400**  shu(config-VLAN)#exit  shu(config)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/1  shu(config-if-Giga6/1)#**switchport mode trunk**  shu(config-if-Giga6/1)#**switchport trunk allowed VLAN add 200**  shu(config-if-Giga6/1)#**switchport trunk native VLAN 200**  shu(config-if-Giga6/1)#**switchport trunk allowed VLAN add 400**  shu(config-if-Giga6/1)#end  shu#show VLAN all  Bridge VLAN ID Name State Member ports  (u)-Untagged, (t)-Tagged  --------------- ------- ---------------- ------- ------------------------  0 1 default ACTIVE Gi6/1 (t)  0 100 VLAN0100 ACTIVE  0 120 VLAN0120 ACTIVE Gi6/1 (t)  0 200 VLAN0200 ACTIVE **Gi6/1 (u)**  0 400 VLAN0400 ACTIVE **Gi6/1 (t)**  shu# |

When port gi 6/1 receives untagged frames, the switch sends the frames to the member port of VLAN *marketing*.

## Displaying VLAN Settings

The following command is used to display VLAN configuration information:

Table 43 Displaying VLAN Settings

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| show vlan | Displays VLAN information in summary:   * VLANid * Member port * VLAN belonged to bridge * Spanning-tree mode | Privileged |
| show vlan all | Displays VLAN information as below:   * VLANid * Member port * tag, untagged | Privileged |
| show interface trunk (module <1-6>|) | Displays VLAN information as below:   * Port * VLAN Mode * Native VLAN, Trunk VLAN | Privileged |
| show interface summary vlan | Displays VLAN information as below:   * VLAN id | Privileged |

The following example shows how to display the VLAN information:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show vlans**  VLAN Name Status Ports  ---- -------------------------- --------- -------------------------------------  1 default active Gi6/1 Gi6/2 Gi6/3 Gi6/4  Gi6/5 Gi6/6 Gi6/7 Gi6/8  Tp10/1 Tp10/2 Tp10/3 Tp10/4  Tp10/5 Tp10/6 Tp10/7 Tp10/8 64 VLAN0064 active  65 VLAN0065 active  66 VLAN0066 active  67 VLAN0067 active  78 VLAN0078 active  VLAN MTU BridgeNo BrdgMode  ---- ---------- -------- ------------ ---------------  1 1500 0 vlan-bridge  64 1500 0 vlan-bridge  65 1500 0 vlan-bridge  66 1500 0 vlan-bridge  67 1500 0 vlan-bridge  78 1500 0 vlan-bridge  Switch# |
|  |

## Private Edge VLAN

Private edge VLAN are the ports exsiting in a segment (i.e. within the VLAN), but they can only communicate between permitted ports, while the communications between other ports are blocked on Layer 2. In other words, it makes a VLAN inside the VLAN. So the location in the switch is important in the private edge VLAN. Another important thing is the independence between two ports that are being protected between different switches. The protected ports do not generate any traffic (unicast, multicast, broadcast) to other ports, and other ports in the same switch also do not generate any traffic to the protected ports.

Traffic can not be sent to the ports protected on L2, and all traffic should be communicated between the protected ports only through L3 equipment.

Two methods to set the uplink between private edge VLANs in C9500:

* IFNAME

Specify the uplink using the port name (ex. Gi6/1, gi7/1, po1…)

* VLANID

In a network in which STP/RSTP is used, an uplink of root ports for the STP and RSTP need to be set. In this case, the uplink can be changed.

Table 44 Private Edge VLAN setting table

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| (no) private-edge-VLAN *IFNAME* | Enter the IFNAME to set as uplink of the private edge VLAN to specific Interface. | Interface |
| (no) private-edge-VLAN stp-root-port *VLANID* | Set the uplink of the private edge VLAN as root port of VLANID at specific interface. | Interface |

The ports to be protected are ep1/1 and ep1/2, and uplink is Te7/1. Traffic between the protected ports is not allowed, but only the traffic of Te7/1 is allowed.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# interface ep1/1  Switch(config-if-ep1/1)# private-edge-VLAN te7/1  Switch(config-if-ep1/1)# interface ep1/2  Switch(config-if-ep1/2)# private-edge-VLAN te7/1 |

# IP Configuration

This chapter explains how to set an IP address.

The key requirement for IP configuration is to assign an IP address to the network interface. With IP address assigned, the interface is activated as a Layer 3 interface.

The C9500 can assign an IP configuration to the following interfaces.

* VLAN interface
* Loopback interface
* Management interface

## Assigning an IP address

An IP address identifies the network where the received IP datagram is to be sent. Some IP addresses are reserved for a special purpose and they cannot be used for host, subnet, or network address. The following is the range of IP addresses and shows which addresses are reserved and which addresses are available.

Table 45 Available IP Addresses

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Class | Range | Status |
| A | 0.0.0.0  1.0.0.0 ~ 126.0.0.0  127.0.0.0 | Reserved  Available  Reserved |
| B | 128.0.0.0 ~ 191.254.0.0  191.255.0.0 | Available  Reserved |
| C | 192.0.0.0  192.0.1.0 ~ 223.255.255.254  224.255.255.0 | Reserved  Available  Reserved |
| D | 224.0.0.0 ~ 239.255.255.255 | Multicast Group Address |
| E | 240.0.0.0 ~ 255.255.255.254  255.255.255.255 | Reserved  Broadcast |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | For official descriptions on IP addresses, refer to RFC1166, Internet Number. To obtain a network number, just ask your ISP (Internet Service Provider). |

The C9500 supports multiple IP addresses per interface. The C9500 allows up to 10 IP addresses for an interface. Multiple IP addresses can be used in a variety of situations. The following are the most common applications:

There might not be enough host addresses for a particular network segment.Suppose your subnetting allows up to 254 hosts per logical subnet, but on one physical subnet you must have 300 host addresses. Using secondary IP addresses on the routers or access servers allows you to have two logical subnets using one physical subnet.

Many older networks were built using Level 2 bridges, and were not subnetted. The judicious use of secondary addresses can aid in the transition to a subnetted, router-based network. Routers on an older, bridged segment can easily be made aware that many subnets are on that segment.

Two subnets of a single network might otherwise be separated by another network. You can create a single network from subnets that are physically separated by another network if you use a secondary address. In this instance, the first network is extended, or layered on top of the second network. Note that a subnet cannot appear on more than one active interface of the router at a time.

To assign an IP address to a network interface, use the following commands while in interface configuration mode:

Table 46 IP Commands for Assigning IP Address

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| ip address *ipaddress/prefixlen* | Assigns an IP address to an interface. |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | Prefixlen is the bit length to divide network among IP addresses. |

## ARP (Address Resolution Protocol)

To check the information of the ARP table, use the following commands in privilege mode. You can set Static ARP and Proxy ARP.

Table 47 Commands for ARP Configuration

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Commands | Description | Mode |
| show arp | * Display the entries of an ARP table. | Privileged |
| show arp static | * Display the entries which have been set as static by “arp” command. | Privileged |
| clear arp-cache | * Delete the entries of an ARP table | Privileged |
| Clear arp-cache interface IFNAME | * Delete the ARP table entries for specified interface | Privileged |
| show arp access-list | * Display the ARP table entries which have been registered by ACL command. | Privileged |

## Configuring Static Routes

The static route is the route defined by the user to send the packets along the specified path from the source to the destination. If the routing protocol cannot be used to configure the route to a destination, the static route is extremely important. It is also useful to indicate the gateway where the packets that cannot be routed will be sent.

To configure a static route, use the commands below:

Table 48 Commands for configuring Static route path

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| ip route {destination-prefix mask | destination-ipaddress/mask} {gateway-ipaddress | null0} [distance-value] | * Registers a static route. * Destination-prefix: Specifies the network number of the destination-prefix destination. * Mask: Specifies the mask of the mask destination network. * Gateway-IP Address: Specifies the IP address of the gateway device. * Null: Sets the null interface as a gateway. * Distance-value : A number between 1 and 255 is used |

A system remembers the static route until it is deleted (use no format of IP route command in the global config mode). However, the static route can overlap with dynamic routing information by carefully assigning the administrative distance value. Each dynamic routing protocol has the default administrative distance value as listed in the table below. If you want a static route to be overlapped with the dynamic routing protocol information, set the administrative distance of the static route to be larger than the dynamic protocol value.

Table 49 Default administrative distances of dynamic routing protocol

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| item | Basic Setting Valu |
| Route Source | Default Distance |
| Connected interface | 0 |
| Static route | 1 |
| Exterior Border Gateway Protocol(BGP) | 20 |
| OSPF | 110 |
| RIP | 120 |
| Interior BGP | 200 |
| Unknown | 255 |

When an interface is disconnected, all the static routes passing through the interface are deleted from the IP routing table. When no more hops are available for forwarding the router address in a static route, the static route is deleted from the IP routing table.

To display the static route information, use the following command in the privileged mode.

Table 50 Showing IP route Information

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **show ip route static** | * Shows IP route information |

## IP Configuration Example

This section provides IP configuration examples:

* Assign IP address to network interface
* Creating a Network from Separated Subnets Examples
* ARP
* Static Route

The following example shows how to assign a C class IP address, 192.10.25.1 to vlan5 interface of the switch.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch(config)# **interface** *vlan5*  Switch(config-if-vlan5)# **ip address** *192.10.25.1/24* |

In the following example, Subnet 1 and 2 of 131.108.0.0 network are separated by the backbone network. Two networks are configured as a logical network.

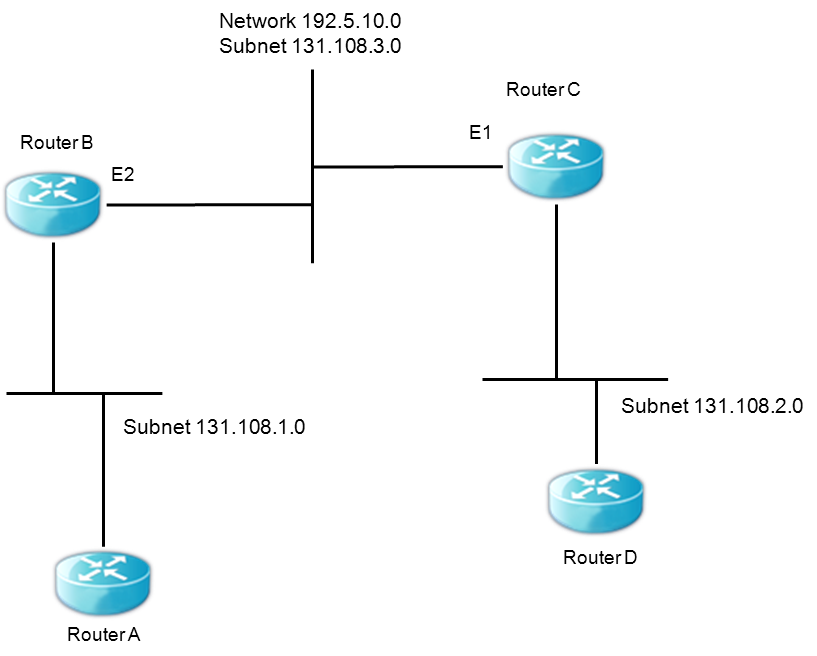


Figure 9 Network Configuration Example – multiple IP address

|  |
| --- |
| **Router B Configuration**  Switch(config)# **interface vlan***2*  Switch(config-int-vlan2)# **ip address** *192.5.10.1/24*  Switch(config-int-vlan2)# **ip address** *131.108.3.1/24 secondary*  **Router C Configuration**  Switch(config)# **interface vlan2**  Switch(config-int-vlan2)# **ip address** *192.5.10.2/24*  Switch(config-int-vlan2)# **ip address** *131.108.3.2/24 secondary* |

The following example is to show the contents of an ARP table

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#**show arp**  Protocol Address Hardware Addr Type Interface Port  --------- ---------------- ----------------- --------- ------------ -----------------  Internet 20.0.1.1 00:07:70:9e:f0:03 dynamic Vlan20 Port-channel1  Internet 21.0.1.1 00:07:70:9e:f0:03 dynamic Vlan21 Port-channel2  Internet 210.1.1.254 00:07:70:9e:75:f8 dynamic eth0  Internet 210.1.0.254 00:07:70:9e:75:f8 dynamic eth0 |

The following command is used to register a static ARP entry to an ARP table.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch(config)# **arp** *142.10.52.196 0010.073c.0514 vlan1 gi2*  Switch# **show arp**  -------------------------------------------------------------------  IP Address MAC Address Interface PORT RefCnt Flags  -------------------------------------------------------------------  142.10.52.196 0010.073c.0514 vlan1 gi2 1 P |

The following command is used to delete a static ARP entry from the ARP table.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch(config)# **no arp** *142.10.52.196* |

The following example shows how to configure a static route that allows the host connected to 20.1.1.0 network to communicate with a host in 192.168.2.0 network.

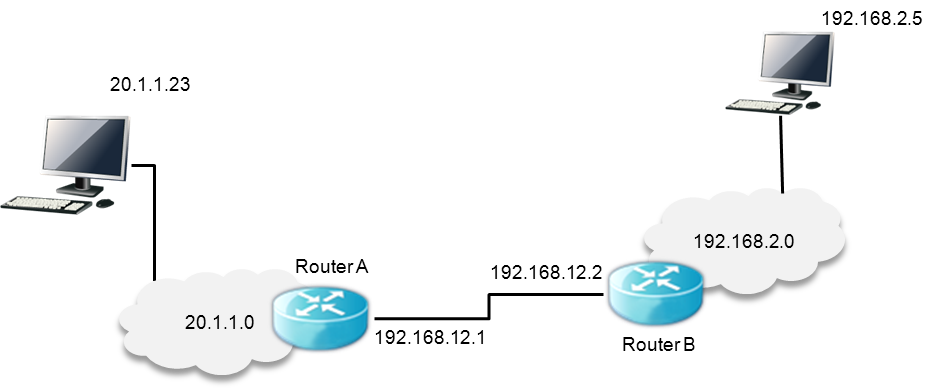


Figure 10 Network Configuration Example – Static route

|  |
| --- |
| **Router A Configuration**  Switch(config)#**ip route** *192.168.2.0*/24 192.168.12.2  Switch(config)#**show ip route static**  Codes: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, O - OSPF,  B - BGP, > - selected route, \* - FIB route  S>\* 192.168.2.0/24 [1/0] via 192.168.12.2 vlan2  Switch(config)#  **Router B Configuration**  Switch(config)#**ip route** *20.1.1.0/8* 192.168.12.1  Switch(config)#**show ip route static**  Codes: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, O - OSPF,  B - BGP, > - selected route, \* - FIB route  S 20.1.1.0/8 [1/0] via 192.168.12.1 vlan2  Switch(config)# |

# DHCP

This chapter describes the DHCP configuration of system.

## DHCP Server Features and Configuration

### Overview of DHCP Server Functions

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) assigns reusable IP addresses and configuration parameters to other IP hosts (DHCP clients) in an IP network. DHCP is designed for the configuration of large-scale networks and complex TCP/IP software to reduce the workload on the IP network administrator. The most important configuration information that a client receives from the server is the IP address of the client.

DHCP is an extension of BOOTP, but there are two big differences between the two:

* DHCP sets a client to be assigned IP addresses for a limited time span so that the IP addresses can be reassigned to other clients.
* DHCP provides the method for a client to set additional IP configuration parameters required to work in a TCP/IP network.

C9500 server provides the DHCP server functions, assigning IP addresses from the address pool in the switch to a client and managing the addresses. If DHCP cannot satisfy DHCP requests in its database, it may send the requests to one or more assistant DHCP servers that the administrator has configured.

#### IP Address Allocation of DHCP Server

DHCP supports three ways for IP address allocation as follows:

* Automatic allocation – DHCP allocates a permanent IP address to the client.
* Manual Allocation – The network administrator assigns an IP address to a client and DHCP is used simply to convey the assigned address to the client.
* Dynamic Allocation – DHCP assigns an IP address to a client for a limited period of time.

The available configuration parameters are listed in RFC 2131 and the main parameters are as follows:

* Subnet mask
* Router
* Domain
* Domain Name Server(DNS)

#### C9500 Switch as a DHCP Server

The following figure shows the basic steps that occur when a DHCP client request an IP address from a DHCP server (C9500):

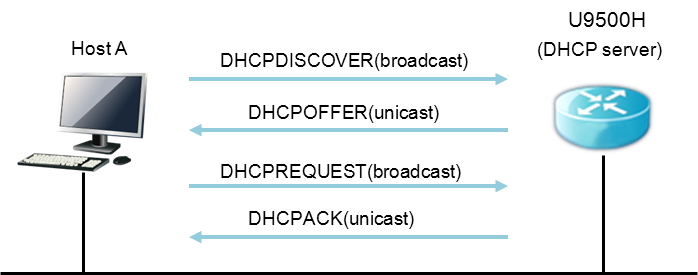


Figure 11 C9500 Switch as a DHCP server

1. The Client Host A sends broadcast message DHCPDISCOVER to the DHCP server.
2. DHCP server sends configuration parameters including IP address, a domain name, and a lease for the IP address, to the client by using the unicast message DHCPOFFER.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | A DHCP client may receive offers from more than one DHCP server and can accept any one of the offers: however, the client usually accepts the first offer it receives. Additionally, the offer from the DHCP server is not a guarantee that the IP address will be allocated to the client: however, the server usually reserves the address until the client has had a chance to formally request the address. |

1. The client sends the formal request for the supplied IP address to DHCP server by using the broadcast message DHCPREQUEST.
2. DHCP server verifies that the IP address is assigned to the client by sending the unicast message DHCPACK to the client.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | The formal request for the offered IP address (the DHCPREQUEST message) that is sent by the client is broadcast so that all other DHCP servers that received the DHCPDISCOVER broadcast message from the client can reclaim the IP addresses that they offered to the client. |

#### C9500 Switch as a DHCP relay agent

DHCP relay is the host forwarding DHCP packet between DHCP client and DHCP server in each different subnet.

DHCP relay agent records (DHCP packet’s giaddr field) value on gateway address and insert relay agent information to DHCP packet. Then you can set to send it to server.

If you set the C9500 as DHCP relay agent, the DHCP client and DHCP server forwards DHCP packet to each other.



Figure 12 Transmitting DHCP server Message as a DHCP relay agent

1. DHCP client sends broadcast message, *DHCPDISCOVER* to the IP requested.
2. DHCP relay agent receives the IP request message from DHCP client, and sent the message to DHCP server by unicast.
3. When the DHCP server receives a message from the DHCP relay agent, it sends the DHCPOFFER message to the DHCP relay agent by unicast. The message contains information including IP address, default gateway etc. of the client (an IP address recorded in giaddr field is used as a destination IP).
4. The DHCP relay agent sends the DHCPOFFER message to the client.
5. DHCPREQUEST and DHCPACK messages are transferred by the DHCP relay agent in a same manner between the DHCP server and the client.

#### Advantages of DHCP Server

The features of the C9500 server have the following advantages:

* Reduced Internet access cost – Using automatic IP address assignment at each remote site substantially reduces internet access costs. Static IP addresses are considerably more expensive to purchase than are automatically allocated IP addresses.
* Reduced client configuration tasks and costs – Since DHCP is easy to configure, you can minimize the costs related to equipment configuration and unprofessional users can also use DHCP with ease.
* Centralized management – As the DHCP server maintains configurations for several subnets, an administrator only needs to update a single, central server when configuration parameters change.

### DHCP Pool Configuration

You can configure a DHCPNetwork Pool with a name that is a symbolic string (such as “CommScope”) or an integer (such as “0”). For DHCP network pool settings, change the current mode into the DHCP pool configuration mode where you can set the parameters such as IP subnet number and default router. To set a DHCP address pool, you have to complete required tasks illustrated in the following section.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | Different network pools can be configured into a single group and different subnets of one VLAN should be in a same group. |

#### Setting DHCP Network Pool Name and Entering DHCP Configuration mode

To configure the DHCP network pool name and enter DHCP pool configuration mode, use the following command in global mode:

Table 51 IP DHCP Pool

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Commnad | Description |
| ip dhcp pool *name* | Generates a name for DHCP Network Pool  Enters the DHCP network pool configuration mode identified as “config-dhcp#” prompt. |

The following example shows setting a DHCP Network Pool name as ‘network\_pool1”. You can use up to 31 characters.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# ip dhcp pool network\_pool1  Switch(dhcp-config)# exit  Switch# show running-config  . . .  !  ip dhcp pool network\_pool1  !  . . . |

#### DHCP Subnet and Network Mask Configuration

To configure IP address for the newly created DHCP address pool and server network mask, use the following command in DHCP Network Pool Configuration mode:

Table 52 DHCP Subnet and Network Mask Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **network** *network-number***/***prefix-length* | Specifies the sub network number and mask for DHCP address pool. |

The following shows an example where setting DHCP Subnet and Network mask for 100.0.0.0/24:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# ip dhcp pool network\_pool1  Switch(dhcp-config)# network 100.0.0.0/24  Switch# show running-config  . . .  !  ip dhcp pool network\_pool1  network 100.0.0.0/24  !  . . . |

#### Setting IP Address Range to be assigned in Network Pool

Set address range to assign to clients in DHCP network pool. Non-consecutive many addresses range can be assigned in a single network pool.

Table 53 Setting IP Address Range to be assigned in Network Pool

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| range *lowest-address* *highest-address* | Sets the IP address range to be assigned to clients in a subnet.  This command should be used after DHCP subnet and network mask are set. |

The following example shows setting IP address range, from 100.0.0.1 to 100, which will be assigned in network pool:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# ip dhcp pool network\_pool1  Switch(dhcp-config)# range 100.0.0.1 100.0.0.100  Switch# show running-config  . . .  !  ip dhcp pool network\_pool1  network 100.0.0.0/24  range 100.0.0.1 100.0.0.100  !  . . . |

#### Setting the Default Router for Client

After the DHCP client is booted, the client sends packets to its default router. The IP address of the default router must be on the same sub network as the client. The following command is used to set the default router for DHCP client in the DHCP pool configuration mode:

Table 54 Setting the Default Router for Client

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| default-router *address* | Shows the IP address of a default router for the DHCP client |

The following example shows setting the default router for 100.0.1 for a client in DHCP server:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# ip dhcp pool network\_pool1  Switch(dhcp-config)# default-router 100.0.0.1  Switch(dhcp-config)# exit  Switch# show running-config  . . .  !  ip dhcp pool network\_pool1  default-router 100.0.0.1  network 100.0.0.0/24  range 100.0.0.1 100.0.0.100  !  . . . |

#### Setting DNS IP Server for Client

DHCP clients query DNS IP servers when they need to correlate host names to IP addresses. To configure the DNS IP servers that are available to a DHCP client, use the following command in DHCP pool configuration mode:

Table 55 Setting DNS IP Server for Client

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| dns-server *address* | * Specifies the IP address of the DNS server that the DHCP client can use. |

The following is an example of setting DNS Server for 200.0.0.1, 200.0.0.2 in DHCP server for the client:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# ip dhcp pool network\_pool1  Switch(dhcp-config)# dns-server 200.0.0.1  Switch(dhcp-config)# exit  Switch# show running-config  . . .  !  ip dhcp pool network\_pool1  dns-server 200.0.0.1  default-router 100.0.0.1  network 100.0.0.0/24  range 100.0.0.1 100.0.0.100  !  . . . |

#### Setting the Domain Name for Client

The domain name of a DHCP client includes the client in the general network group. The following command is used to set the domain name string for a client in DHCP pool configuration mode:

Table 56 Setting the Domain Name for Client

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| domain-name *domain* | Specifies the domain name for a client |

The following is an example of setting a domain name as “CommScope.com” in a DHCP server for the client.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# ip dhcp pool network\_pool1  Switch(dhcp-config)# domain-name CommScope.com  Switch(dhcp-config)# exit  Switch# show running-config  . . .  !  ip dhcp pool network\_pool1  dns-server 200.0.0.1  domain-name CommScope.com  default-router 100.0.0.1  network 100.0.0.0/24  range 100.0.0.1 100.0.0.100  !  . . . |

#### Setting Group for Network Pool

Network group includes multiple DHCP network pools, and network pools in the same group share the IP pool.

Table 57 Setting Group for Network Pool

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| group *group-name* | Displays group name |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | In case that one interface consists of multiple IP addresses, network pool of each IP address should be configured with a same group name. |

The following is an example of binding different network pools into “CommScope\_pool”

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# ip dhcp pool network\_pool1  Switch(dhcp-config)# group CommScope\_pool  Switch(dhcp-config)# exit  Switch# show running-config  . . .  !  ip dhcp pool network\_pool1  dns-server 200.0.0.1  domain-name CommScope.com  default-router 100.0.0.1  network 100.0.0.0/24  range 100.0.0.1 100.0.0.100  group CommScope\_pool  !  . . . |

#### Setting the Address Lease Time

By default, each IP address assigned by a DHCP server comes with a one-hour lease, which is the amount of time that the address is valid. To change the lease value for an IP address, use the following command in DHCP pool configuration mode:

Table 58 Setting the Address Lease Time

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| lease {days hours minutes|infinite} | Specifies the lease period  Default : one hour  Infinite: Use automatic allocation system leasing IP address permanently to the host. |

The following is an example of setting the lease time for 20 minutes:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch(config)# ip dhcp pool network\_pool1  Switch(dhcp-config)# lease 0 0 20  Switch(dhcp-config)# exit  Switch# show running-config  . . .  !  ip dhcp pool network\_pool1  dns-server 200.0.0.1  lease 0 0 20  domain-name CommScope.com  default-router 100.0.0.1  network 100.0.0.0/24  range 100.0.0.1 100.0.0.100  group CommScope\_pool  ! |

### Enabling DHCP Server Function

By default, the DHCP server functions of the switch are not enabled. To enable the features in which are disabled, use the following command in global configuration mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| service dhcp | * Enable the DHCP server functions of the switch. * Use the **no** command to disable the DHCP server functions. |

The following example shows how to enable DHCP server function.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# service dhcp  Switch# sh running-config  !  . . .  service dhcp  . . .  ! |

## DHCP relay agent Features and Configuration

### DHCP relay agent Overview

DHCP relay is the host forwarding DHCP packet between DHCP client and DHCP server in each different sunet.

DHCP relay agent records (DHCP packet’s giaddr field) value on gateway address and insert relay agent information to DHCP packet. Then you can set to send it to server.

If you set C9500 as DHCP relay agent, DHCP client and DHCP server forwards DHCP packet each other.



Figure 13 Message transmissions of DHCP server as a DHCP relay agent

1. DHCP client sends broadcast message, *DHCPDISCOVER,* to request an IP address.
2. DHCP relay agent receives the IP request message from DHCP client, and transfer the message to DHCP server by unicast.
3. When the DHCP server receives a message from the DHCP relay agent, it sends the DHCPOFFER message to the DHCP relay agent by unicast. The message contains information including IP address, default gateway etc. of the client (an IP address recorded in giaddr field is used as a destination IP).
4. The DHCP relay agent sends the DHCPOFFER message to the client.
5. DHCPREQUEST and DHCPACK messages are transferred by the DHCP relay agent in a same manner between the DHCP server and the client.

### Enabling DHCP Relay Function

By default, the DHCP relay agent function is not enabled. To enable the DHCP relay agent, use the following command in global configuration mode:

Table 59 Enabling DHCP Server Function

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| service dhcp relay | * Enables DHCP Relay function of router * Use no format of this command to disable the DHCP relay. |

The following example shows how to enable a DHCP relay function.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# service dhcp relay  Switch(config)# exit  Switch# show ip dhcp relay  DHCP relay : Enabled  DHCP Smart Relay feature : Disabled  DHCP Smart Relay retry count : 3  DHCP server-id based relay : Disabled  Verification of MAC address : Enabled  Insertion of option 82 : Disabled  DHCP Option82 Management-IP : 0.0.0.0  DHCP maximum hop count : 10  Global rate-limit (per MAC) : 0/0/0  DHCP helper-address is configured on following servers:  none |

### DHCP Server Configuration on DHCP Relay Agent

To run DHCP relay agent, you set DHCP server to DHCP discover/request message from DHCP client. Relay agent can set server to per interface receiving DHCP packet or server to forward regardless to interface receiving the packet.

When you set DHCP server regardless of interface with setting DHCP message with RX, use the following command:

Table 60 DHCP Server Configuration on DHCP Relay Agent

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip dhcp-server** *address* | Sets an IP address of the DHCP server that a DHCP relay agent will forward a DHCP discover/request message to.  To delete the setting, use no command. |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | DHCP relay Agent of C9500 can have up to 20 helper-addresses. |

The following example shows how to set a server address in DHCP relay agent:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# ip dhcp-server 192.168.0.254  Switch(config)# exit  Switch#  Switch#  Switch# show ip dhcp relay  DHCP relay : Enabled  DHCP Smart Relay feature : Disabled  DHCP Smart Relay retry count : 3  DHCP server-id based relay : Disabled  Verification of MAC address : Enabled  Insertion of option 82 : Disabled  DHCP Option82 Management-IP : 0.0.0.0  DHCP maximum hop count : 10  Global rate-limit (per MAC) : 0/0/0  DHCP helper-address is configured on following servers:  192.168.0.254 |

### DHCP relay information option (OPTION82) Configuration

The DHCP relay agent, when it transfers a DHCP request from a DHCP client to DHCP server, can provide DHCP relay information option by which the information of DHCP relay agent itself and client interface. Then, the DHCP Server will assign an IP address and determine host configuration policy by seeing the Option82 information. For example, if a certain specified port of a specified switch is correlated with a MAC address ‘a’, later when a request with the same port of the same switch combined with different MAC address, let’s say ‘b’ would arrive in DHCP server, then the DHCP server can reject or ignore it.

As shown in the following figure, DHCP Option82 is only used between DHCP Relay and DHCP Server. DHCP Relay shall add DHCP Option82 into the packet when it forwards the packet sent from a DHCP Client which is heading for DHCP Server, and remove it from the packet which is sent from DHCP Server to DHCP Client.

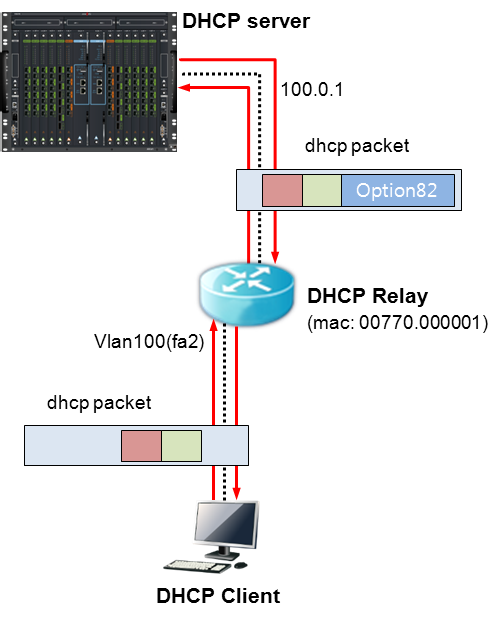


Figure 14 DHCP Relay Option82

#### Enabling DHCP relay information option

To enable the relay information option function of C9500 DHCP Relay Agent, use the following command:

Table 61 Enabling DHCP relay agent Information option

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip dhcp relay information option** | Enables DHCP relay agent information option  By default, the feature is not enabled.  Use no format to exclude relay agent information option in router. |

The following shows an example of adding the relay agent information option function of DHCP relay agent:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# ip dhcp relay information option  Switch(config)# exit  Switch#  Switch# show ip dhcp relay  DHCP relay : Enabled  DHCP Smart Relay feature : Disabled  DHCP Smart Relay retry count : 3  DHCP server-id based relay : Disabled  Verification of MAC address : Enabled  Insertion of option 82 : Enabled  DHCP relay information policy : replace  DHCP Option82 Management-IP : 0.0.0.0  DHCP maximum hop count : 10  Global rate-limit (per MAC) : 0/0/0  DHCP helper-address is configured on following servers:  192.168.0.254 |

#### Relay agent information option reforwarding Policy Configuration

The default policy of the system is to replace the relay information of the packet received from DHCP client with the relay information of the Switch. You can change the default policy of the switch using the following command in global mode:

Table 62 Relay agent information option reforwarding Policy Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip dhcp relay information policy {append|keep|replace}** | * The default is set to replace. * append: adds relay information to existing relay information * keep: maintains the existing relay information option: and adds relay information option if no relay agent information option in router. * replace: Replaces the relay information option in router with relay information option. |

In the following example, DHCP Relay Information Option reforwarding is set to keep:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# ip dhcp relay information policy keep  Switch(config)# exit  Switch# show ip dhcp relay  DHCP relay : Enabled  DHCP Smart Relay feature : Disabled  DHCP Smart Relay retry count : 3  DHCP server-id based relay : Disabled  Verification of MAC address : Enabled  Insertion of option 82 : Enabled  DHCP relay information policy : keep  DHCP Option82 Management-IP : 0.0.0.0  DHCP maximum hop count : 10  Global rate-limit (per MAC) : 0/0/0  DHCP helper-address is configured on following servers:  192.168.0.254 |

### DHCP Smart Relay Configuration

The system forwards the packet to DHCP server with configuring primary IP address of interface received DHCP packet from DHCP client with giaddr field of DHCP packet.

Normally, a DHCP relay agent forwards DHCP\_DISCOVER message to a DHCP server only with a primary IP address on an interface, even if there is more than one IP address on the interface.

If the smart relay forwarding is enabled, a DHCP relay agent will retry sending DHCP discover message with a secondary IP address, in the case of no response from the DHCP server.

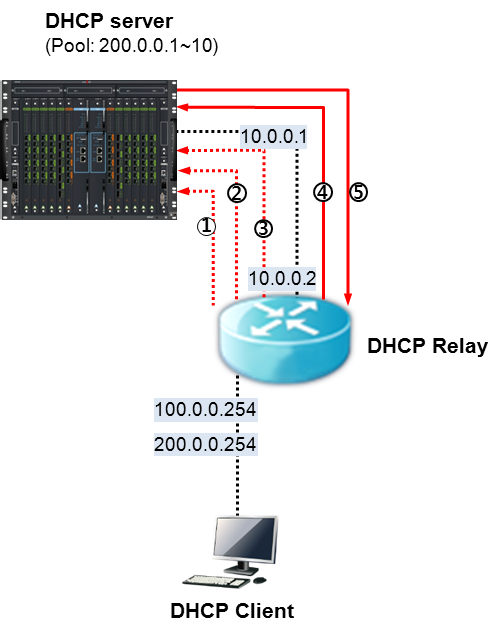


Figure 15 DHCP Smart-Relay running procedure

To enable DHCP smart-relay, use the following command.

Table 63 enabling DHCP smart-relay

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip dhcp smart-relay** | Enables DHCP smart-relay function  By default, the feature is set to disabled.  Use no format command to disable the function. |

The following is an example of Setting up DHCP Smart-Relay:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)#  Switch(config)# ip dhcp smart-relay  Switch(config)# exit  Switch#  Switch#  Switch# show ip dhcp relay  DHCP relay : Enabled  DHCP Smart Relay feature : Enabled  DHCP Smart Relay retry count : 3  DHCP server-id based relay : Disabled  Verification of MAC address : Enabled  Insertion of option 82 : Enabled  DHCP relay information policy : keep  DHCP Option82 Management-IP : 0.0.0.0  DHCP maximum hop count : 10  Global rate-limit (per MAC) : 0/0/0  DHCP helper-address is configured on following servers:  192.168.0.254 |

### DHCP Relay Verify MAC-Address Configuration

DHCP relay agent uses the following items among fields of DHCP packets to recognize DHCP client that requests for IP.

1. source MAC address
2. client hardware address(chaddr field)
3. client identifier option (option61)

To block IP assigning request from vicious client, the DHCP relay agent check above three fields of DHCP discover message. In case that the three filelds are not the same, you can set not to forward DHCP discover message to the server.

To drop the DHCP discover message whose client hardware address or client identifier option has been changed, use the following command:

Table 64 DHCP Relay Verify MAC-Address Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip dhcp relay verify mac-address** | * When a client hardware address or client identifier option of DHCP discover message has been changed it does not forward the message to the server. * By default this is enabled. * To disable the function, use no command |

The following is an example of deactivating the function of “DHCP relay agent verifies MAC-address”:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# no ip dhcp relay verify mac-address  Switch(config)# exit  Switch# show ip dhcp relay  DHCP relay : Enabled  DHCP Smart Relay feature : Enabled  DHCP Smart Relay retry count : 3  DHCP server-id based relay : Disabled  Verification of MAC address : Disabled  Insertion of option 82 : Enabled  DHCP relay information policy : keep  DHCP Option82 Management-IP : 0.0.0.0  DHCP maximum hop count : 10  Global rate-limit (per MAC) : 0/0/0  DHCP helper-address is configured on following servers:  192.168.0.254 |

### 

### DHCP relay rate-limit Set-up

In C9500 Series DHCP relay agent can control the number of DHCP Discover or DHCP Request packets by means of setting the Rate-limit, which is set for a second. The following figure shows how C9500 permits and drops packets as time goes when the Rate-limit is set to 30.

0s 1s 2s 2s

30 Permits

30 Permits

20 Drops

20 Drops

Figure 16 DHCP Relay Rate-limit in work

To activate DHCP Relay Rate-limit function use the commands in Global mode. DHCP Relay Rate-limit function is available per MAC address.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| ip dhcp relay rate-limit <0-100> | * Set the number of DHCP packets - Discover and Request altogether - that are allowed to pass per a second whereas all the DHCP packets are coming from an identical DHCP client. * Default setting is ‘Not activated’ * Use ‘no’ prefix in front of the command to deactivate the function. |
| ip dhcp relay rate-limit discover <0-100> | * Set the number of DHCP Discover packets that are allowed to pass per a second whereas all the DHCP packets are coming from an identical DHCP client. |
| ip dhcp relay rate-limit request <0-100> | * Set the number of DHCP Request packets that are allowed to pass per a second whereas all the DHCP packets are coming from an identical DHCP client. |

The below example shows how to set DHCP Relay Rate-limit per MAC.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# ip dhcp relay rate-limit 30  Switch(config)# exit  Switch#  Switch# show ip dhcp relay  DHCP relay : Enabled  DHCP Smart Relay feature : Enabled  DHCP Smart Relay retry count : 3  DHCP server-id based relay : Disabled  Verification of MAC address : Disabled  Insertion of option 82 : Enabled  DHCP relay information policy : keep  DHCP Option82 Management-IP : 0.0.0.0  DHCP maximum hop count : 10  Global rate-limit (per MAC) : 30/0/0  DHCP helper-address is configured on following servers:  192.168.0.254 |

Regardless of DHCP Client if you want to activate DHCP Relay Rate-limit per interface, then you may use the commands in below table in the interface mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| ip dhcp relay rate-limit <0-100> | * Set the number of DHCP Discover or Request packets that are allowed to pass per a second whereas all the DHCP packets are coming to this interface. * Default setting is ‘Not activated’ * Use ‘no’ prefix in front of the command to deactivate the function. |
| ip dhcp relay rate-limit discover <0-100> | * Set the number of DHCP Discover packets that are allowed to pass per a second whereas all the DHCP packets are coming to this interface. |
| ip dhcp relay rate-limit request <0-100> | * Set the number of DHCP Request packets that are allowed to pass per a second whereas all the DHCP packets are coming to this interface. |

The below example shows how to set DHCP Relay Rate-limit within an Interface.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 6/1  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)#ip dhcp relay rate-limit 50  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)#end  Switch#  Switch#show ip dhcp relay port rate-limit  Port name inCount drop permit configured  --------- --------- --------- --------- ------------------------  gi6.1 0 0 0 50/0/0 |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | When you set the Rate-limit for both of MAC and Interface, the received packets will be processed according to ‘Per Interface Rate-limit setting’. |

### DHCP Class based DHCP packet forwarding

This function is for selection of message receiving from client like ip dhcp-server and ip dhcp helper-address commands.

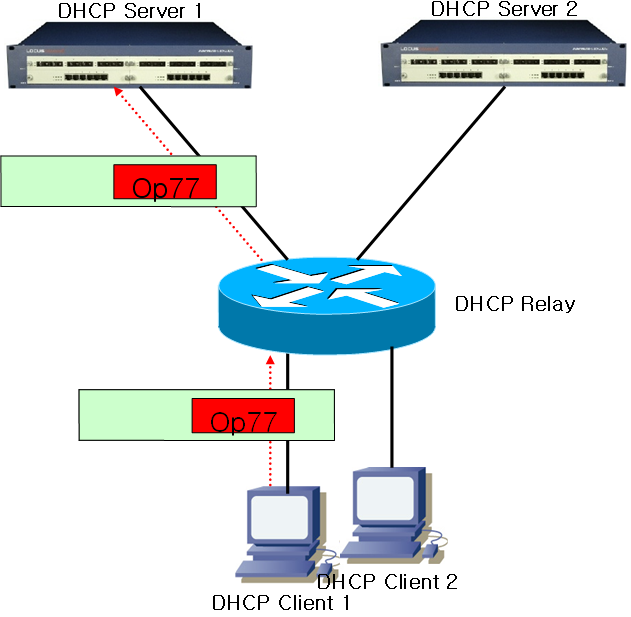


Figure 17. DHCP Class based on DHCP packet Relay

#### DHCP Class Configuration

To set DHCP class in C9500 DHCP relay agent, use the following command.

Table 65 DHCP Class Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip dhcp class** *class-name* | Assigns DHCP Class Name.  Enters DHCP class setting mode which is recognized as “(dhcp-class) #”.  To delete the class, use no command. |
| **option** *<1-255>* **{ascii|hex}** *WORD* | Set option-option value so that the DHCP message sent from a client can be categorized into this class.  <1-255>: DHCP option number  {ascii|hex}: DHCP option value format (ascii string variable, hexadecimal)  WORD: option value, |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | For a hexadecimal format, you must use even number of digits.  e.g.  ip dhcp option 60 hex 1 ( x )  ip dhcp option 60 hex 01 ( o ) |

The following example shows how to set “test”.

|  |
| --- |
| Router(config)# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **ip dhcp class test**  Router(dhcp-class)# **option 77 ascii CommScope** |

#### DHCP Relay-Pool Configuration

To set DHCP Relay-Pool, use the following commands:

Table 66 DHCP Relay-Pool Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip dhcp relay-pool** *WORD* | Generates a DHCP relay-pool and enters DHCP relay-pool which is recognized as “(dhcp-pool)#”.  WORD: name of relay-pool  To delete relay-pool, use no command. |
| **relay source** *A.B.C.D/M* | Sets the subnetwork of relay-pool.  To disable the function, use no command. |
| **class** *class-name* | Sets the DHCP class of a DHCP DISCOVER/REQUEST message that a client has sent so the message can be forwarded to the assigned server in the relay-pool.  You can assign more than one class.  To disable the function, use no command. |
| **relay target** *A.B.C.D/M* | Sets a server which will forward a DHCP DISCOVER/ REQUEST message.  To disable the function, use no command. |

If you set “test” DHCP class and DHCP relay-pool “test-pool”, DHCP relay agent forwarding message included “CommScope” of ascii characters.

|  |
| --- |
| Router(config)# **ip dhcp relay-pool test**  Router(config-dhcp)# **relay source 100.0.0.0/24**  Router(config-dhcp)# **exit**  Router(config-dhcp)# **class test**  Router(config-class)# **relay target 200.0.0.254**  Router(config-class)# **exit**  Router(config)# **service dhcp relay** |

## DHCP Snooping Function

### DHCP Snooping Function Overview

The DHCP snooping compiles an address binding table that is similar to the one made in the DHCP server based on DHCP messages exchanged between DHCP client and DHCP server.

The binding table is used as database to prevent malicious users. Snoop can also control messages between client servers. It can be enabled in the same way as DHCP agent and it cannot be used with DHCP server simultaneously.

#### Trust and Untrust Source

The DHCP Snooping classifies traffic sources into trusted and untrusted. Untrusted sources can do traffic attack and other conflict behaviors. To prevent these obstacles, the DHCP Snooping can filter messages from untrusted sources.

#### DHCP Snooping Binding Database

The DHCP Snooping makes a dynamic database using DHCP Message and maintains it. The database includes an entry of untrusted host of VLAN which has DHCP Snooping enabled. The database entry adds every DHCP message from DHCP server and client after Validation check. It reports the result of validation check in state items. For a series of normal DHCP messages started from the same DHCP client, only the latest message is recorded in the database entry. When the IP address lease time has passed or when receiving a DHCP release message from a host, it is recorded as time expired or released on the state list. When the database entry has exceeded the max-value the oldest invalid entry will be deleted, a new entry will be added.

The DHCP Snooping binding database includes MAC Address, Client Hardware Address, Client Identifier, leased IP address, lease time, received time, State, VLAN ID, information of interface port connected to the host.

#### Packet Validation

A switch verifies the validity of the DHCP packet received from the untrusted interface of VLAN which has DHCP Snooping enabled. In the following case a switch records each item in the state list of DHCP Snooping binding table.

A switch receives a DHCP discover packet that has a source MAC address not correspond with a DHCP client identifier or DHCP client hardware address from an untrusted interface.

#### Packet Rate-limit

The DHCP Snooping applies rate-limit to DHCP packets from the same DHCP client. It allows up to two packets per second sent from the same type of DHCP client.

### Activation of DHCP Snooping Function

By default, DHCP Snooping of a switch is disabled. To enable the DHCP Snooping, use the following command in the global mode.

Table 67 DHCP Snooping Function Activation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| ip dhcp snooping | Activates DHCP Snooping function  Use no format command to disable DHCP Snooping function. |

The following is an example of enabling DHCP Snooping function:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# ip dhcp snooping  Switch(config)# exit  Switch# show ip dhcp snooping  Switch DHCP Snooping is enabled  Invalid entry keep time: 14400 mins  DHCP Packet rate-limit per client: 0 pps  Verification of hwaddr field is enabled  Insertion of option 82 is disabled  DHCP snooping is configured on following VLANs:  none |

### DHCP Snooping Vlan Configuration

In the DHCP Snooping VLAN Configuration, you will set a VLAN that will snoop DHCP packets. Packets passing by VLANs other than the one you have set will not be snooped.

Table 68 DHCP Snooping VLAN Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip dhcp snooping VLAN** *VLAN\_ID* | Sets a VLAN which will snoop DHCP packets.  To delete the DHCP Snooping VLAN, use no command. |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | When you use DHCP Snooping and DHCP Relay simultaneously, DHCP Relay will forward a packet |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | When you use DHCP Snooping and DHCP Relay simultaneously, you must set both VLANs connected to DHCP server and to DHCP client as Snooping VLANS. |

The following example shows how to enable DHCP Snooping of vlan1.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)#  Switch(config)#  Switch(config)# ip dhcp snooping vlan 10  Switch(config)# exit  Switch# show ip dhcp snooping  Switch DHCP Snooping is enabled  Invalid entry keep time: 14400 mins  DHCP Packet rate-limit per client: 0 pps  Verification of hwaddr field is enabled  Insertion of option 82 is disabled  DHCP snooping is configured on following VLANs:  vlan10 |

### DHCP Snooping information option (OPTION82) Configuration

When DHCP Snooping snoops a DHCP request received from a DHCP client, it provides DHCP Snooping information option so the information the interface and switch connected to a DHCP client can be included.

#### Enable DHCP Snooping Information Option Function

To enable information option of C9500 Snooping, use the following command:

Table 69 Enable DHCP Snooping information option function

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip dhcp snooping information option** | Enables DHCP Snooping information (option-82 field).  By default, this is disabled. |

The following example shows how to enable DHCP Snooping Information Option:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# ip dhcp snooping information option  Switch(config)# exit  Switch# show ip dhcp snooping  Switch DHCP Snooping is enabled  Invalid entry keep time: 14400 mins  DHCP Packet rate-limit per client: 0 pps  Verification of hwaddr field is enabled  Insertion of option 82 is enabled [replace]  DHCP snooping is configured on following VLANs:  vlan10 |

#### DHCP snooping information option reforwarding policy Configuration

By default, DHCP Snooping information policy of C9500 drops packets with information option sent by DHCP client.

To change default policy of C9500, use the following command in global mode:

Table 70 DHCP Snooping information option reforwarding policy Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip dhcp snooping information policy {append|keep|replace}** | * The default is set to replace. * append : add new DHCP Snooping information to existing DHCP Snooping information. * keep : maintain the existing DHCP Snooping information. * replace : substitute the existing DHCP Snooping information with new DHCP Snooping information. |

The following example shows how to set DHCP Snooping information option reforwarding policy as keep.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **ip dhcp snooping information policy keep**  Switch(config)# **exit**  Switch#  Switch# **show ip dhcp snooping**  Switch DHCP Snooping is enabled  Invalid entry keep time: 14400 mins  DHCP Packet rate-limit per client: 0 pps  Verification of hwaddr field is enabled  Insertion of option 82 is enabled [keep]  DHCP snooping is configured on following VLANs:  vlan10 |
|  |

### DHCP Snooping Trust Port Configuration

To set a Trust Port (e.g. a DHCP server direction port), use the following command. When you set a Trust Port, a request packet will be forwarded as a trust port only.

Table 71 DHCP Snooping Trust Port Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip dhcp snooping trust** | Sets an assigned port as a Trust Port. It will not conduct a Validation check for a DHCP packet received at the Trust Port.  Requested packets from the host will be forwarded only to the Trust Port.  By default, all ports are untrusted ports. |

The following is an example of setting port ‘gi6/1’ on Trust Port:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 6/1  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# ip dhcp snooping trust  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# end  Switch# show ip dhcp snooping interface  Interface Trust State Max Entry  --------------- ----------- ------------  Giga6/1 Trusted 20000  Giga6/2 Untrusted 20000  Giga6/3 Untrusted 20000  Giga6/4 Untrusted 20000  Giga6/5 Untrusted 20000  Giga6/6 Untrusted 20000  Giga6/7 Untrusted 20000  Giga6/8 Untrusted 20000  Switch# |

### DHCP Snooping max-entry Configuration

To set the number of DHCP Snooping max-entry for each port, use the following command:

Table 72 DHCP snooping max-entry Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip dhcp snooping max-entry** *<10-10000>* | Sets the number of DHCP Snooping max-entry for each port. It does not delete any entry that is valid (and in use of an IP) even when binding entries are generated because it exceeds the max-entry.  By default, each port has 10000 Max-entries. |

The following example shows how to set DHCP Snooping Max-Entry of gi 6/2 with 100:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 6/2  Switch(config-if- Giga6/2)# ip dhcp snooping max-entry 100  Switch(config-if- Giga6/2)# end  Switch# show ip dhcp snooping interface  Interface Trust State Max Entry  --------------- ----------- ------------  Giga6/1 Trusted 10000  Giga6/2 Untrusted 100  Giga6/3 Untrusted 10000  Giga6/4 Untrusted 10000  Giga6/5 Untrusted 10000  Giga6/6 Untrusted 10000  Giga6/7 Untrusted 10000  Giga6/8 Untrusted 10000  Switch# |

### DHCP Snooping Entry Time Configuration

To set the time restoring a DHCP Snooping binding entry that is not invalid (not in use of an IP address), use the following command:

Table 73 DHCP Snooping Entry Time Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip dhcp snooping entry-time** *<5-65535>* | Sets the time for an Invalid DHCP Snooping Binding Entry (not in use of an IP address) to be stored. The time is set in minutes.  By default, entry time is 14400 minutes (10 days). |

The following example shows how to set entry time DHCP Snooping with 5 minutes:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# ip dhcp snooping entry-time  <5-65535> Minutes  Switch(config)# ip dhcp snooping entry-time 5  Switch(config)# exit  Switch# show ip dhcp snooping  Switch DHCP Snooping is enabled  Invalid entry keep time: 5 mins  DHCP Packet rate-limit per client: 0 pps  Verification of hwaddr field is enabled  Insertion of option 82 is enabled [keep]  DHCP snooping is configured on following VLANs:  vlan10 |

### DHCP Snooping Rate-Limit Configuration

To set the rate-limit of the DHCP packet from the same DHCP client, use the following command:

Table 74 DHCP Snooping Rate-Limit Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip dhcp snooping rate-limit** | Sets the number of DHCP Packets, which are the same type, to be accepted sent from the same DHCP client per second.  By default, it accepts two packets per second. |

The following example shows how to set DHCP Snooping rate-limit with 100:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# ip dhcp snooping rate-limit  <1-100> DHCP Packet rate-limit in pps  Switch(config)# ip dhcp snooping rate-limit 100  Switch(config)# end  Switch#  Switch# show ip dhcp snooping  Switch DHCP Snooping is enabled  Invalid entry keep time: 14400 mins  DHCP Packet rate-limit per client: 100 pps  Verification of hwaddr field is enabled  Insertion of option 82 is enabled [keep]  DHCP snooping is configured on following VLANs:  vlan10 |

### DHCP Snooping Verify MAC-Address Configuration

To drop a packet whose DHCP client Identifier or Client HW Address has changed, use the following command:

Table 75 DHCP Snooping Verify MAC-Address Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip dhcp snooping verify mac-address** | Drops the packet whose DHCP client Identifier or Client HW Address has been changed.  By default, this is enabled. |

The following example shows how to disable DHCP Snooping Verify Mac-Address:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# no ip dhcp snooping verify mac-address  Switch(config)# exit  Switch# show ip dhcp snooping  Switch DHCP Snooping is enabled  Invalid entry keep time: 5 mins  DHCP Packet rate-limit per client: 100 pps  Verification of hwaddr field is disabled  Insertion of option 82 is enabled [keep]  DHCP snooping is configured on following VLANs:  vlan10 |

## DHCP Server Monitoring and Management

### DHCP Server Pool Information Inquiry

To inquire DHCP address pool information in DHCP server, use the following command in the Privileged mode:

Table 76 DHCP server Pool Information Inquiry

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **show ip dhcp pool** | Shows the DHCP address pool information of the DHCP server. |
| **show ip dhcp pool** [pool\_name] | Shows the DHCP address pool information of the DHCP server which has the name, pool\_name. |

### DHCP Server Binding Information Search

To search the binding information of addresses provided by the DHCP server to the client, use the following command in Privileged mode:

Table 77 DHCP Server Binding Information Search

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Purpose |
| **show ip dhcp binding** | Displays all bindings on DHCP server. |
| **show ip dhcp binding detail** | Displays all bindings on DHCP server in more detailed format |

### DHCP Server Statistics Search

Table 78 DHCP Server Statistics Search

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Purpose |
| **show ip dhcp server statistics** | Displays the statistics of the server and the information of counters of sent/ received messages. |

### DHCP Server Conflict Search

Table 79 DHCP Server Conflict Search

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Purpose |
| **show ip dhcp conflict** *{poolname}* | Displays all address conflicts recorded in the DHCP server. |

### DHCP Server Variables Initialization Command

Table 80 DHCP Server Variables Initialization Command

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Purpose |
| clear ip dhcp binding {*address*|*\**} | Deletes the automatic address binding function from the DHCP database.  When you specify an address it will automatically bind of the specified address; when you use “\*” it will delete all automatic bindings. |
| clear ip dhcp server statistics | Initializes all statistic counters of the DHCP server |

### DHCP Server Debug command

Table 81 DHCP Server Debug command

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| debug ip dhcp server on | * Enable the debugging function in DHCP Server |

### DHCP relay Monitoring and Control

Table 82 DHCP relay Monitoring and Control Command

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| show ip dhcp helper-address | Shows the DHCP server list |
| show ip dhcp relay information option | Enables DHCP relay agent information option and shows reforwarding policy |
| show ip dhcp relay statistics | Shows relay statistics and counted information of received messages |
| debug ip dhcp relay {events|packets:pal} | Enables debugging of DHCP relay |

### DHCP Snooping Monitoring and Control

Table 83 Showing DHCP Snooping and Control

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| show ip dhcp snooping | Shows global DHCP Snooping configuration |
| show ip dhcp snooping binding  {IFNAME|invalid|manual|VLAN} | Shows DHCP Snooping binding entry |
| show ip dhcp snooping interface | Shows DHCP Snooping configuration to interface. |
| show ip dhcp snooping statistics | Shows DHCP Snooping statistica; information. |
| show debugging ip dhcp snooping | Shows DHCP Snooping debugging. |
| debug ip dhcp snooping all | Enables DHCP Snooping debugging function. |

## DHCP Configuration Examples

This section provides examples as follows:

* DHCP network pool configuration example
* DHCP server monitoring and management example
* DHCP relay agent configuration example
* DHCP relay agent monitoring and management example

### DHCP Network Pool Configuration

The following is the example of the generation of DHCP network pool that uses 192.168.1.0/24 network. The default router of the client is set as 192.168.1.1 and CommScope.com is used as the domain name. The IP address of the client is leased for one day and the address ranges to be assigned are 192.168.1.10~192.168.1.100 and 192.168.1.150~192.168.1.230.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch(config)# configure terminal  Switch(config)# **ip dhcp pool** marketing  Switch(dhcp-config)# **domain-name** CommScope.com  Switch(dhcp-config)# **lease** 1 0 0  Switch(dhcp-config)# **network** 192.168.1.0/24  Switch(dhcp-config)# **default-router** 192.168.1.1  Switch(dhcp-config)# **range** 192.168.1.10 192.168.1.100  Switch(dhcp-config)# **range** 192.168.1.150 192.168.1.230 |

The following shows the example of the generation of the DHCP network pool and group setting that uses 192.168.2.0/24 and192.168.3.0/24 network. The default-router of 192.168.2.0/24 network is 192.168.2.1 and the address range is 192.168.2.10~192.168.240. Default-router of 192.168.3.0/24 network is 192.168.3.1 and address ranges are 192.168.3.10~192.168.3.50 and 192.168.3.100~192.168.3.230. And DNS server is set as 1.2.3.4. Each client is guaranteed up to 12 hours of IP address lease.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch(config)# configure terminal  Switch(config)# **ip dhcp pool** sales1  Switch(dhcp-config)# **dns-server** 1.2.3.4  Switch(dhcp-config)# **lease** 0 12 0  Switch(dhcp-config)# **network** 192.168.2.0/24  Switch(dhcp-config)# **default-router** 192.168.2.1  Switch(dhcp-config)# **range** 192.168.2.10 192.168.2.240  Switch(dhcp-config)# **group** vlan10  Switch(dhcp-config)# **exit**  Switch(config)# **ip dhcp pool** sales2  Switch(dhcp-config)# **dns-server** 1.2.3.4  Switch(dhcp-config)# **lease** 0 12 0  Switch(dhcp-config)# **network** 192.168.3.0/24  Switch(dhcp-config)# **default-router** 192.168.3.1  Switch(dhcp-config)# **range** 192.168.3.10 192.168.3.50  Switch(dhcp-config)# **range** 192.168.3.100 192.168.3.230  Switch(dhcp-config)# **group** vlan10  Switch(dhcp-config)# **exit** |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | To the client who has been manually bound will be assigned same IP address all the time. |

### 

### DHCP Server Monitoring and Control

The following example shows how to display DHCP address pool on the DHCP server:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show ip dhcp pool**  Pool marketing :  network: 192.168.1.0/24  address range(s):  add: 192.168.1.10 to 192.168.1.100  add: 192.168.1.150 to 192.168.1.230  lease <days:hours:minutes> <1:0:0>  domain: CommScope.com  no dns-servers  default-router(s): 192.168.1.1  Pool sales1 :  network: 192.168.2.0/24  address range(s):  add: 192.168.2.10 to 192.168.2.240  lease <days:hours:minutes> <0:12:0>  no domain is defined  dns-server(s): 1.2.3.4, 1.2.3.5  default-router(s): 192.168.2.1  Pool sales2 :  network: 192.168.3.0/24  address range(s):  add: 192.168.3.10 to 192.168.3.50  add: 192.168.3.100 to 192.168.3.230  lease <days:hours:minutes> <0:12:0>  no domain is defined  dns-server(s): 1.2.3.4, 1.2.3.5  default-router(s): 192.168.3.1  Switch# |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | With show running-config command, you can see the configuration information that the administrator has set. |

The following example shows the IP address that DHCP server has assigned to the client:

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Switch# **show ip dhcp binding** | | | |
| IP address | Hardware address | Lease expiration | Type |
| 192.168.2.10 | 00:01:02:94:77:d7 | Infinite | Maunal |
| 192.168.3.10 | 02:c7:f8:00:04:22 | Infinite | Maunal |
| total 2 bindings found | | | |

The following example shows the IP address that the DHCP server assigned to the client in detail:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Switch(Config)# show ip dhcp binding detail | |
| --------------------------------------------------------------------------- | |
| TYPE | : Manual |
| IP addr | : 192.168.2.10 |
| HW addr | : 00:01:02:94:77:d7 |
| Client ID | : - |
| Host Name | : - |
| Lease | : Infinite |
| --------------------------------------------------------------------------- | |
| TYPE | : Manual |
| IP addr | : 192.168.3.10 |
| HW addr | : 02:c7:f8:00:04:22 |
| Client ID | : - |
| Host Name | : - |
| Lease | : Infinite |
| --------------------------------------------------------------------------- | |
| total 2 bindings found |  |

The following example shows how to display the statistics of DHCP server:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Switch# show ip dhcp server statistics** | |
| Message | Received |
| Malformed messages | 0 |
| BOOTREQUEST | 0 |
| DHCPDISCOVER | 200 |
| DHCPREQUEST | 178 |
| DHCPDECLINE | 0 |
| DHCPRELEASE | 0 |
| DHCPINFORM | 0 |
| ICMPECHO |  |
|  |  |
| Message | Sent |
| BOOTREPLY | 0 |
| DHCPOFFER | 190 |
| DHCPACK | 172 |
| DHCPNAK | 6 |

### DHCP Relay Agent Configuration

The following example shows that the DHCP relay agent of the switch sets the DHCP server to transfer the requests of the client. If there is no DHCP address pool that satisfies the client’s request, the switch transfers the request to the DHCP server located in another sub-network.



Figure 18 Network – DHCP Relay Agent Configuration

|  |
| --- |
| Switch(config)# configure terminal  Switch(config)# **ip dhcp-server** 10.1.1.2  Switch(config)# **service dhcp relay**  Switch (config)# **end**  Switch# **show ip dhcp helper-address**  Server’s IP address : 10.1.1.2  Switch #  Switch # **show ip dhcp relay statistics**  Destination(Server) Value  Client-packets relayed 8  Client-packets errored 0  Destination(Client) value  Server-packets relayed 6  Server-packets errored 0  Giaddr errored 0  Corrupt agent options 0  Missing agent options 0  Bad circuit id 0  Missing circuit id 0 |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | To transfer a DHCP message to a DHCP server located in other sub-network, the route information on the network must be configured in the DHCP server of the switch. |

# RIP

This chapter introduces how to set up RIP (Rounting Information Protocol). RIP has been used for many years and is still used for IGP (Interior Gateway Protocol) of small network.

## Information about RIP

RIP is an interior gateway protocol that has been used for many years and is still used for small network environment. RIP is one of routing protocols that is a classical distance-vector.

RIP broadcasts User Datagram Protocol (UDP) data packets to exchange routing information. By default routing information is advertised every 30 seconds. If a switch cannot receive an update from another switch for more than 180 seconds, it will say that the router information is from an irrelevant switch. If the switch does not receive any update until 240 seconds, it will remove the whole entries.

The metric using in RIP is hop count. Hop count is number of router going through to router.

A connected network has metric value of 0 and Unreachable router has metric value of 16. Because it uses small metric scope like this, it does not suit with routing protocol for big network. The switch can receive or make default network via update from another system.

In this case, default network become advertisement via RIP and another RIP neighbor.

## How to Configure RIP

The following commands should be completed for RIP configuration.

* Enabling RIP
* Allowing Unicast Updates for RIP
* Passive interface
* Applying Offsets to Routing Metrics
* Adjusting Timers
* Specifying a RIP version
* Applying Distnace
* Enabling Split Horizon

### Enabling RIP

To enable RIP, do the following steps.

Table 84 Enabling RIP

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **Step 1** | **Configure terminal**  **Example:**  Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters the Global configuration mode |
| **Step 2** | **router rip**  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **router rip** | Enter the RIP routing configuration mode |
| **Step 3** | **network** *ip-address/prefix-len*  **Example:**  Switch(config-router)# **network 33.1.1.0/24** | Assigns network for advertising to another router via RIP. |
| **Step 4** | **End**  **Example:**  Switch(config-router)# **end** | Enters the Privileged mode |

### Allowing Unicast updates for RIP

As RIP is a broadcast protocol, in order to make RIP routing reach to non-broadcast network, use the following command in the router configuration mode.

Table 85 Allowing Unicast updates for RIP

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **neighbor** *ip-address*  **Example:**  Switch(config-router**)# neighbor 3.3.3.2** | Defines switch for neighboring to exchange routing information. |

### Passive interface

By this command, **passive-interface,** you can disable the transfer of Update routing information for a specific interface. To set passive interface, use the command in router configuration mode.

Table 86 Passive interface

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **passive-interface** IFNAME  **Example:**  Switch(config-router**)# passive-interface gi7/1** | Sets Passive interface |

### Applying Offsets to Routing metrics

Offset list is a mechanism to increase both incoming and outgoing metrics of RIP: it can be done by Access list and offset list. To increase the routing metric, use the following command in router configuration mode.

Table 87 Applying Offsets to Routing metrics

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **offset-list** *access-list-name {in|out} metric IFNAME*  **Example:**  Switch (router-config)# **offset-list aa in 5 gi7/1** | To apply offset on routing metric |

### Adjusting Timers

Routing protocol uses various timers. Network administrator can manage the timer that changes the routing protocol performance to match for the network. You can make adjustments as follows:

* Routing table update timer (default 30 seconds)
* Routing information timeout timer (180 seconds)
* Garbage collection timer (120 seconds)

To adust time value, use the following command in router configuration mode:

Table 88 Adjusting Timers

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **timer basic** *update invalid holddown*  **Example:**  Switch(config-router)# **timer basic 30 120 120** | Adjusts routing protocoltimer |

### Specifying a RIP Version

To make packets of a same RIP version to be available, use the following command in router configuration mode.

Table 89 Specifying a RIP Version 1

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **version** {1 | 2}  **Example:**  Switch(config-router)# **version 2** | Sets to change RIP version. |

To manage RIP version sent by a specific interface, use the following command in configuration mode of interface.

Table 90 Specifying a RIP Version 2

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **ip rip send version** VERSION  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip rip send version 1**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip rip send version 2**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip rip send version 1 2** | Sets interface to receive only RIP packets that are of the specified ‘VERSION’  **Note** Both versions of 1 and 2 are supported when they are selected. |

To control the version of the packets coming into an interface, use the following command in interface configuration mode.

Table 91 Specifying a RIP Version

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **ip rip receive version** VERSION  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip rip receive version 1**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip rip receive version 2**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip rip receive version 1 2** | Sets interface to receive only RIP packets that are relevant  **Note**. Both versions of 1 and 2 are supported when they are selected. |

### Applying Distance

Administrative distance represents the reliability of routing information source. In general, a large number means less reliability. The default of RIP is 120.

To adjust admimistrative distance value, use the following commands in router configuration mode.

Table 92 Applying Distance

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **distance** VALUE A.B.C.D/M  **Example:**  Switch(config-router)# **distance 90 10.1.1.1/24** | Changes the Administrative distance value. |

### Enabling Split Horizon

Distance-vector routing uses split horizon mechanism to lower the risk of routing loop.

Use the following commands to enable Split horizon in interface configuration mode.

Table 93 Enabling Split Horizon

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **ip rip split-horizon** [poisoned]  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip rip split-horizon poisoned** | To enable Split horizon poisened |

## Configuration Examples for RIP

### RIP construction

Let us investigate an example of RIP construction by looking at the Network Configuration in the following figure.



Figure 19 RIP Network Configuration Example and Diagram

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Switch A | Switch B |
| vlan10 192.168.1.1/24  vlan20 192.168.2.1/24  vlan30 10.1.30.1/24 | vlan30 10.1.30.2/24  vlan40 192.168.4.1/24  vlan50 192.168.5.1/24 |

To enable RIP protocol of each interface, use the following commands in the router configuration mode.

|  |
| --- |
| **Switch A Configuration**  Switch A(config)# **router rip**  Switch A(config-router)# **network** 192.168.1.1/24  Switch A(config-router)# **network** 192.168.2.1/24  Switch A(config-router)# **network** 10.1.30.1/24  Switch A(config-router)# **end**  Switch A# **show ip route database**  Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP  O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area  N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2  E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2  i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area  > - selected route, \* - FIB route, p - stale info  C>\* 10.1.30.0/24 is directly connected, vlan30  C>\* 192.168.1.0/24 is directly connected, vlan10  C>\* 192.168.2.0/24 is directly connected, vlan20  R> 192.168.4.0/24 [120/1] via 10.1.30.2, vlan30, 00:01:42  R>\* 192.168.5.0/24 [120/1] via 10.1.30.2, vlan30, 00:01:42  Switch A#  **Switch B Configuration**  Switch B(config)# **router rip**  Switch B(config-router)# **network** 192.168.4.1/24  Switch B(config-router)# **network** 192.168.5.1/24  Switch B(config-router)# **network** 10.1.30.2/24  Switch B(config-router)# **end**  Switch B# **show ip route database**  Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP  O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area  N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2  E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2  i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area  > - selected route, \* - FIB route, p - stale info  C>\* 10.1.30.0/24 is directly connected, vlan30  R>\* 192.168.1.0/24 [120/1] via 10.1.30.1, vlan30, 00:02:13  R>\* 192.168.2.0/24 [120/1] via 10.1.30.1, vlan30, 00:02:13  C>\* 192.168.4.0/24 is directly connected, vlan40  C>\* 192.168.5.0/24 is directly connected, vlan50  Switch B# |

### Offset-list Set-UP

The following example shows how to increase the metric value of all incoming RIP route to Router A by 2 using the offset-list.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch A(config)# **router rip**  Switch A(config-router)# **offset-list** 4 in 2  Switch A(config-router)# **exit**  Switch A(config)# **access-list** 4 **permit** any  Switch A(config)# **end**  Switch A# **show ip route database**  Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP  O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area  N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2  E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2  i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area  > - selected route, \* - FIB route, p - stale info  C>\* 10.1.30.0/24 is directly connected, vlan30  C>\* 192.168.1.0/24 is directly connected, valn10  C>\* 192.168.2.0/24 is directly connected, vlan20  R> 192.168.4.0/24 [120/3] via 10.1.30.2, vlan30, 00:06:26  R>\* 192.168.5.0/24 [120/3] via 10.1.30.2, vlan30, 00:29:04  Switch A# |

As shown above, the metric values of 192.168.4.0 and 192.168.5.0 have increased to 3. You can also set up outgoing setting as distribute-list.

### Passive-interface Configuration

When you apply this command to a certain interface of the router, the interface does not advertise outgoing paths. For example, when Router A in the example network sets a passive-interface in vlan30 of Router A, Router A receives all the paths but Router B cannot get any update of the paths that Router A sends to vlan30.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch A(config)# **router rip**  Switch A(config-router)# **passive-interface** vlan30  Switch A(config-router)# **end**  Switch A# **show ip route database**  Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP  O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area  N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2  E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2  i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area  > - selected route, \* - FIB route, p - stale info  C>\* 10.1.30.0/24 is directly connected, vlan30  C>\* 192.168.1.0/24 is directly connected, vlan10  C>\* 192.168.2.0/24 is directly connected, vlan20  R> 192.168.4.0/24 [130/1] via 10.1.30.2, vlan30, 00:14:28  R>\* 192.168.5.0/24 [120/1] via 10.1.30.2, vlan30, 00:37:06  Switch A#  Switch B# **show ip route database**  Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP  O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area  N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2  E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2  i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area  > - selected route, \* - FIB route, p - stale info  C>\* 10.1.30.0/24 is directly connected, vlan30  C>\* 192.168.4.0/24 is directly connected, vlan40  C>\* 192.168.5.0/24 is directly connected, vlan50  Switch B# |

# OSPF

This chapter introduces OSPF routing protocol used in C9500. OSPF routing protocol is described in RFC 2328.

## OSPF Overview

OSPF is a link-state routing protocol that distributes routing information among the routers in one IP domain (*autonomous system* (AS)). In a link-state routing protocol, each router keeps database of autonomous system topology. Each participating router has an identical database maintained from the perspective of that router.

From Link-state DB (LSDB), each router generates the shortest path tree where it is root. This shortest path tree provides the paths to each destination in AS. If there are many paths for a destination and they cost the same, traffic can be distributed to all these paths. The path cost is expressed in a metric.

### Link-state Database

When initialized, each router sends the Link State Advertisement (LSA) for its interface. LSAs are collected by each router and saved in LSDB of each router. OSPF uses Flooding to distribute LSAs between routers. Any changes in routing information are sent to all the routers in the network. All the routers in one area have one LSDB that is exactly the same.

The following table describes LSA type numbers.

Table 94 LSA Type number

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type Number | Description |
| 1 | Router link |
| 2 | Network link |
| 3 | Summary link |
| 4 | AS summary link |
| 5 | AS external link |
| 7 | NSSA external link |

### Areas

In OSPF, parts of network can be grouped by area. The topology in one area is hidden from others in the autonomous system. Hiding the information enables a significant reduction in LSA traffic, and reduces the computations needed to maintain the LSDB. The routing within an area is determined by the topology of the area.

OSPF defines the type of router into the three categories as follows:

* **Internal Router (IR)**An internal router has all of its interfaces within the same area.
* **Area Border Router (ABR)**The router that has interfaces in many areas, ABR exchanges the summary advertisement with other ABRs.
* **Autonomous System Border Router (ASBR)**ASBR works as the gateway between OSPF and other routing protocol, or other autonomous systems.

### AREA 0

Any OSPF network that contains more than one area is required to have an area configured as area 0, also called the *backbone*. All the areas in autonomous system must be connected to the backbone. When you design a network, you have to start from area 0 and extend the network to other areas.

The backbone allows summary information to be exchanged between ABRs. Every ABR hears the area summaries from all other ABRs. The ABR then forms a picture of the distance to all network outside of its area by examining the collected advertisements, and adding in the backbone distance to each advertising router.

### 

### Stub areas

OSPF allows certain areas to be configured as *stub areas*. A stub area is connected to only one other area and contains a single exit point. The area that connects to a stub area can be the backbone area. All routing out of a stub area is based on default routes. Stub areas are used to reduce memory and computation requirements on OSPF routers.

### Virtual links

In the situation when a new area is introduced that does have a direct physical attachment to the backbone, a *virtual link* is used. A virtual link provides a logical path between the ABR of the disconnected area and the ABR of the backbone. A virtual link must be established between two ABRs that have a common area, with one ABR connected to the backbone.

### Route Redistribution

RIP and OSPF can be used at the same time on the switch. Route redistribution allows the switch to exchange routes, including static routes, between the two routing protocols.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Notice** | Although RIP and OSPF can be run simultaneously on the switch, you cannot apply them both to the same VLAN*.* |

## OSPF Configuration

To use OSPF Routing Protocol, you msut enable OSPF. The following explains the procedure.

* Enter from config mode to ospf mode.

|  |
| --- |
| **router ospf [*process id*]** |

* Specify the network to enable OSPF protocol and the area where OSPF protocol to be located.

|  |
| --- |
| **network (ip address/M | ip address wildcard mask) area (area id | area address)** |

After enabling OSPF, use the following commands to manage protocol according to the requirements and needs.

### OSPF interface parameters

You must set some OSPF parameters with the same value about all router in a network. These parameters can be set with **ip ospf hello-interval, ip ospf dead-interval, ip ospf authentication-key** command. When you change OSPF parameters, you must change all interface parameters of all router in a network.

To change interface parameters, use the following commands in interface configuration mode.

Table 95 OSPF interface parameter CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router (config-if) # **ip ospf cost** *cost* | Sets the cost of packet sent by OSPF interface |
| Router (config-if) # **ip ospf retransmit-interval** *seconds* | Sets LSA retransmit-interval of OSPF interface |
| Router (config-if) # **ip ospf transmit-delay** *seconds* | Sets expected time of transmission sent by OSPF interface. |
| Router (config-if) # **ip ospf priority** *number-value* | Sets the priority used when selecting a OSPF designated router |
| Router (config-if) # **ip ospf hello-interval** *seconds* | Sets a interval of hello packet sent by OSPF interface |
| Router (config-if) # **ip ospf dead-interval** *seconds* | Sets OSPF dead-interval time. |
| Router (config-if) # **ip ospf authentication-key** *key* | Sets a password that will be used in network segment which uses OSPF simple password authentication |
| Router (config-if) # **ip ospf message-digest-key** *key-id* **md5** *key* | Sets a key-id and key value that are used in OSPF MD5 authentication |
| Router (config-if) # **ip ospf authentication** {**message-digest** | **null**} | Sets the Authentication type |

### Different Physical Networks

There are three default network types depending on different medium of OSPF.

1. Broadcast networks (Ethernet, Token Ring, FDDI)
2. Nonbroadcast multi-access(NBMA) networks (Switched Multimegabit Data Service(SMDS), Frame Relay, X.25)
3. Point-to-Point networks (High-Level Data Link Control(HDLC), PPP)

### OSPF Network type

You can set OSPF network with broadcast or NBMA regardless of Default media type. For example, you can set broadcast network like NBMA network or NBMA network with broadcast Network.

OSPF point-to-multipoint interface is defined with numbered point-to-point having more than one neighbor. OSPF point-to-multipoint network has the merit as follows:

* Point-to-multipoint does not need neighbor setting, be easy because it does not select DR.
* Reduce cost because it does not need Full meshed topology.
* More reliable because it maintains connection on VC (virtual circuit) failure.

To set OSPF network type, use the following commands in interface configuration mode.

Table 96 OSPF network type CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router (config-if) # **ip ospf network** {**broadcast** | **non-bradcast** |{**point-to-multipoint** [**non-broadcast**] | **point-to-point**}} | Sets OSPF network type of OSPF interface. |

### Point-to-Multipoint, Broadcast Networks

You need not to set neighbor setting on broadcast network. However, if you change cost as relevant neighbor, you can set with using **neighbor** command. OSPF Hello, LS Update, LS acknowledgment message is sent to multicast. Even if Cost sets with ip ospf cost command, you can each different cost with using neighbor command in case that the broadband differs per neighbor actually.

To configure point-to-multipoint and broadcast netwrok, do the following steps.

Table 97 P-to-Multipoint Network, Broadcast Network Configuration

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Command** | **Description** |
| **Step 1** | Router (config-if) # **ip ospf network point-to-multipoint** | Sets Interface as Point-to-multipoint broadcast network type. |
| **Step 2** | Router (config-if) # **exit** | Changes with Global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | Router (config) **# router ospf** *process-id* | Changes with Router configuration mode. |
| **Step 4** | Router (config-router) # ***neighbor*** *ip-address* **cost** *number* | Sets cost of specific neighbor. |

### Nonbroadcast Networks

You must select DR (designated router) because many routers in OSPF network may exist. If you do not set broadcast capability, need to set specific parameter for selecting DR.

You need to set this parameter only to have nonzero priority to become DR/BDR (backup DR) by itself.

To set router setting of Nonbroadcast networks, use the following command in the router configuration mode.

Table 98 Non broadcast network CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router (config-router) # **neighbor** *ip-address* [**priority** *number*] [**poll-interval** *seconds*] | Connets router of Nonbroadcast network. |

To indentfy neighbors form point-to-multipoint nonbroadcast network, use neighbor command in rotuer configuration mode.

To set the interface with point-to-multipoint to the system not applied broadcast, use the following commands with order.

Table 99 Non broadcast network Configuration

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Command** | **Description** |
| **Step 1** | Router (config-if) # **ip ospf network point-to-multipoint non-broadcast** | Sets interface as Point-to-multipoint nonbroadcast network type. |
| **Step 2** | Router (config-if) # **exit** | Changes with Global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | Router (config) **# router ospf** *process-id* | Change with Router configuration mode. |
| **Step 4** | Router (config-router) # ***neighbor*** *ip-address* [**cost** *number*] | Sets cost of neighbor and neighbor. |

### OSPF Area parameters

OSPF has the possible setting area parameters. These are stub area setting, authentication setting, and the cost setting about default summary route. The authentication setting cuts area access of non-authentication with setting password. Even if Stub area setting cuts access of external router, it sends default external route that ABR router creates to area. If you use **no-summary** keyword, cut summary route and reduce router number accessing to area.

To set OSPF area parameter, use the following command in the router configuration mode.

Table 100 OSPF area parameter CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router (config-router) # **area** *area-id* **authentication** | Sets authentication to OSPF area. |
| Router (config-router) #area *area-id* **authentication message-digest** | Sets MD5 authentication to OSPF area. |
| Router (config-router) # **area** *area-id* **stub** | Sets Stub area. |
| Router (config-router) # **area** *area-id* **default-cost** *cost* | Set cost of default summary route for Stub area. |

### OSPF NSSA

NSSA extends OSPF function with setting between corporate router and remote routher with stub area. The following figure shows OSPF Area 1 set with stub area. Because route redistribution is not allowed in Stub area, ISIS route can not be sent to OSPF routing domain.

Like the OSPF stub area, the NSSA area cannot allow flooding of the Type 5 LSAs. Route redistribution to the NSSA area is allowed for a special type of LSAs (Type 7 LSAs) only. The Type 7 LSAs should exist on the NSSA area only. NSSA autonomous system boundary router (ASBR) creates the Type 7 LSAs for route redistribution and NSSA area border router (ABR) converts the Type 7 LSAs to the Type 5 LSAs and floods them to all OSPF routing domains.

In the following figure, the OSPF Area 1 is set to the stub area. As the stub area does not allow route redistribution, the ISIS route cannot be sent to the OSPF routing domain.

But if you set OSPF Area 1 with NSSA, NSSA ASBR can flood ISIS route to OSPF NSSA after making Type 7 LSAs.

OSPF not-so-stubby area (NSSA) can be found at RFC 3101 for further explanation.

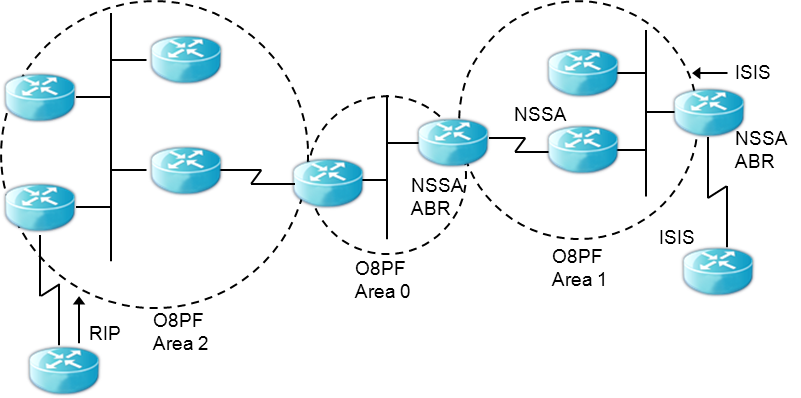


Figure 20 OSPF Network

Because NSSA is extention of stub area, Route redistributed from RIP does not flow in to OSPF Area 1. So it still maintains tendancy of Stub area not incoming Type 5 LSAs.

To set OSPF NSSA, use the following command in router configuration mode.

Table 101 OSPF NSSA CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router (config-router) # **area** *area-id* **nssa** [**no-redistribution**] [**default-information-originate**] | Sets NSSA. |

### OSPF Area Route summarization

Route summarization is a function that summarizes the advertised routes. When this function is enbled, the ABR router advertises only one summarized route to the other area. In the OSPF, the ABR forwards the network in one area to another area. If one area has many networks, you can set the ABR router to advertise the summarized route (a route within a certain range) which includes each route in order to reduce the number of routes flooded.

To set summary address range, use the following command on router configuration mode.

Table 102 OSPF area route summarization CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router (config-router) # **area** *area-id* **range** *ip-address* *mask* [**advertise** | **not-advertise**] [**cost** *cost*] | Sets an address range for Summary route advertisement |

### Route Summarization of Redistributed Routes

When routes are redistributed from other routing protocol, each route is distributed to the Type 5 AS-External LSA. However, the routes can be summarized to one route that includes all routes redistributed by the summary-address command.

To summarize all redistributed routes with one route, use the following command in router configuration mode.

Table 103 External Route summarization CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router (config-router) # **summary-address** {*ip-address*/*prefix*} [**not-advertise**] [**tag** *tag*] | Sets an address including redistribted routes sent to one route. |

### Virtual Links

In OSPF, all areas should be linked to the backbone area. If the link to the backbone area is disconnected, you can set a virtual link. The two end terminals of the virtual link are the ABR routers and the virtual link should be set for both routers. In addition, the two routers should be in the same area (transit area) and no virtual link can be set in the stub area.

To set Virtual Link, use the following command in router configuration mode.

Table 104 OSPF virtual link CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router (config-router) # **area** *area-id* **virtual-link** *router-id* [**authentication** [**message-digest** | **null**]] [**hello-interval** *seconds*] [**retransmit-interval** *seconds*] [**transmit-delay** *seconds*] [**dead-interval** *seconds*] [[**authentication-key** *key*] | [**message-digest-key** *key-id* **md5** *key*]] | Sets Virtual link. |

### Generating a Default Route

The ASBR router can generate a default router with the OSPF routing domain. You can set the router as an ASBR router through router redistribution; however, essentially, the ASBR router does not generate a default router.

To generate a default router with ASBR, use the following command on router configuration mode.

Table 105 OSPF default route CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router (config-router) # **default-information originate** [**always**] [**metric** *metric-value*] [**metric-type** *type-value*] [**route-map** *map-name*] | ASBR makes default route to OSPF routing domain |

### Router ID Choice with a Loopback Interface

The OSPF uses the largest value among the IP addresses configured to the interface as its router ID. If IP addresses are configured to the loopback interface, the IP address with the largest value among the loopback interfaces is used as the router ID even when an IP address with the largest value is configured in another interface.

To assign IP address in Loopback interface, use the following commands in the order.

Table 106 Loopback interface Configuration

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | Command | Description |
| **Step 1** | Router (config-if) # **interface Loopback 0** | Creats a Loopback interface |
| **Step 2** | Router (config-if) # **ip address** *ip-address/prefix* | Assigns a IP address to Interface |

### 

### Default metric

The OSPF differentially calculates the OSPF metric according to the bandwidth of the interface. In the OSPF, the value calculated by dividing the reference-bandwidth by the interface bandwidth is used as the OSPF metric. The interface bandwidth can be changed by using the bandwidth command at the interface configuration mode.

To change reference-bandwidth, use the following command in router configuration mode.

Table 107 Reference bandwidth CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router (config-router) # **auto-cost reference-bandwidth** *ref-bw* | Changes reference-bandwidth |

### OSPF administrative Distance

The administrative distance refers to the reliability of therouting information source, ranging from 0 to 255. Generally, a large value indicates a low reliability. If the administrative distance value is 255, it means that the routing information source is not reliable and the corresponding route is ignored.

The OSPF uses three administrative distances (intra-area, inter-area, and external) and the default value of each one is 110.

To change OSPF distance, use the following commands in router configuration mode.

Table 108 OSPF distance CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router (config-router) # **distance ospf** {[**intea-area** *dist1*] [**inter-area** *dist2*] [**external** *dist3*]} | Changes OSPF distance |

### Passive interface

The passive-interface command limits sending the hello message to a specific interface, but allows the receipt of a message by the interface.

To set passive interface, use the following command in router configuration mode.

Table 109 OSPF passive interface CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router (config-router) # **passive-***interface interface-name* | Restricts hello packets that transmitting through interface. |

### Route Calculation Timers

The OSPF calculates the shortest path first (SPF) whenever the network configuration is changed. To prevent frequent SPF calculation, you can set the delay time between the time that the configuration change starts and the time that the SPF calculation starts.

To set SPF delay time, use the following command in router configuration mode.

Table 110 OSPF SPF timer CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router (config-router) # **timers throttle *spf*** *spf-start spf-hold spf-max-wait* | Changes the calculation time of SPF |

### Logging Neighbors Going Up/Down

The OSPF generates a system message for a neighbor up/down event. If you want to generate a detailed system message for the changed neighbor status, use the detail keyword.

To make system message about neighbor Up/Down, use the following command.

Table 111 OSPF adjacency LOG CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router (config-router) # **log-adjacency-changes** [**detail**] | Makes system message about OSPF neighbor UP/Down |

### Blocking LSA Flooding

When OSPF receives new LSA, OSPF floods LSA to interface excepting the received interface. But this running may make bandwith waste and CPU overload. If you use database-filter command, you can block LSA flooding to specific interface.

To block OSPF LSA flooding from Broadcast, non-broadcast, and point-to-point, use the following command.

Table 112 Block LSA CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router (config-router) # **ip ospf database-filter all out** | Restricts LSA flooding of interface |

### Ignoring MOSPF LSA Packets

Because the system does not support LSA Type 6 Multicast OSPF (MOSPF), the system makes system message when receiving LSA. If receive many MOSPF LSA, the system makes many system message. If the system does not make system message, use this function.

To ignore MOSPF LSA Packets, use the following command.

Table 113 Ignore MOSPF LSA CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router (config-router) # **ignore lsa mospf** | When the system receives MOSPF LSA packet, ignores it. |

### Monitoring and Maintaining OSPF

You can show the information about OSPF routing table, database, and connection status of neighbour router. This information can be used about solving the network trouble or resource management of switch.

To search information on OSPF, use the following commands in EXEC mode.

Table 114 Monitoring OSPF CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router # **show ip ospf** [*process-id*] | Shows OSPF routing process information |
| Router # **show ip ospf border-routers** | Shows all routing tables of ABR/ASBR |
| Router # **show ip ospf** [*process-id*] **database**  Router # **show ip ospf** [*process-id*] **database** [**database-summary**]  Router # **show ip ospf** [*process-id*] **database** [**router**] [**self-originate**]  Router # **show ip ospf** [*process-id*] **database** [**router**] [**adv-router** [*ip-address*]]  Router # **show ip ospf** [*process-id*] **database** [**router**] [*link-state-id*]  Router # **show ip ospf** [*process-id*] **database** [**network**] [*link-state-id*]  Router # **show ip ospf** [*process-id*] **database** [**summary**] [*link-state-id*]  Router # **show ip ospf** [*process-id*] **database** [**asbr-summary**] [*link-state-id*]  Router # **show ip ospf** [*process-id*] **database** [**external**] [*link-state-id*]  Router # **show ip ospf** [*process-id*] **database** [**nssa-external**] [*link-state-id*]  Router # **show ip ospf** [*process-id*] **database** [**opaque-link**] [*link-state-id*]  Router # **show ip ospf** [*process-id*] **database** [**opaque-area**] [*link-state-id*]  Router # **show ip ospf** [*process-id*] **database** [**opaque-as**] [*link-state-id*] | Shows OSPF database |
| Router # **show ip ospf flood-list** [*interface-name*] | Shows all LSAs that will be Flooding |
| Router # **show ip ospf interface** [*interface-name*] | Shows OSPF interface information |
| Router # **show ip ospf neighbor** [*neighbor-id*] [**detail**] | Shows OSPF neighbor information |
| Router # **show ip ospf** [*process-id*] **summary-address** | Shows all summary address information on Redistribution |
| **show ip ospf** [*process-id*] **traffic** | Shows OSPF traffic statistics |
| **show ip ospf** [*process-id*] **virtual-links** | Shows OSPF virtual link information |

Use the following command in EXEC mode to restart OSPF process.

Table 115 Maintaining OSPF CLI

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Router # **clear ip ospf** [*process-id*] {**process** | **redistribution** | **counters** | **traffic**} | Restarts OSPF process/counters/redistribution/traffic |



# IS-IS

This chapter introduces IS-IS (Intermediate System to Intermediate System) routing protocol.

## IS-IS Overview

**Intermediate System to Intermediate System** (**IS-IS**) is a routing protocol designed to move information efficiently within a computer network, a group of physically connected computers or similar devices. It accomplishes this by determining the best route for datagrams through a packet-switched network. The protocol was defined in ISO/IEC 10589:2002 as an international standard within the Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) reference design.

IS-IS is a link-state Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP). Link-state protocols are characterized by the propagation of the information required to build a complete network connectivity map on each participating device. That map is then used to calculate the shortest path to destinations.

The IS-IS protocol was developed in the late 1980s by Digital Equipment Corporation (DEC) and was standardized by the International Standards Organization (ISO) in ISO/IEC 10589. The current version of this standard is ISO/IEC 10589:2002.

**IS Address Assignment**

An IS is identified by an address known as a Network Entity Title (NET). The NET is the address of a Network

Service Access Point (NSAP), which identifies an instance of the IS-IS routing protocol running on an IS.

The NET may be 8 to 20 octets in length and consists of three parts:

• Area address—This field is 1 to 13 octets in length and is composed of high-order octets of the address.

• System ID—This field is 6 octets long and immediately follows the area address. When the IS operates

at Level 1, the system ID must be unique among all the Level-1 devices in the same area. When the IS

operates at Level 2, the system ID must be unique among all devices in the domain.

• NSEL—The N-selector field is 1 octet in length and immediately follows the system ID. It must be set

to 00.

The figure below shows the format for the NET.



### IS-IS PDU Types

ISs exchange routing information with their peers using protocol data units (PDUs). The following types of PDUs are used:

IIHs

Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System Hello PDUs (IIHs) are exchanged between IS neighbors on circuits on which the IS-IS protocol is enabled. IIHs include the system ID of the sender, the assigned area address(es), and the identity of neighbors on that circuit that are known to the sending IS. Additional optional information may also be included.

There are three types of IIHs:

Point-to-Point IIHs—These are sent on point-to-point circuits.

Level-1 LAN IIHs—These are sent on multiaccess circuits when the sending IS operates as a Level-1  device on that circuit.

Level-2 LAN IIHs—These are sent on multiaccess circuits when the sending IS operates as a Level-2 device on that circuit.

LSPs

An IS generates Link-State PDUs (LSPs) to advertise its neighbors and the destination that are directly connected to the IS. An LSP is uniquely identified by the following:

* System ID of the IS that generated the LSP
* Pseudonode ID—This value is always 0 except when the LSP is a pseudonode LSP (see “Operation of IS-IS on Multiaccess Circuits” section.
* LSP number (0 to 255)
* 32-bit sequence number

Whenever a new version of an LSP is generated, the sequence number is incremented.

Level-1 LSPs are generated by ISs that support Level 1. The Level-1 LSPs are flooded throughout the Level-1 area. The set of Level-1 LSPs generated by all Level-1 ISs in an area is the Level-1 LSP Database (LSPDB). All Level-1 ISs in an area will have an identical Level-1 LSPDB and will therefore have an identical network connectivity map for the area.

Level-2 LSPs are generated by ISs that support Level 2. Level-2 LSPs are flooded throughout the Level-2 subdomain. The set of Level-2 LSPs generated by all Level-2 ISs in the domain is the Level-2 LSP Database (LSPDB). All Level-2 ISs will have an identical Level-2 LSPDB and will therefore have an identical connectivity map for the Level-2 subdomain.

SNPs

Sequence Number PDUs (SNPs) contain a summary description of one or more LSPs. There are two types of SNPs for both Level 1 and Level 2:

Complete Sequence Number PDUs (CSNPs) are used to send a summary of the LSPDB that an IS has for a given level.

Partial Sequence Number PDUs (PSNPs) are used to send a summary of a subset of the LSPs for a given level that an IS either has in its database or needs to obtain.

### LSPDB Synchronization

Proper operation of IS-IS requires a reliable and efficient process to synchronize the LSPDBs on each IS. In IS-IS this process is called the update process. This section provides a brief overview of the operation of the update process. The update process operates independently at each supported level.

LSPs may be locally generated, in which case they always are new LSPs. LSPs may also be received from a neighbor on a circuit, in which case they may be generated by some other IS or may be a copy of an LSP generated by the local IS. Received LSPs may be older, the same age, or newer than the current contents of the local LSPDB.

Handling of Newer LSPs

A newer LSP is added to the local LSPDB. If an older copy of the same LSP currently exists in the LSPDB, it is replaced. The newer LSP is marked to be sent on all circuits on which the IS currently has an adjacency in the UP state at the level associated with the newer LSP—excluding the circuit on which the newer LSP was received.

On point-to-point circuits, the newer LSP will be flooded periodically until the neighbor acknowledges its receipt by sending a PSNP or by sending an LSP that is the same or newer than the LSP being flooded.

On multiaccess circuits, the IS will flood the newer LSP once. The IS examines the set of CNSPs that are sent periodically by the DIS for the multiaccess circuit. If the local LSPDB contains one or more LSPs that are newer than what is described in the CSNP set (this includes LSPs that are absent from the CSNP set) those LSPs are reflooded over the multiaccess circuit. If the local LSPDB contains one or more LSPs that are older than what is described in the CSNP set (this includes LSPs described in the CSNP set that are absent from the local LSPDB), a PSNP is sent on the multiaccess circuit with descriptions of the LSPs that require updating. The DIS for the multiaccess circuit responds by sending the requested LSPs.

Handling of Older LSPs

An IS may receive an LSP that is older than the copy in the local LSPDB. An IS may receive an SNP (complete or partial) that describes an LSP that is older than the copy in the local LSPDB. In both cases the IS marks the LSP in the local database to be flooded on the circuit on which the older LSP or SNP that contained the older LSP was received.

At this point, the actions taken are identical to the actions that are described in the “Handling of Newer LSPs” section after a new LSP has been added to the local database.

Handling LSPs That Are the Same

Because of the distributed nature of the update process, it is possible than an IS may receive copies of an LSP that is the same as the current contents of the local LSPDB.

On a point-to-point circuit, receipt of such an LSP is ignored. Periodic transmission of a CSNP set by the DIS for that circuit will serve as an implicit acknowledgement to the sender that the LSP has been received.

In a multiaccess circuit, receipt of such an LSP is ignored. Periodic transmission of a CSNP set by the DIS for that circuit will serve as an implicit acknowledgement to the sender that the LSP has been received.

The figure below shows how the LSPs are used to create a network map. Imagine the network topology as a jigsaw puzzle. Each LSP (representing an IS) is considered one of the jigsaw pieces.

### Shortest Path Calculation

When the contents of the LSPDB change, each IS independently reruns a shortest path calculation. The algorithm is based on the well-known Dijkstra algorithm for finding the shortest paths along a directed graph where the ISs are the vertices of the graph and the links between the ISs are edges with a nonnegative weight. A two-way connectivity check is performed before considering a link between two ISs as part of the graph. This prevents the use of stale information in the LSPDB, for example, when one IS is no longer operating in the network but did not purge the set of LSPs that it generated before ceasing operation.

The output of the SPF is a set of tuples (destination, next hop). The destinations are protocol-specific; for example, they would be prefixes when the supported protocol is IP, NSAPs of end systems when the supported protocol is CLNP. Multiple equal-cost paths are supported, in which case multiple next hops would be associated with the same destination.

Independent SPFs are performed for each level supported by the IS. In cases in which the same destination is reachable by both Level-1 and Level-2 paths, the Level-1 path is preferred.

A Level-2 IS that indicates that it has one or more Level-2 neighbors in other areas may be used by Level-1 devices in the same area as the path of last resort, also called the default route. The Level-2 IS indicates its attachment to other areas by setting an attached bit (ATT) in its Level-1 LSP 0.

### Route Redistribution

Devices are allowed to redistribute external prefixes, or routes, that are learned from any other routing protocol, static configuration, or connected interfaces. The redistributed routes are allowed in either a Level 1 device or a Level 2 device. Level 2 routes injected as Level 1 routes is called route leaking.

**IS-IS Configuration**

### Enabling IS-IS as an IP Routing Protocol on the Device

IS-IS must be enabled to use IS-IS routing protocol. Complete the following procedures. After enabling IS-IS, use the following commands to manage protocol according to the requirements and needs.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **router isis** *area-tag*  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **router isis** *TEST* | Assigns a tag to an IS-IS process. Enters router configuration mode.  Configure tags to identify multiple IS-IS processes by giving a meaningful name for each routing process. If the tag is not specified, a null tag (0) is assumed and the process is referenced with a null tag. The tag name must be unique among all IP router processes for the device. |
| **net** *network-entity-title*  **Example:**  Switch(config-router)#  **net 49.0001.0000.0000.000b.00** | Configures the NET on the device.  The NET identifies the device for IS-IS. |

**IS-IS interface parameters**

To configure IS-IS, perform the tasks described in the following sections. The tasks in the first section are required; the tasks in the remaining sections are optional:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Switch(config-if-vlanid)# **ip router isis** *process-tag* | Configures an IS-IS routing process on an interface and attaches an area designator to the routing process |
| Switch(config-if-vlanid)# **isis metric** *<1-63>* **{level-1 | level-2}** | Configures the metric (or cost) for the specified interface. |
| Switch(config-if-vlanid)# **isis hello-interval** **{<1-65535> | minimal} {level-1 | level-2}** | Specifies the length of time (in seconds) between hello packets |
| Switch(config-if-vlanid)# **isis csnp-interval** **<1-65535> {level-1 | level-2}** | Configures the IS-IS CSNP interval for the specified interface. |
| Switch(config-if-vlanid)# **isis retransmit-interval** *<0-65535>* | Configures the number of seconds between retransmission of IS-IS LSPs for point-to-point links. |
| Switch(config-if-vlanid)# **isis lsp-interval** *milliseconds* | Configures the IS-IS LSP retransmission throttle interval. |
| Switch(config-if-vlanid)# **isis hello-multiplier** *multiplier-value* **{level-1 | level-2}** | Sets the hello multiplier. |
| Switch(config-if-vlanid)# **isis priority** *priority-value* **{level-1 | level-2}** | Configures the priority to use for designated router election. |
| Switch(config-if-vlanid)# **isis circuit-type** **{level-1 |level-1-2 | level-2-only}** | Configures the type of adjacency desired for neighbors on the specified interface (the interface circuit type). |
| Switch(config-if-vlanid)# **isis password** *password* **{level-1 | level-2}** | Configures the authentication password for a specified interface. |

**IS-IS Network type**

IS-IS supports two generic network types:

• Point-to-point: A point-to-point circuit has exactly two ISs on the circuit. An IS forms a single adjacency to the other IS on the point-to-point circuit. The adjacency type describes what level(s) are supported on that circuit.

• Multiaccess: Multiaccess circuits support multiple ISs; for example, two or more operating on the circuit. The ability to address multiple systems utilizing a multicast or broadcast address is assumed.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Syntax: **isis network** {broadcast | point-to-point} | Sets IS-IS network type of IS-IS interface. |

**Specifying the System Type**

You can configure the router to act as a Level 1 (intra-area) router, as both a Level 1 router and a Level 2

(interarea) router, or as an interarea router only.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Switch(config-router)# **is-type {level-1 | level-1-2 |**  **level-2-only}** | Configures the system type (area or backbone router). |

**Tuning LSP Interval and Lifetime**

By default, the router sends a periodic LSP refresh every 15 minutes. LSPs remain in a database for

20 minutes by default. If they are not refreshed by that time, they are deleted. You can change the LSP

refresh interval or the LSP lifetime. The LSP interval should be less than the LSP lifetime or else LSPs

will time out before they are refreshed. The software will adjust the LSP refresh interval if necessary to

prevent the LSPs from timing out.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Switch(config-router)# **lsp-refresh-interval**  *seconds* | Sets the LSP refresh interval. |
| Switch(config-router)# **max-lsp-lifetime** *seconds* | Sets the maximum time that link-state packets (LSPs) can remain in a router’s database without being refreshed. |

**Throttling of IS-IS LSP Generation, SPF Calculation, and PRC Works**

IS-IS throttling of LSP generation, SPF calculations, and PRC occurs by default. You can customize the

throttling of these events with the lsp-gen-interval, spf-interval, and prc-interval commands, respectively.

The arguments in each command behave similarly. For each command:

• The first argument indicates the maximum number of seconds between LSP generations or calculations.

• The second argument indicates the initial wait time (in milliseconds) before running the first LSP generation or calculation.

• The third argument indicates the minimum amount of time to wait (in milliseconds) between the first and second LSP generation or calculation. (In addition to this wait time, there might be some other system overhead between LSP generations or calculations.)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Switch(config-router)# **lsp-gen-interval** {level-1 |  level-2 | *seconds*} | Sets IS-IS LSP generation throttling timers.  • The default lsp-max-wait interval is 5 seconds.  • The default lsp-initial-wait interval is 50 milliseconds.  • The default lsp-second-wait interval is 5000  milliseconds. |
| Switch(config-router)# **spf-interval** {level-1 |  level-2} *spf-max-wait spf-initial-wait*  *spf-second-wait* | Sets IS-IS SPF throttling timers.  • The default spf-max-wait interval is 10 seconds.  • The default spf-initial-wait interval is  5500 milliseconds.  • The default spf-second-wait interval is 5500  milliseconds. |
| Switch(config-router)# **prc-interval-exp**  *<0-2147483647>* | Sets IS-IS partial route computation throttling timers.  • The default prc-max-wait interval is 10 seconds.  • The default prc-initial-wait interval is 2000  milliseconds.  • The default prc-second-wait interval is 5000  milliseconds. |

**Generating a Default Route**

You can force a default route into an IS-IS routing domain. Whenever you specifically configure

redistribution of routes into an IS-IS routing domain.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Switch(config-router)# **default-information originate** | Forces a default route into the IS-IS routing domain. |

**Summarizing Address Ranges**

You can create aggregate addresses that are represented in the routing table by a summary address. This

process is called route summarization. One summary address can include multiple groups of addresses

for a given level. Routes learned from other routing protocols also can be summarized. The metric used

to advertise the summary is the smallest metric of all the more-specific routes

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Switch(config-router)# **summary-address**  *ip-address/prefix* {level-1 | level-1-2 | level-2 | metric} | Creates a summary of addresses for a given level. |

**Passive-interface**

A passive interface in IS-IS is one which does not send or receive IS-IS routing traffic. The network for the interface is still included in LSPs generated by the router.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Switch(config-router)# **passive-interface** *IFNAME* | Suppress/unsuppress IS-IS packets from being sent or received over the specified interface. |

**ISIS administrative Distance**

The administrative distance refers to the reliability of therouting information source, ranging from 0 to 255. Generally, a large value indicates a low reliability. If the administrative distance value is 255, it means that the routing information source is not reliable and the corresponding route is ignored.

Each route source has a default administrative distance. The default administrative distance for IS-IS is 115.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Switch(config-router)# **distance** *<1-255>* | To change the administrative distance for IPv4 IS-IS routes |

**Administrative Tag**

An administrator associates an Administrative Tag value with some interesting property. When IS-IS advertises reachability for some IP prefix that has that property, it adds the Administrative Tag to the IP reachability information TLV for that prefix, and the tag "sticks" to the prefix as it is flooded throughout the routing domain.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Switch(config-if -vlanid)# **isis tag** *tag-value* | Sets the Tag value on ISIS LSP |

**Limiting LSP Flooding**

Limiting LSP flooding is important to IS-IS networks in general, and is not limited to configuring multiarea IS-IS networks. In a network with a high degree of redundancy, such as a fully meshed set of point-to-point links over a nonbroadcast multiaccess (NBMA) transport, flooding of LSPs can limit network scalability.

* A mesh group is a set of routing devices that are fully connected. That is, they have a fully meshed topology. When link-state PDUs are being flooded throughout an area, each router within a mesh group receives only a single copy of a link-state PDU instead of receiving one copy from each neighbor, thus minimizing the overhead associated with the flooding of link-state PDUs.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| Switch(config-if-vlanid)# **isis mesh-group** {*group-number* | blocked} | Configure an interface to be part of a mesh group, which is a set of fully connected nodes. |

**Monitoring IS-IS**

To monitor the IS-IS tables and databases, use the following commands in EXEC mode

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **show ip protocols** **Example:**  Switch# **show ip protocols** | Displays the parameters and current state of the active routing protocol process.  You can use this command to learn what protocols are active, what interfaces they are active on, what networks they are routing for, and other parameters that relate to the routing protocols. |
| **show** **isis** *area-tag* **database** {**level-1|** **level-2** | **l1| l2 | detail}** **Example:**  Switch# **show isis database detail** | Displays additional information about the IS-IS database.  Displays the link-state database for Level-1 and Level-2, the contents for each LSP, and the link-state protocol PDU identifier. |
| **show** **isis** **database** **verbose** **Example:**  Switch# **show isis database verbose** | Displays additional information about the IS-IS database such as the sequence number, checksum, and holdtime for LSPs. |
| **show** **isis** *area-tag* **topology** **Example:**  Switch# **show isis topology** | Displays a list of all connected routers in all areas. |
| **show** **isis**  *area-tag* **neighbors** **detail** **Example:**  Switch# **show isis neighbors detail** | Displays IS-IS adjacency information.  The **show isis neighbor detail** command output verifies that the right adjacencies have established. A matrix of adjacencies should be prepared before you configure your routers, showing what neighbors should be expected in the adjacencies table, to facilitate verification. |
| **show isis interface brief** *IFNAME*  **Example:**  Switch# **show isis interface brief** | Display status information about Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (IS-IS)-enabled interfaces. |

# BGP

This chapter introduces BGP among available IP Unicast routing protocols of C9500.

## BGP Configuration

BGP is a protocol that receives/sends routing information among Management Domains (Autonomous System: AS), and manages routing between domains unlike RIP and OSPF. C9500 support BGP-4.

BGP configuration includes Basic Configuration and Advanced Configuration. To use BGP protocol, configure the followings:

* Enabling BGP protocol
* BGP neighbor router configuration

### Enabling BGP Protocol

To enable BGP Protocol, follow the steps below.

1. Enter BGP router configuration mode.

|  |
| --- |
| router bgp <1-4294967295> |

The last number in the AS number, which is Autonomous System number given by network operator to distinguish BGP networks.

1. Specify a network as local to this autonomous system and enter it to the BGP table.

|  |
| --- |
| **network**  A.B.C.D/M |

1. Designate network informed via BGP.

### Neighbor Configuration

Two switches connecting TCP to exchange BGP Routing Information are called peer or neighbor.

BGP supports two kinds of neighbors: internal and external. *Internal neighbors* are in the same autonomous system (iBGP Peer): *external neighbors* are in different autonomous systems (EBGP Peer). Normally, external neighbors (eBGP peer) are adjacent to each other and share a subnet, while internal neighbors (iBGP Peer) may be anywhere in the same autonomous system.

To configure such BGP neighbors, use the following command in router configuration mode.

|  |
| --- |
| neighbor *ip-address*  remote-as *number* |

After configuring BGP and neighbor, default BGP Protocol is run. Network operator sets the following items alternatively.

* Filtering
* BGP Attribute Configuration
* Routing policy Modification
* Other functions

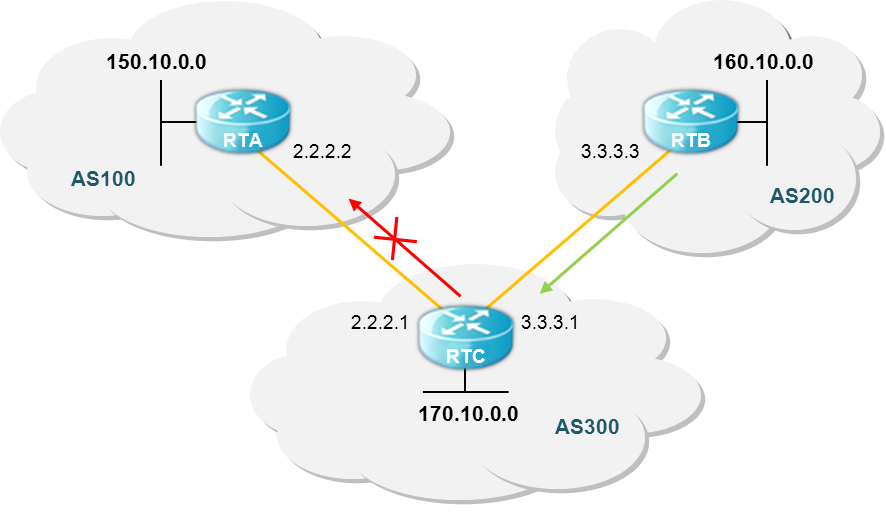
### BGP Filtering

BGP updated sending/receiving can be managed by filtering functions such as route filtering, path filtering, and community filtering. Even though the functions have the same results, you need to choose the proper one based on the network configuration.

#### Route Filtering

To limit routing information that a router receives or advertises, it filters BGP based on routing updates going/coming to the specific neighbor. The specific Access-list is applied to the Input/Output update to the specific neighbor with the following command.

|  |
| --- |
| **neighbor** {*ip-address*|*peer-group-name*} **distribute-list** *access-list-number* **{in|out}** |



RTB generates network 160.10.0.0 and transmits this information to RTC. If RTC does not transmit it to AS 100, apply Access-list and connection to RTA to filter the information update.

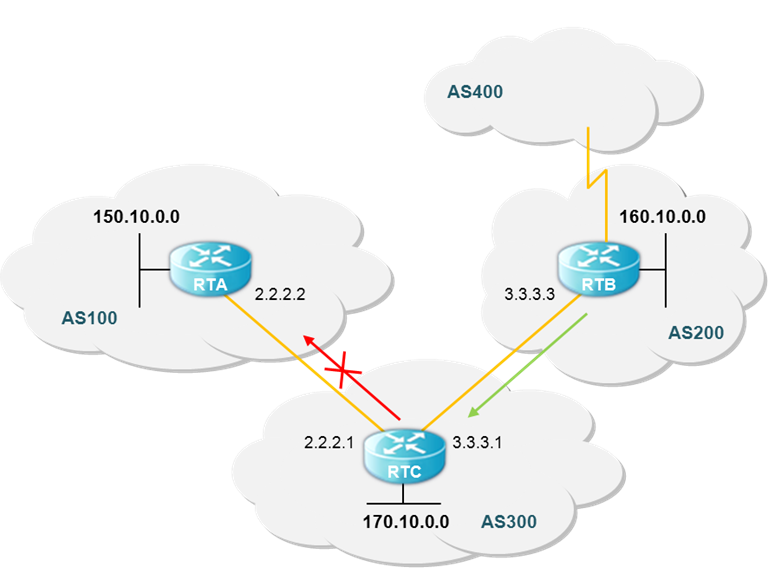
The following shows the construction of the operation.

|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTC --\*/*  !  router bgp 300  network 170.10.0.0  neighbor 3.3.3.3 remote-as 200  neighbor 2.2.2.2 remote-as 100  neighbor 2.2.2.2 distribute-list 1 out  !  access-list 1 deny 160.10.0.0 0.0.255.255  access-list 1 permit 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255  *!-- filter out all routing updates about 160.10.x.x*  ! |

#### Path Filtering

In addition to filtering routing updates based on network numbers, you can specify an access list filter on both incoming and outbound updates based on the BGP autonomous system paths. To block created information from AS 200 to AS 100, define access-list in RTC with the following command.

|  |
| --- |
| **ip as-path access-list** *access-list-number* {**permit|deny**} *as-regular-expression*  **neighbor** {*ip-address*|*peer-group-name*} **filter-list** *access-list-number* **{in|out}** |

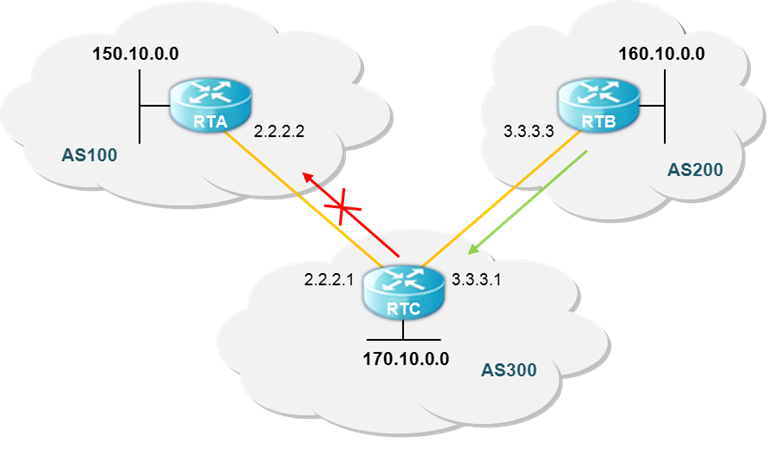


The following shows the configuration that RTC updates 160.10.0.0 to RTA with the Path Filtering.

|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTC --\*/*  !  router bgp 300  neighbor 3.3.3.3 remote-as 200  neighbor 2.2.2.2 remote-as 100  neighbor 2.2.2.2 filter-list 1 out  *!-- the 1 is the access list number below*  !  ip as-path access-list 1 deny ^200$  ip as-path access-list 1 permit .\*  ! |

#### Community Filtering

The community attribute is a way to group destinations into communities and apply routing decisions based on the communities



As in the figure above, RTC sets Community attribute not to update routes from RTB to its dBGP Peer with ‘no-export’ community attribute.

|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTB --\*/*  router bgp 200  network 160.10.0.0  neighbor 3.3.3.1 remote-as 300  ***neighbor 3.3.3.1 send-community***  neighbor 3.3.3.1 route-map setcommunity out  !  route-map setcommunity  match ip address 1  set community no-export  access-list 1 permit 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255  ! |

Cisco router uses “**neighbor send-community”** command to transmit this attribute to RTC but system sets this command as a default. So, command ‘neighbor 3.3.3.1 send-community’ can be canceled, and command ‘no neighbor 3.3.3.1 send-community’ should be displayed to disable.

RTC does not transmit this information to its external peer RTA when RTC receives an update with no-export attribute.

The following shows the example that RTB adds 100 200 to the community attribute. This value 100 200 is added to the current community value before transmitting to RTC, or replacing the current community value with the value 100 200 when no additive command.

|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTB --\*/*  !  router bgp 200  network 160.10.0.0  neighbor 3.3.3.1 remote-as 300  neighbor 3.3.3.1 route-map setcommunity out  !  route-map setcommunity  match ip address 2  set community 100 200 additive  !  access-list 2 permit 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 |

Community list specifies the community group which are used Match command for Route Map to set or filter the attribute based on the different community number list.

|  |
| --- |
| **ip community-list** *community-list-number* **{permit|deny}** *community-number* |

The following shows how to define the route map.

|  |
| --- |
| !  route-map match-on-community  match community 10  *!-- 10 is the community-list number*  set weight 20  ip community-list 10 permit 200 300  *!-- 200 300 is the community number*  ! |

With this route map, the special parameter such as the metric value or weight can be filtered or set based on this community value in case of the special update. You can see RTB is transmitting Update having Community 100 and 200 to RTC. Configure the following to set Weight based on this value.

|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTC --\*/*  !  router bgp 300  neighbor 3.3.3.3 remote-as 200  neighbor 3.3.3.3 route-map check-community in  !  route-map check-community permit 10  match community 1  set weight 20  !  route-map check-community permit 20  match community 2 exact  set weight 10  !  route-map check-community permit 30  match community 3  !  ip community-list 1 permit 100  ip community-list 2 permit 200  ip community-list 3 permit internet  ! |

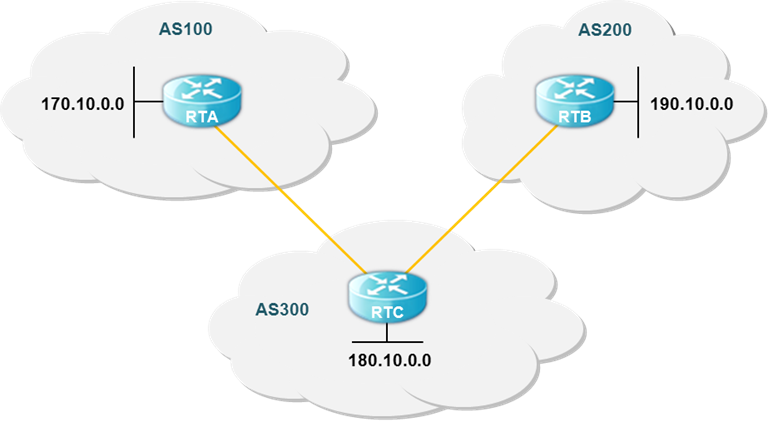
The route with the community attribute 100 is matched with List 1 and weight is set as 20. The route with the community attribute 200 is matched with List 2 and Weight is set as 10. The keyword “exact” shows that there should not be other values if community should have community 200. The last community list is used to prevent other updates from dropping because a route not matched is dropped to the default. The keyword “internet” is all routes because this is a member of Internet community.

### BGP Attribute Configuration

The following shows the attributes used by BGP.

* **As-path attribute**
* **Origin attribute**
* **Nexthop attribute**
* **Local Preference attribute**
* **Metric attribute**
* **Community attribute**
* **Weight attribute**

#### As\_path Attribute



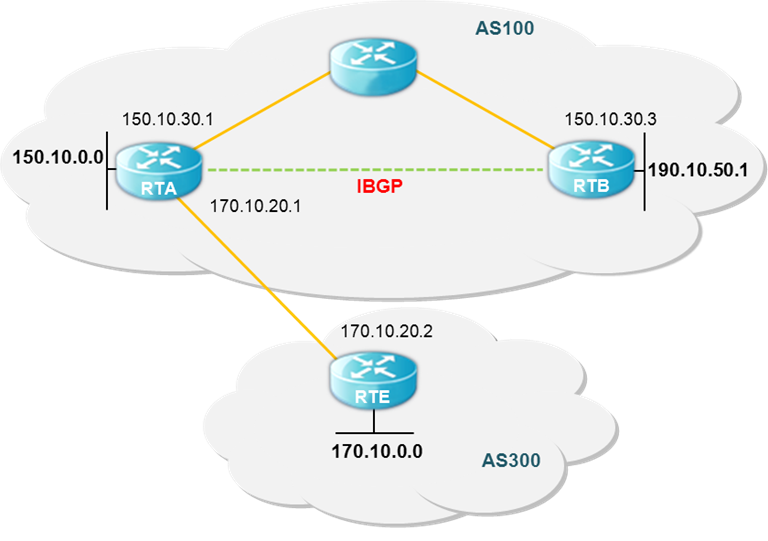
When one route passes one AS, the AS number is added to the update of route.

AS\_Path attribute is AS number list that one route passes through to get the certain destination. AS\_SET is all AS groups that one route passes through. Network 190.10.0.0 is displayed by RTB in AS200, and RTC adds AS300 to this route AS-path when this route passes AS300. So, the path for RTA to get to 190.10.0.0 is (300,200).The same applies to 170.10.0.0 and180.10.0.0.RTB should pass AS300 and AS100 to reach 170.0.0. RTC should pass AS200 to reach 190.0.0, and AS100 to reach 170.10.0.0.

#### Origin Attribute

This is an attribute to define Pass Information Source and there are three mechanisms.

* **IGP**: NLRI(Network Layer Reachability Information) is inside of the AS. This is used when BGP Network command is used or IGP information is redistributed to BGP. This pass information origin is IGP and displayed as “i” in the BGP table.
* **EGP**: NLRI is received through BGP and displayed as “e” in the BGP table.
* **INCOMPLETE**: NLRI is unknown or received through various ways. This is used when the static route is redistributed to BGP and displayed “?” in the BGP table.



|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTA --\*/*  !  router bgp 100  network 150.10.0.0  redistribute static  neighbor 150.10.30.3 remote-as 100  neighbor 170.10.20.2 remote-as 300  !  ip route 190.10.0.0/24 null  !  */\*-- RTB --\*/*  !  router bgp 100  network 190.10.50.0  neighbor 150.10.30.1 remote-as 100  !  */\*-- RTE --\*/*  !  router bgp 300  network 170.10.0.0  neighbor 170.10.20.1 remote-as 100  ! |

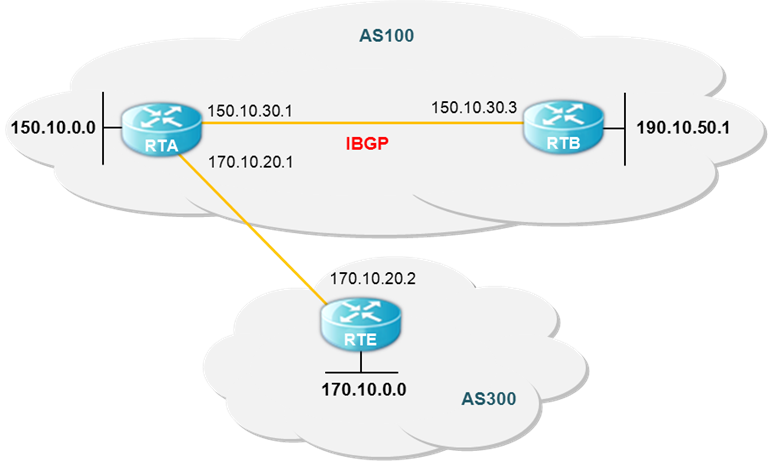
#### The configuration above shows:

* RTA gets to 170.10.0.0 through 300i.  
  (The next AS pass is 300 and the route origin is IGP.)
* RTA gets to 190.10.50.0 through 100i.  
  (The means the next AS pass is 100 and the route origin is IGP.)
* RTA gets to 150.10.0.0 through 100i.  
  (The means the next AS pass is 100 and the route origin is IGP.)
* RTA gets to 190.10.0.0 through 100?.  
  The means the next AS pass is 100 and the route origin is Incomplete.)

#### BGP Nexthop Attribute

The nexthop attribute is the nexthop IP address to get to the certain destination. EBGP is the assigned neighbor IP address by neighbor command. The configuration below shows RTC transmits nexthop 179.10.20.2 when transmitting 170.10.0.0 to RTA, and RTA transmits nexthop 170.10.20.1 when transmitting 150.10.0.0 to RTC. According to protocol, the nexthop by EBGP itself shoud be transmitted with IBGP. RTA transmits nexthop to 170.10.20.2 when transmitting 170.10.0.0 to its IBGP peer RTB, and RTB transmits nexthop to not 150.10.30.1 but 170.10.20.2.

Policy is needed for RTB to get to 170.10.20.2 with IGP and if not, RTB discards the packet toward 170.10.0.0.

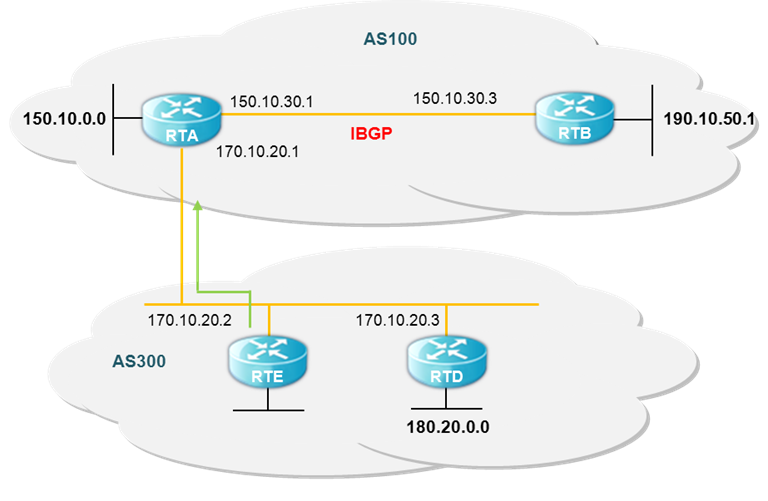


|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTA --\*/*  !  router bgp 100  network 150.10.0.0  neighbor 170.10.20.2 remote-as 300  neighbor 150.10.30.3 remote-as 100  !  */\*-- RTB --\*/*  !  router bgp 100  neighbor 150.10.30.1 remote-as 100  !  */\*-- RTC --\*/*  !  router bgp 300  network 170.10.0.0  neighbor 170.10.20.1 remote-as 100  ! |

* When RTC transmits 170.10.0.0 to RTA, the nexthop turns into 170.10.20.2.
* When RTA transmits 170.10.0.0 to RTB, the nexthop turns into 170.10.20.2.

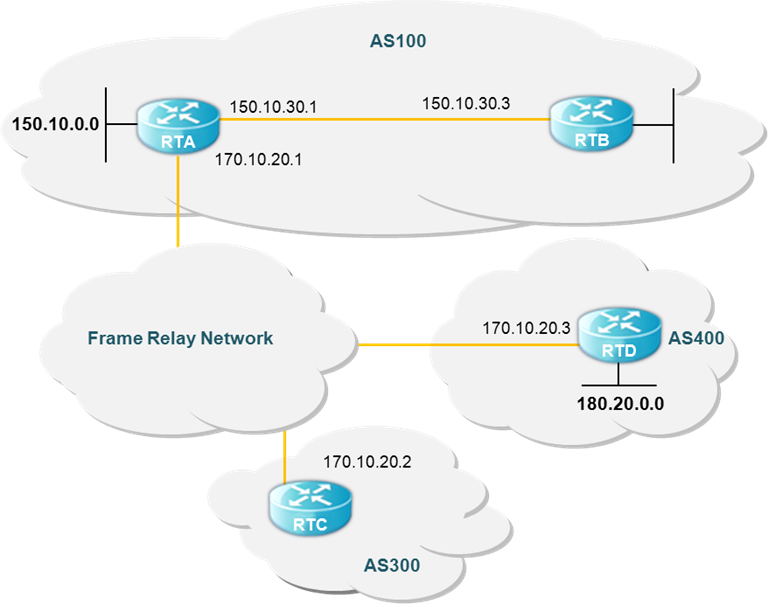
The following shows you should be careful in the multi access network and NBMA network.

#### BGP Nexthop (Multiple access networks)



RTE connects RTA and EBGP. RTE get access to 180.20.0.0 through 170.10.20.3, and when it transmits 180.20.0.0 information with BGP update to RTA, it uses not its IP 170.10.20.2 but 170.10.20.3 as a next hop. The reason is that the network among RTA, RTE, and RTD is a multi-access network and it is more useful to use RTD as a next hop for RTA to get to 180.2.0.0.

**BGP Nexthop (NBMA)** - the common media among RTA, RTC, and RTD, causes more complicated problems.



If the common media is NBMA network like Frame Relay, RTC uses 170.10.20.3 as the next hop when transmitting 180.20.0.0 information to RTA. If RTA does not have the direct PVC and cannot get access to the next hop, the routing is failed. For this kind of situation the Next-hop-self command was created.

#### Next-hop-self

With the next-hop-self command, the protocol does not assign the nexthop and the assigned IP is used for the nexthop. The command is as follows.

|  |
| --- |
| **neighbor** {ip-address|peer-group-name} **next-hop-self** |

In case of the previous example, the following shows how to solve the problem.

|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTC --\*/*  !  router bgp 300  neighbor 170.10.20.1 remote-as 100  neighbor 170.10.20.1 next-hop-self  ! |

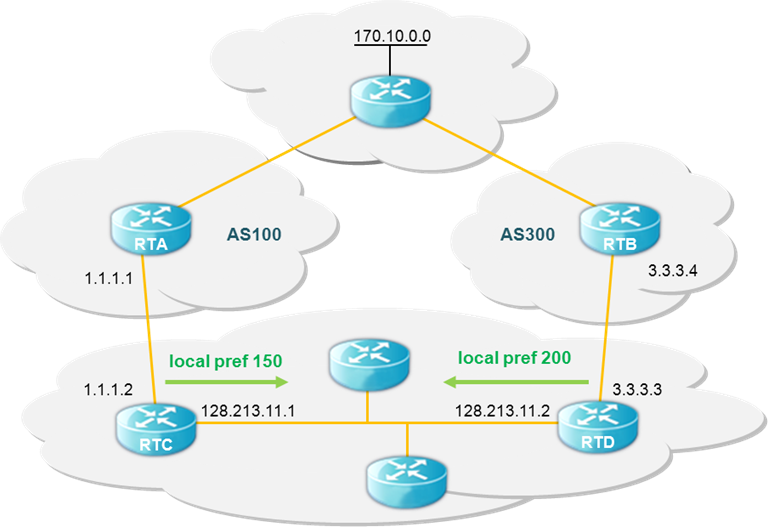
RTC transmits 180.20.0.0 to nextHop, 170.10.20.2.

#### Local Preference Attribute

Local preference notices path preference to AS in order to get the specific network from the AS. The path with higher value ocal preference is preferred more and the default is 100. The local preference is an attribute to be exchanged among routers in the same AS unlike wegith attribute.

This is set with **bgp default local-preference** < *value*> command or route map.

**bgp default local-preference** < *value*> command changes local preference value for moving to the peer router in the same AS. The following example shows two AS update 170.10.0.0 of AS256. Local preference helps the way to get out of AS256 to get to the same network. Supposing RTd is the exit point. The following shows the local preference value is set as 200 for AS 300update, 150 for AS 150.



|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTC --\*/*  !  router bgp 256  bgp default local-preference 150  neighbor 1.1.1.1 remote-as 100  neighbor 128.213.11.2 remote-as 256  !  */\*-- RTD --\*/*  !  router bgp 256  bgp default local-preference 200  neighbor 3.3.3.4 remote-as 300  neighbor 128.213.11.1 remote-as 256  ! |

RTC sets the local preference of all update as 150 and RTD asa 200. RTC and RTD recognized that the network 170.10.0.0 information from AS300 has the higher local preference than one from AS100. So, all traffic of AS256 assigned as 170.10.0.0 is transmitted to RTD.

However, using route map provides flexibility. In the example above, all updates that RTD receives are set for local preference 200. This can be inappropriate. As you can see in the box below, a specific update uses the route map only when setting as specific local preference.

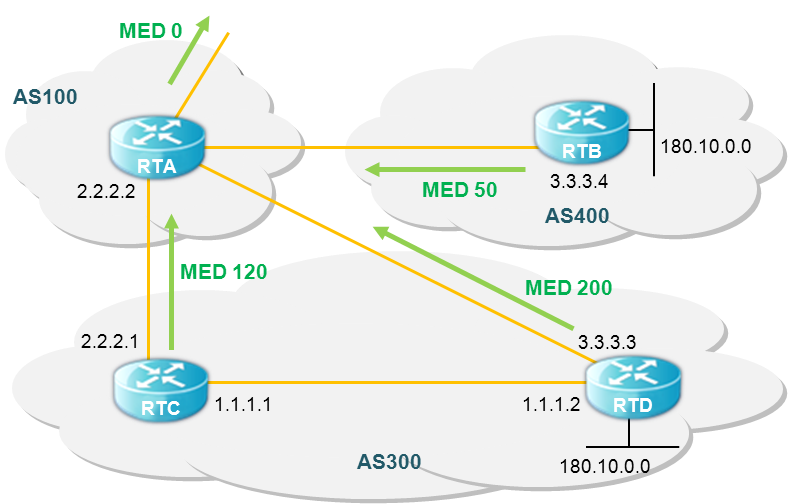
|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTD --\*/*  !  router bgp 256  neighbor 3.3.3.4 remote-as 300  neighbor 3.3.3.4 route-map setlocalin in  neighbor 128.213.11.1 remote-as 256  !  ip as-path access-list 7 permit ^300$  !  route-map setlocalin permit 10  match as-path 7  set local-preference 200  !  route-map setlocalin permit 20  set local-preference 150  ! |

With the configuration above, the update from AS300 is set as Local preference 200 and other updates from AS34 are set as Local preference 150.

#### Metric Attribute

Metric Attribute, Multi\_exit\_discriminator (MED), provides path preference for the specific AS to the external route. When there are various entry points to the specific AS, it helps other AS to choose the point to get to the route and the path with the lower value is chosen.

Unlike local preference, metric is exchanged among AS. It is transmitted to one AS and remained in AS. Metric is used to choose the path in AS when update with the certain metric comes in AS. When the same update information is sent to other AS, metric value is set as 0(default). Compare the metric from neighbor in the same AS when no specific setting and it needs special configuration command “bgp always-compare-med” to compare metric from neighbor in different AS.



AS100 gets network information of 180.10.0.0 through RTC, RTD, and RTB. RTC and RTD are in AS300 and RTB is in AS400.

Suppose that the metric from RTC is set as 120, from RTD as 200, and from RTB as 50. By default, router compares the metric from neighbor in the same AS. RTA can only compare the metric from RTC, and RTD and chooses RTC as the best nexthop because metric value 120 is lower than 200. When RTA gets the information with metric 50 from RTB, it cannot compare this value with metric 120 because RTC and RTB are in the different ASs (RTA chooses the path based on the different attributes).

The following shows to add **bgp always-compare-med** command to RTA in order RTA compares the metric.

|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTA --\*/*  !  router bgp 100  neighbor 2.2.2.1 remote-as 300  neighbor 3.3.3.3 remote-as 300  neighbor 3.3.3.4 remote-as 400  !  */\*-- RTB --\*/*  !  router bgp 400  neighbor 3.3.3.4 remote-as 100  neighbor 3.3.3.4 route-map setmetricout out  !  route-map setmetricout permit 10  set metric 50  !  */\*-- RTC --\*/*  !  router bgp 300  neighbor 2.2.2.2 remote-as 100  neighbor 2.2.2.2 route-map setmetricout out  neighbor 1.1.1.2 remote-as 300  !  route-map setmetricout permit 10  set metric 120  !  */\*-- RTD --\*/*  !  router bgp 300  neighbor 3.3.3.2 remote-as 100  neighbor 3.3.3.2 route-map setmetricout out  neighbor 1.1.1.1 remote-as 300  !  route-map setmetricout permit 10  set metric 200  ! |

From the configuration above, RTA chooses RTC as the nexthop. (Supposing the different attributes are same). The following shows how to configure RTA in order to compare the metric.

|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTA --\*/*  !  router bgp 100  bgp always-compare-med  neighbor 2.2.21 remote-as 300  neighbor 3.3.3.3 remote-as 300  neighbor 4.4.4.3 remote-as 400  ! |

RTA chooses RTB as the best nexthop to get to 180.10.0.0, and also set metric value as redistributing the route to BGP with the command **“default-metric** *number”*.The following shows the configuration when RTB redistributes static information.

|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTB --\*/*  !  router bgp 400  redistribute static  default-metric 50  !  ip route 180.10.0.0 255.255.0.0 null 0  !  *!-- Causes RTB to send out 180.10.0.0 with a metric of 50* |

#### Community Attribute

Community attribute is an optional and transitive attribute from the value 0 to 4,294,967,200, and groups many destinations as the special communities to apply routing decide (accept, prefer, and redistribute). To set the community attriubute, use the following route map.

|  |
| --- |
| **set community** *community-number* **[additive]** |

The following shows the common community-number.

* **no-export** (Do not advertise to EBGP peers)
* **no-advertise** (Do not advertise this route to any peer)
* **internet** (Advertise this route to the internet community, any router belongs to it)

The following shows the route map that sets community.

|  |
| --- |
| route-map communitymap  match ip address 1  set community no-advertise |

or

|  |
| --- |
| route-map setcommunity  match as-path 1  set community 200 additive |

If additive keyword is not set, the value 200 replaces the current community value, and if additive keyword is set, the value 200 is added. After setting the community attribute, this system transmits this to the neighbor as default. But Cisco system should use the following command.

|  |
| --- |
| **neighbor** {*ip-address*|*peer-group-name*} **send-community** |

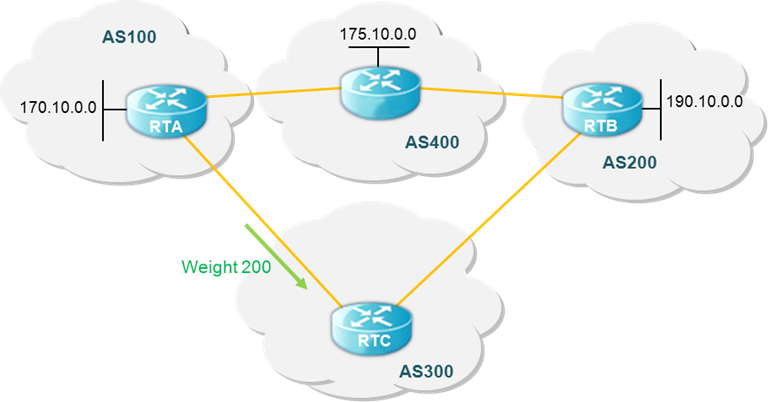
|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTA --\*/*  !  router bgp 100  neighbor 3.3.3.3 remote-as 300  neighbor 3.3.3.3 send-community  neighbor 3.3.3.3 route-map setcommunity out  ! |

By default, this system enables the neighbor send-community and the command ‘neighbor 3.3.3.3 send-community’ is not needed.

#### Weight Attribute

Weight Attribute defined by this system has the same function as Cisco system and is applied to the certain router. This is between 0~65535. The path by itself has the value 32768 by default and the others have “0”.

With many routes to the same destination, the route with the higher weight is chosen.



RTA and RTB get the information of network 175.10.0.0 from AS4 and transmits it to RTC. And RTC has two paths to network 175.10.0.0. If RTC gives the higher weight to RTA, RTC chooses RTA as the netxthop. This can be done by several methods:

* Using the **neighbor** command: **neighbor** {*ip-address*|*peer-group*} **weight** *weight*.
* Using AS path access-lists: **ip as-path access-list** *access-list-number* **{permit|deny}** *as-regular-expression* **neighbor** *ip-address* **filter-list** *access-list-number* **weight** *weight*.
* Using route-maps.

With many routes to the same destination, the route with the higher weight is chosen. The following shows the three mechanisms with the example above

#### neighbor weight command

|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTC --\*/*  !  router bgp 300  neighbor 1.1.1.1 remote-as 100  neighbor 1.1.1.1 weight 200  *!-- route to 175.10.0.0 from RTA has 200 weight*  neighbor 2.2.2.2 remote-as 200  neighbor 2.2.2.2 weight 100  *!-- route to 175.10.0.0 from RTB will have 100 weight*  ! |

#### IP as-path and filter-list

|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTC --\*/*  !  router bgp 300  neighbor 1.1.1.1 remote-as 100  neighbor 1.1.1.1 filter-list 5 weight 200  neighbor 2.2.2.2 remote-as 200  neighbor 2.2.2.2 filter-list 6 weight 100  !  ip as-path access-list 5 permit ^100$  *!-- this only permits path 100*  ip as-path access-list 6 permit ^200$  ! |

#### Route Map

|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTC --\*/*  !  router bgp 300  neighbor 1.1.1.1 remote-as 100  neighbor 1.1.1.1 route-map setweightin in  neighbor 2.2.2.2 remote-as 200  neighbor 2.2.2.2 route-map setweightin in  !  ip as-path access-list 5 permit ^100$  !  route-map setweightin permit 10  match as-path 5  set weight 200  *!-- anything that applies to access-list 5, such as packets from AS100, have weight 200*  !  route-map setweightin permit 20  set weight 100  *!-- anything else would have weight 100*  ! |

### Routing Policy Modification

Routing Policy helps to choose the information with Route-map,Filter-list, and Prefix-list when sending/receiving the neighbor router and routing information. And BGP has new routing information for the new policy as canceling the current routing information or recovering the current path when the routing policy is modified.

In order BGP router get the information for the new policy, it sets the Inbound reset, and in order to provide the new information, it sets “Outbound reset”. As the new information for the new policy is provided, the neighbor router gets the new information.

If BGP router and neighbor router in the user network supports route refresh capability function, they can renew routing information with “Inbound reset”. The following shows the advantages of routing reset.

* Additional setting by operator is not needed
* Additional memory for routing information modification is not needed

The following shows the command to confirm the neighbor router supports Route Refresh Capability function.

|  |
| --- |
| **neighbor capability route-refresh** |

This command specifies Route Refresh Capability function to the neighbor router, and if the neighbor router supports this function, the message “Received route refresh capability from peer” is printed out.

With Route Refresh Capability function by all BGP routers, user gets path information sent already with Soft reset. The following shows the command to set routing information for the new policy.

|  |
| --- |
| **clear ip bgp** [\* | AS | address] **soft in** |

On the other hand, Outbound reset transmits the routing information again with the command “Soft” without setting beforehand. The following shows the command to provide the routing information again.

|  |
| --- |
| **clear ip bgp** [\* | AS | address] **soft out** |

To recover the modified routing policy to the default, operator uses Route Refresh Capability function and does not need to cancel modified policies individually.

The switch without Route Refresh Capability function cancels the routing information with the command “Neighbor Soft-reconfiguration”. But, operator should be careful to use because network can have the problem.

To create new information not reset BGP information, operator should store all information to BGP network, which is not recommandable because of memory loading. But, providing modified information does not need memory, and neighbor routers get the modified information consecutively after BGP router transmits this.

The following show the procedures how to reset BGP with the Routing policy.

1. After reconfiguring BGP router, all information from the neighbor router are stored in BGP router from this point.

|  |
| --- |
| **neighbor** *ip-address* **soft-reconfiguration inbound** |

1. Register the modified information in table with the stored information.

|  |
| --- |
| **clear ip bgp** [\* | AS | address] **soft in** |

The following shows the command to confirm the modified routing information with the routing table and BGP neighbor router.

|  |
| --- |
| **show ip bgp neighbors** *ip-address* **[advertised-routes|received-routes|routes]** |

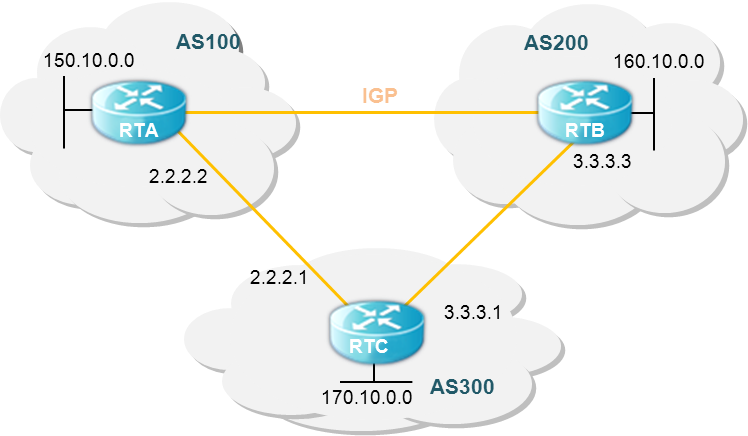
### BGP Peer Groups

BGP Peer Groups is a BGP Neighbor groups for the same update policy that is set by route map, distribute-list, and filter-list. They define the same policies to each neighbor but apply them as naming Peer group. Every member of the peer group has all configuration options, and overrides it as defining new options with no effect on the member or output update.

The following shows the configuration to define the peer group.

|  |
| --- |
| **neighbor** *peer-group-name* **peer-group** |

#### BGP backdoor



The configuration above shows that RTA & RTC and RTB & RTC are connected with EBGP. RTA and RTB use IGP protocol (OSPF and RIP). EBGP update has “20” of distance value smaller than IGP distance value. By default, RIP distance value is 120 and OSPF has 110.

RTA transmits update information of 160.10.0.0 with the two routing protocols. One is EBGP with distance value 20 and the other is IGP with distance value more than 20.

The following shows the default distance value of BGP and it can be changed by distance command.

|  |
| --- |
| **distance bgp** *external-distance internal-distance local-distance*  external-distance:20  internal-distance:200  local-distance:200 |

RTA chooses EBGP update information from RTC having smaller distance value. The following shows what RTA needs to do to get information of 160.10.0.0 through RTB.

* Change the external distance value of EBGP or the external distance value of IGP. (not recommanded)
* Use BGP backdoor

The following shows the command that BGP backdoor makes IGP route as the preferred route.

|  |
| --- |
| **network** *address* **backdoor** |

The assigned address is a network address to receive through IGP. And BGP is recognized as the assigned network locally.

|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTA --\*/*  !  router ospf  !  router bgp 100  neighbor 2.2.2.1 remote-as 300  network 160.10.0.0 backdoor  ! |

Network 160.10.0.0 is recognized as the local entry but is not transmitted like the common network entry. RTA gets information of 160.10.0.0 from RTB through OSPF with distance value 110 and RTC through EBGP with distance value 20 simultaneously. EBGP is usually preferred but OSPF is chosed due to backdoor command.

### BGP Multipath

The BGP Multipath allows several BGP paths for the same destination. These paths are set on the routing table with the best path for load sharing. The BGP Multipath has no impact on the selection of the best path. For example, a router specifies one path among multi paths as its best path. It then advertises the best path to its neighbors.

To be a candidate of the multi paths, the paths with the same destination should have the following conditions same with the best path:

* Weight
* Local preference
* AS−PATH length
* Origin
* MED

One of these:

* Neighboring AS or sub−AS (before the addition of the eiBGP Multipath feature)
* AS−PATH (after the addition of the eiBGP Multipath feature)

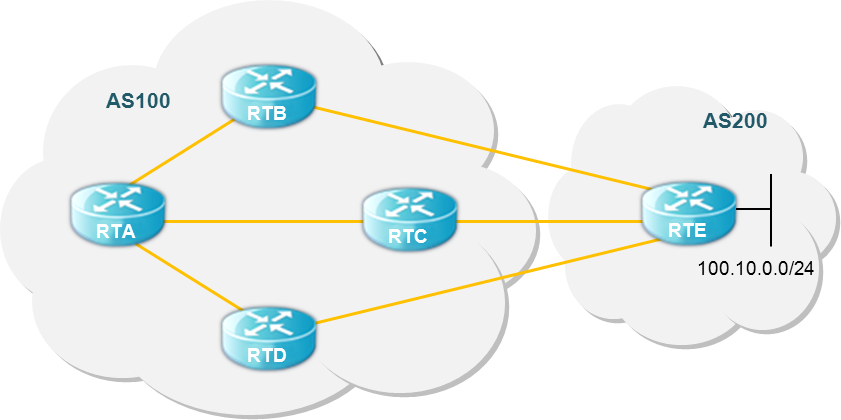
Some characteristics of BGP multipath have the additional requirements for the candidates of multipath.

The following details the requirements of the eBGP multipath.

* The path should be learned from the external or confederation-external neighbor.
* The IGP metric for the BGP nexthop should be identical with the IGP metric of the best path.

The following details the requirements of the iBGP multipath.

* The path should be learned from the internal neighbor.
* The IGP metric for the BGP nexthop should be identical with the IGP metric of the best path.



In the above figure, the RTA receives the network 100.1.1.0/24 from RTB, RTC, and RTD. The multipath function for a router is disabled by default. Therefore, use the following command to use the multipath function.

|  |
| --- |
| **maximum-path** *[ibgp] number* |

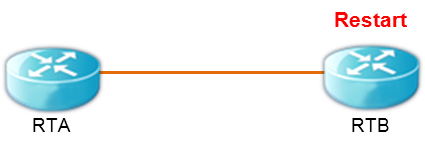
To use Multipath function, set the following commands to RTA.

|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTA --\*/*  !  router bgp 100  maximum-paths ibgp 3  neighbor 10.1.1.1 remote-as 200 /\* RTB \*/  neighbor 20.1.1.1 remote-as 200 /\* RTC \*/  neighbor 30.1.1.1 remote-as 200 /\* RTD \*/  ! |

### BGP graceful-restart

Generally, when the BGP of a router has restarted, all BGP peers linked to the BGP detect that the session is down and then up again. This “down/up” causes “routing flap” and recalculation of the BGP route. In addition, “routing flaps” may temporally generate the forwarding black hole and the forwarding loop. These phenomena have a negative impact on the performance of the entire network.

BGP graceful restart is a mechanism that helps minimizing the negative impacts caused by BGP restart. This mechanism makes the BGP speaker reserve the forwarding state while the BGP is restarting.



In the above figure, the RTB executes BGP restart and the RTA processes BGP graceful-restart. BGP graceful-restart is disabled by default. Therefore, use the following command to use this function. The stalepath-time is the maximum time period that the local BGP holds the stale-path for the restarting peer. If the restarting peer does not update the route for the time specified in the stalepath-time, the stale path is erased.

|  |
| --- |
| **bgp graceful-restart** [**stalepath-time** *seconds*] |

To use BGP graceful-restart, you set the following commands in RTA.

|  |
| --- |
| */\*-- RTA --\*/*  !  router bgp 100  bgp graceful-restart stalepath-time 200  neighbor 10.1.1.1 remote-as 200 /\* RTB \*/  ! |

### BGP default-metric

The default metric is used to solve problems of routes redistributed with the incompatible metric. This value is the Multi Exit Discriminator (MED) which has an impact on calculating the best path selection. The MED is a non-transitive value which can be processed by the local AS only. Therefore, this value is not forwarded to the external AS.

The following details the basic metric settings when this function has not been set.

* The metric of the redistributed IGP route is set identically with the interior BGP metric.
* The metric of the redistributed connected route and the static route is set to 0.
* The metric of the redistributed connected route is set to when this function is set.

To use this function, you set the following command.

|  |
| --- |
| **default-metric** *number* |

### BGP redistribute-internal

When the redistribute BGP is set in the IGP such as RIP, a loop can occur because the iBGP route is redistributed to the same IGP, such as OSPF or RIP. To prevent the situation, the iBGP route should not be redistributed even when the redistribute BGP is set by default.

To redistribute the iBGP route by force, use this command.

|  |
| --- |
| **bgp redistribute-internal** |

### BGP Password encryption

You can use the authentication function with respect to TCP connection by specifying a password for the neighbor.

When the passwords match, a TCP session is connected between neighbors and the neighbors communicate by using messages.

|  |
| --- |
| **neighbor** *ip-address* **password** *KEY*  **neighbor** *ip-address* **password** **0** *KEY*  **neighbor** *ip-address* **password** **7** *KEY* |

You can encrypte password of neighbor. The password level before encryption is 0. After encryption, password level changes to 7. But you can not set password level 7 before encryption.

### BGP disable-adj-out

The system does not maintain out bound table basically. It is for reducing overhead of memory. To disable this function, use the following command in the configuration mode.

|  |
| --- |
| **no bgp disable-adj-out** |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| *알림 및 경고* | **Notice** | When the system does not maintain Out bound table, you do not use “show ip bgp neighbors *ip-address* advertised-routes” command. |

### Use of set as-path prepend Command

You will change the path information to adjust BGP decision process sometimes.

To change path information, use the following command.

|  |
| --- |
| **set as-path prepend** *<As-path#><As-path#>* ... |

## Route Flap Dampening

Route Dampening minimizes the unstability by oscillation between route flapping and network.

Flapping route gets penalty (default is 1000) for each flap. IF the accumulated penalty excesses suppress-limit, route transmission is stopped. The penalty is decreased by 50% when it gets to “half-time” every 5 seconds. The route is retransmitted after the decreased penalty is under the defined “reuse-limit” value.

By default status, Route dampening is off. The following shows the command to adjust the Route dampening.

* **bgp dampening** (will turn on dampening)
* **no bgp dampening** (will turn off dampening)
* **bgp dampening** <half-life-time> (will change the half-life-time)

And the following shows command to change all parameters simultaneously.

* **bgp dampening** <half-life-time> <reuse> <suppress> <maximum-suppress-time>
* <half-life-time> (range is 1-45 min, current default is 15 min)
* <reuse-value> (range is 1-20000, default is 750)
* <suppress-value> (range is 1-20000, default is 2000)
* <max-suppress-time> (maximum duration a route can be suppressed, range is 1-255, default is 4 times half-life-time)

The following shows the terms for the Route dampening.

Table 116 Terminology used in route dampening

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Terminology** | **Description** |
| **History state** | This does not include the best path for the route but information for the route flapping |
| **Damp state** | This shows the penalty value excesses and information is not transmitted to the neighbor. |
| **Penalty** | This is value added to router by the route flapping and the default is 1000. This is accumulated and the status is changed from “history” to “damp” by suppress limit. |
| **Suppress limit** | This is a suppress limit of penalty by route and the default is 200. |
| **Half-life-time** | The penalty imposed to route is to be half every 5 sec after the period set in Half-life-time (default is 15 min). |
| **Reuse-limit** | The path cleared is recovered if penalty imposed to flapping is under Reuse-limit.  The default is 750 and the procedure to clear Path Invalid is performed every 10 seconds. |
| **Maximum suppress limit** | This is the maximum period that route can be invalid and the default is 4 times than half-lif-time. |

# IGMP Snooping

This chapter introduces IGMP Snooping Configuration.

## IGMP Snooping Overview

Multicast traffic is processed as an unknown MAC address or broadcast frame and all ports in VLAN are flooded.

IGMP Snooping does not forward multicast traffic to all ports in VLAN and add/delete ports for forwarding multicast traffic. Switch snoops IGMP traffic between host and router and get information for multicast group and member interface.

The procedure of IGMP Snooping in brief is as follows:

After receiving ‘IGMP Join’ message in the specific multicast group, add the received port into multicast forwarding table entry. After receiving ‘IGMP Leave’ message from the host, delete the port from the table entry. After replaying the IGMP query message to all ports in the VLAN, delete the port that did not get an IGMP join message.

## IGMP Snooping Configuration

### Enable IGMP Snooping on a VLAN

To enable VLAN for IGMP Snooping, use the following command in the global configuration mode:

Table 117 Enable IGMP Snooping on a VLAN

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp snooping** | Enables IGMP Snooping of VLAN |
| **no ip igmp snooping** | Disables IGMP Snooping of VLAN |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface vlan22**  Router(config-if-Vlan22)# **ip igmp snooping**  Router(config-if-Vlan22)# **end**  Router# **show ip igmp interface**  ......  **Interface Vlan22** (Index 2022)  IGMP Enabled, Active, Non-Querier, Version 2 (default)  IGMP interface has 10 group-record states  IGMP activity: 0 joins, 0 leaves  IGMP querying router is 0.0.0.0  IGMP query interval is 125 seconds  IGMP other querier interval is 262 seconds  IGMP max query response time is 25 seconds  Group Membership interval is 275 seconds  IGMP Last member query count is 2  IGMP Last member query interval is 1000 milliseconds  IGMP Startup query count is 2  IGMP Startup query interval is 31 seconds  **IGMP Snooping is enabled on this interface**  IGMP Snooping fast-leave is not enabled  IGMP Snooping querier is not enabled  IGMP Snooping report suppression is enabled  IGMP Snooping last-member-query is enabled  ......  Router# |

### Configure IGMP Snooping Functionality

#### IGMP Snooping Report-Suppression

If you enable ‘IGMP Snooping’ on a VLAN Interface, ‘IGMP Report-suppression’ is basically set to ‘Enable’ and only every one IGMP Report is sent to Multicast Router for each IGMP Membership. If IGMP Report-suppression is set to Disable, all IGMP Report that are received will be forwarded to the Multicast Router.  
This feature applies only to IGMPv1 and IGMPv2, and the following commands are to be executed in interface configuration mode.

Table 118 IGMP Report-Suppression

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp snooping report-suppression** | Sets IGMP report-suppression to VLAN interface |
| **no ip igmp snooping report-suppression** | Disables the IGMP report-suppression of VLAN interface. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface vlan22**  Router(config-if-Vlan22)# **no ip igmp snooping report-suppression**  Router(config-if-Vlan22)# **end**  Router# **show ip igmp interface**  ......  Interface Vlan22 (Index 2022)  IGMP Enabled, Active, Non-Querier, Version 2 (default)  IGMP interface has 10 group-record states  IGMP activity: 0 joins, 0 leaves  IGMP querying router is 0.0.0.0  IGMP query interval is 125 seconds  IGMP other querier interval is 262 seconds  IGMP max query response time is 25 seconds  Group Membership interval is 275 seconds  IGMP Last member query count is 2  IGMP Last member query interval is 1000 milliseconds  IGMP Startup query count is 2  IGMP Startup query interval is 31 seconds  IGMP Snooping is enabled on this interface  IGMP Snooping fast-leave is not enabled  IGMP Snooping querier is not enabled  **IGMP Snooping report suppression is disabled**  IGMP Snooping last-member-query is enabled  ......  Router# |

#### IGMP Snooping Fast-Leave

After enabling the fast-leave function of IGMP Snooping and receiving IGMPv2 Leave message from the host, delete the port in the forwarding table at once.

This feature is only in the case of having one host in each port of VLAN. In the case of being many hosts in a port, a host that does not send IGMPv2 Leave message does not possibly get traffic for multicast group for the specific time. It is available that every host uses IGMPv2 supporting leave message.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp snooping fast-leave** | Sets Fast-leave function to the specific VLAN |
| **no ip igmp snooping fast-leave** | Disables the Fast-leave function of the VLAN |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.  Router(config)# **interface vlan22**  Router(config-if-Vlan22)# **ip igmp snooping fast-leave**  Router(config-if-Vlan22)# end  Router# **show ip igmp interface**  **......**  Interface Vlan22 (Index 2022)  IGMP Enabled, Active, Non-Querier, Version 2 (default)  IGMP interface has 10 group-record states  IGMP activity: 0 joins, 0 leaves  IGMP querying router is 0.0.0.0  IGMP query interval is 125 seconds  IGMP other querier interval is 262 seconds  IGMP max query response time is 25 seconds  Group Membership interval is 275 seconds  IGMP Last member query count is 2  IGMP Last member query interval is 1000 milliseconds  IGMP Startup query count is 2  IGMP Startup query interval is 31 seconds  IGMP Snooping is enabled on this interface  **IGMP Snooping fast-leave is enabled**  IGMP Snooping querier is not enabled  IGMP Snooping report suppression is enabled  IGMP Snooping last-member-query is enabled  **......**  Router# |

#### IGMP Snooping Mrouter-Port

Multicast traffic and IGMP messages received from all member ports, excluding the Mrouter port in the VLAN interface, must be forwarded to the multicast router. Accordingly, the Mrouter port of the VLAN interface connected to the multicaster router is added to all multicast forwarding table entries as a traffic forwarding port.

In other words, IGMP snooping detects IGMP messages and the Mrouter port connected to the multicast router.

Whenever a new multicast forwarding table entry is created, the Mrouter port is always added as the traffic forwarding port, and the IGMP messages sent from the IGMP host are forwarded, as well as multicast traffic.

To set Multicast Router Port with static, use the following command in the interface configuration mode.

Table 119 IGMP Snooping Mrouter-Port

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp snooping mrouter interface** *IFNAME* | Sets Mrouter port manually.  IFNAME should be a Member-Port in VLAN. |
| **no ip igmp snooping mrouter interface** *IFNAME* | Disables the Mrouter port of VLAN |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface vlan22**  Router(config-if-Vlan22)# **ip igmp snooping mrouter interface gi7/2**  Router(config-if-Vlan22)# **end**  Router# **show ip igmp snooping mrouter**  VLAN Interface:  22 Giga7/2  Router# |

#### IGMP Snooping Querier

If you enable IGMP Snooping on a VLAN Interface, then the VLAN Interface will behave as IGMP NON-Querier. To make the VLAN Interface behave as IGMP Querier, you will need to enable the PIM-SM. However by using of IGMP Snooping Querier functionality you can have the VLAN Interface operate as and IGMP Querier without activation of the PIM-SM. When using the IGMP Snooping Querier feature, you should set manually the mrouter port in order to avoid the IGMP Query which might be transferred to upper layer equipment.

To set the IGMP Snooping Query feature the following command are to be executed in interface configuration mode.

Table 120 IGMP Snooping Querier

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp snooping querier** | Set snooping querier for the VLAN. |
| **no ip igmp snooping querier** | Remove the set snooping querier for the VLAN. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface vlan22**  Router(config-if-Vlan22)# **ip igmp snooping mrouter interface gi7/2**  Router(config-if-Vlan22)# **ip igmp snooping querier**  Router(config-if-Vlan22)# **end**  Router# **show ip igmp interface**  ......  Interface Vlan22 (Index 2022)  IGMP Enabled, Active, Non-Querier, Version 2 (default)  IGMP interface has 10 group-record states  IGMP activity: 0 joins, 0 leaves  IGMP querying router is 0.0.0.0  IGMP query interval is 125 seconds  IGMP other querier interval is 262 seconds  IGMP max query response time is 25 seconds  Group Membership interval is 275 seconds  IGMP Last member query count is 2  IGMP Last member query interval is 1000 milliseconds  IGMP Startup query count is 2  IGMP Startup query interval is 31 seconds  IGMP Snooping is enabled on this interface  IGMP Snooping fast-leave is not enabled  **IGMP Snooping querier is enabled**  IGMP Snooping report suppression is disabled  IGMP Snooping last-member-query is enabled  ......  Router# |

#### IGMP Snooping Last-Member-Query

If you enable IGMP Snooping on a VLAN Interface, Last-Member-Query is set to enable by default. And, IGMP Snooping will transfer Group Specific Query only if the Last Member Leave. If Last-Member-Query is set to disable then Group Specific Query is sent whenever all of the Member leave.

To enable this feature, the following commands are to be executed in interface configuration mode.

Table 121 IGMP Snooping Last-Member-Query

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp snooping last-member-query** | Set snooping last-member-query for the VLAN. |
| **no ip igmp snooping last-member-query** | Remove the set snooping last-member-query for the VLAN |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface vlan22**  Router(config-if-Vlan22)# **ip igmp snooping last-member-query**  Router(config-if-Vlan22)# **end**  Router# **show ip igmp interface**  ......  Interface Vlan22 (Index 2022)  IGMP Enabled, Active, Non-Querier, Version 2 (default)  IGMP interface has 10 group-record states  IGMP activity: 0 joins, 0 leaves  IGMP querying router is 0.0.0.0  IGMP query interval is 125 seconds  IGMP other querier interval is 262 seconds  IGMP max query response time is 25 seconds  Group Membership interval is 275 seconds  IGMP Last member query count is 2  IGMP Last member query interval is 1000 milliseconds  IGMP Startup query count is 2  IGMP Startup query interval is 31 seconds  IGMP Snooping is enabled on this interface  IGMP Snooping fast-leave is not enabled  IGMP Snooping querier is enabled  IGMP Snooping report suppression is disabled  **IGMP Snooping last-member-query is disabled**  ......  Router# |

#### IGMP Snooping Access-Group

To set IGMP Access-Group, use the following command in the interface configuration mode.

Table 122 IGMP Access-Group

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp snooping access-group** *<access-list>* | Sets IGMP access group. |
| **no ip igmp snooping access-group** *<access-list>* | Disables IGMP access group. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **access-list 10 permit 225.1.1.1**  Router(config)# **access-list 10 deny any**  Router(config)# **interface gi6/1**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip igmp snooping access-group 10**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Router# |

In the case that relevant interface is the member of various VLAN interface, you can limit Multicast Group of IGMP Host only to a specific VLAN interface.

To limit Multicast Group of IGMP Host to a specific VLAN interface set IGMP access-group, use the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Table 123 Multicast Group of IGMP Host only to specific VLAN interface

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp snooping access-group** *<access-list>* **VLAN** *<VLAN-id>* | Limits multicast group of the IGMP host only to a specific VLAN interface. |
| **no ip igmp snooping access-group** *<access-list>* **VLAN** *<VLAN-id>* | Disables the setting. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **access-list 10 permit 225.1.1.1**  Router(config)# **access-list 10 deny any**  Router(config)# **interface gi6/1**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip igmp snooping access-group 10 vlan 22**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Router# |

#### IGMP Snooping Group-Limit

IGMP Snooping can limit Multicast Group number per each interface.

To limit the multicast group number, use the following command in the interface configuration mode.

Table 124 IGMP Group-Limit

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp snooping limit** *<count>* | Limits multicast group number received to the relevant port. |
| **ip igmp snooping limit** *<count>* **except** *<access-list>* | Limits multicast group number received to the relevant port. In the case of no limitation of the group, designate with an access-list. |
| **no ip igmp snooping limit** *<count>* | Disables the setting. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface gi6/1**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip igmp snooping limit 10**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Router# |

In the case that the relevant interface is a member of the various VLAN interface, you can limit multicast group number to a specific VLAN interface only. To limit the multicast group number to a specific VLAN interface only, use the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Table 125 Multicast Group number only to specific VLAN interface

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp snooping limit** *<count>* **VLAN** *<VLAN-id>* | Limits multicast group received from relevant port to relevant VLAN. |
| **ip igmp snooping limit** *<count>* **VLAN** *<VLAN-id>* **except** *<access-list>* | Limits multicast group received from relevant port to relevant VLAN.  In the case of no limitation Group, designate with an access-list. |
| **no ip igmp snooping limit** *<count>* **VLAN** *<VLAN-id>* | Disables multicast group number only to relevant VLAN interface. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.  Router(config)# **interface gi6/1**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip igmp snooping limit 10 vlan 22**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Router# |

## Display System and Network Statistics

Table 126 IGMP Snooping-related Monitoring Command

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **show ip igmp snooping mrouter** *<IFNAME>* | Displays Mrouter Port of IGMP snooping |
| **show ip igmp snooping table {group|interface|reporters|}** | Displays Reporter information of IGMP snooping |
| **show ip igmp snooping info** | Displays interface information of IGMP snooping |

# IP Multicast Routing

This chapter describes IP multicast routing elements and IP multicast routing setting.

## IP Multicast Routing Overview

IP Multicasting transmits packet in one host group with many IP hosts. This group includes a switch in the local network, the private network, or outside of the local network. Host creating traffic transmits only one packet to host being received.



Figure 21 Multicasting to Transmit Traffic to Many Destinations

Many routing protocols such as Protocol-Independent Multicast (PIM), Distance-Vector Multicast Routing Protocol (DVMRP), Multicast Open Shortest Path First (MOSPF) find multicast group and create the path for each group. Table 127 below summarizes the requirements for each protocol unicast and flooding algorithm.

Table 127 Multicast Protocol

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Protocol | Unicast Protocol | Flooding Algorithm |
| PIM-dense mode | Any | Reverse path flooding (RPF) |
| PIM-sparse mode | Any | RPF / SPF (Switchover) |
| DVMRP | Internal | RPF |
| MOSPF | OSPF | Shortest-path first |

## IGMP Overview

IGMP is a protocol whereby the IP host registers the IP multicast group membership in a router. The router regularly inquires about membership to renew group membership status, and the group remains registered if IP host answers.

IP multicast uses Class D IP address for multicast group address. This is defined in RFC2236.

If IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) proxy receives the IGMP join/leave message from the host, it sends the IGMP join/leave message to the router instead of the host.

If it receives the IGMP query from the IGMP router, it transmits the IGMP query to the host instead of the router. In other words, it functions as IGMP router for the host and as IGMP host for IGMP router.

The limitation items when running IGMP Proxy configuration are as follows:

* Supports only IGMP v2. IGMP v3 is not supported and mutual setting is not acceptable.
* One upstream interface and the others of many downstream interfaces are set at first.
* You can not set PIM-SM setting on upstream or downstream interface after Proxy setting is done.
* Upstream interface setting use Proxy-Service and downstream interface use Mroute-Proxy.
* You can not IGMP Snooping on the interface set with Proxy-Service.

## PIM-SM Overview

PIM-SM is the protocol to connect small number of LANs for various multicast data stream and defines rendezvous point that is an entry point for easy multicast packet routing.

After the specific host transmits multicast packet, multicast router neighbored with the host transmits / registers multicast packet to the rendezvous point. And, multicast packet is transmitted from the sender to the rendezvoud point and then, to the recipient.

PIM-SM v2 includes the following improvements of PIM-SM v1.

* Boot Router (BSR) supports fault-tolerant and automatic RP discovery and distribution mechanism and maps group-to-RP dynamically without setting.
* Flexible encoding about Address family of PIM Join/Prune message is available.
* PIM packet is not included in IGMP packet any more.

Many Candicate BSRs can be set in PIM domain to prevent Single point of failure, and BSR is monitored among the candidate BSR. The router informs the prior BSR with the Boorstrap message and monitored BSR notifies to all routers in PIM domain as BSR.

Router that is set as the Candidate RP informs the group range to BSR with the unicast. BSR includes this information in the Boor strap message and transmits it to PIM message in the domain. So all router get RP information about the specific multicast group. To say, if the router gets the Bootstrap message, router has the current RP map.

## IP Multicast Routing Configuration

### Enable IP Multicast Routing

To forward multicast packet, IP multicast routing should be enabled basically. The following shows the commands in global configuration mode:

Table 128 Enable IP Multicast Routing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip multicast-routing** | Enables IGMP, IGMP Snooping, PIM-SM for Multicast Routing. |
| **no ip multicast-routing** | Disables IGMP, IGMP Snooping, PIM-SM for Multicast Routing. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **ip multicast-routing**  Router(config)# |

### Enable IGMP and PIM on an interface

If PIM-SM protocol is enabled in the interface, IGMP querier functionality is also automatically enabled. To enable PIM, use the following command in interface configuration mode:

Table 129 Enable IGMP and PIM on an interface

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip pim sparse-mode** | Enables PIM Sparse-Mode of the interface |
| **no ip pim sparse-mode** | Disables PIM Sparse-Mode of the interface |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 7/1**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip pim sparse-mode**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **end**  Router# **show ip pim sparse-mode interface**  Address Interface VIFindex Ver/ Nbr Query DR DR  Mode Count Intvl Prior  2.1.1.1 Giga7/1 0 v2/S 0 30 1 2.1.1.1  Router#  Router# **show ip igmp interface**  Interface Giga7/1 (Index 1211)  IGMP Active, Querier, Version 2 (default)  IGMP interface has 0 group-record states  IGMP activity: 0 joins, 0 leaves  IGMP query interval is 125 seconds  IGMP other querier interval is 262 seconds  IGMP max query response time is 25 seconds  Last member query response interval is 1000 milliseconds  Group Membership interval is 275 seconds  IGMP Snooping is not enabled on this interface  IGMP Snooping fast-leave is not enabled  IGMP Snooping querier is not enabled  IGMP Snooping report suppression is enabled  Router# |

### Configure Multicast Functionality

To configure features of Multicast, follow the steps below.

#### Router-Guard IP Multicast

Router-guard IP multicast blocks packets that can be generated at the multicast router among multicast control packets sent to the interface of the user’s network; it then compiles statistics.

Router-guard IP multicast blocks multicast control packets as follows:

* IGMP Query Message
* PIM Message
* DVMRP Message

To set the router-guard IP multicast, use the following commands in the interface configuration mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **router-guard ip multicast** | Sets router-guard IP multicast in the corresponding interface. |
| **router-guard ip multicast VLAN** *<1-4093>* | Sets router-guard IP multicast only to specific members’ interfaces of VLAN. |
| **no router-guard ip multicast** | Disables router-guard IP multicast of the interface. |
| **no router-guard ip multicast VLAN** *<1-4093>* | Sets router-guard IP multicast to specific members’ interface of the VLAN. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 6/1**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **router-guard ip multicast**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **interface GigabitEthernet 7/1**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **router-guard ip multicast vlan 22**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **end**  Router# **show router-guard ip multicast**  Globally enabled on interface gi6.1  Drop statistics  IGMP Queries : 0  PIM Messages : 0  DVMRP Messages : 0  Invalid Messages : 0  Enabled on interface gi7.1, vlan22  Drop statistics  IGMP Queries : 0  PIM Messages : 0  DVMRP Messages : 0  Invalid Messages : 0  Router# |

#### Global Multicast Group-Limit

You can set the global multicast group range to allow or block the multicast traffic of specific groups. The global multicast group range simultaneously applies to all multicast protocols such as IGMP or PIM of a router.

To set the global multicast group range, use the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Table 130 Global Multicast Group-Limit

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip multicast group-range** *access-list* | Sets a multicast group range |
| **no ip multicast group-range** | Disables the multicast group range |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **access-list 20 permit 224.1.1.0 0.0.0.255**  Router(config)# **access-list 20 deny any**  Router(config)# **ip multicast group-range 20**  Router(config)# **exit**  Router# |

#### Multicast Load-Split

PIM Router can have more than one RPF interfaces with the same metric of SPT. For multiple RPF interfaces of a source, PIM selects an upstream interface and splits multicast traffic based on the hash value determined by the hash function of (S, G) entry. The load-split is different from the load-balance. Dealing with many multicast entries, each (S, G) entry has a RPF interface. So, it intensifies the RPF interface less than using only one interface, and increases the efficiency of network bandwidth.

Table 131 Multicast Load-Split

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip multicast multipath** | Sets the multicast load-split |
| **no ip multicast multipath** | Disables the multicast load-split |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **ip multicast multipath**  Router(config)# **exit**  Router# |

#### Multicast Route-Limit

Multicast router can limit the number of multicast routing entries in the system.

To set the number of multicast routing entries, use the following command in global configuration mode:

Table 132 Multicast Route-Limit

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip multicast route-limit**  *<1-2147483647> [<1-2147483647>]* | Limits the number of multicast routing entry  (Default : 1000) |
| **no ip multicast route-limit** | Disables the number of multicast routing entry |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **ip multicast route-limit 10000 9000**  Router(config)# **exit**  Router# **show ip mroute sparse count**  IP Multicast Statistics  Total 0 routes using 0 bytes memory  **Route limit/Route threshold: 10000/9000**  Total NOCACHE/WRONGVIF/WHOLEPKT recv from fwd: 0/0/0  Total NOCACHE/WRONGVIF/WHOLEPKT sent to clients: 0/0/0  Immediate/Timed stat updates sent to clients: 0/0  Reg ACK recv/Reg NACK recv/Reg pkt sent: 0/0/0  Next stats poll: 00:00:19  Forwarding Counts: Pkt count/Byte count, Other Counts: Wrong If pkts  Fwd msg counts: WRONGVIF/WHOLEPKT recv  Client msg counts: WRONGVIF/WHOLEPKT/Imm Stat/Timed Stat sent  Reg pkt counts: Reg ACK recv/Reg NACK recv/Reg pkt sent  Router# |

### Configure IGMP Functionality

To configure IGMP features, follow the steps below.

#### IGMP Version

The IGMP version of IGMP querier, which operates by each network, works as the Default IGMPv2.

To change the IGMP Version, use the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Table 133 IGMP VersionTable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp version** *<1-3>* | Sets IGMP version of interface (Default: 2) |
| **no ip igmp version** | Sets the IGMP for default setting |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 7/1**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip igmp version 3**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **end**  Router# **show ip igmp interface**  **IGMP Enabled, Active, Querier, Configured for version 3**  IGMP interface has 0 group-record states  IGMP activity: 0 joins, 0 leaves  IGMP query interval is 125 seconds  IGMP other querier interval is 262 seconds  IGMP max query response time is 25 seconds  Group Membership interval is 275 seconds  IGMP Last member query count is 2  IGMP Last member query interval is 1000 milliseconds  IGMP Startup query count is 2  IGMP Startup query interval is 31 seconds  IGMP Snooping is not enabled on this interface  IGMP Snooping fast-leave is not enabled  IGMP Snooping querier is not enabled  IGMP Snooping report suppression is enabled  IGMP Snooping last-member-query is enabled  Router# |

#### IGMP Access-Group

Multicast router transmits IGMP host-query message to control multicast group that network hosts are in, and forwards packets to the member of this group. It can also configure a filter for each interface to limit the multicast group that subnets host by the interface.

To filter multicast group that interface permits, use the following command in the Interface configuration mode:

Table 134 IGMP Access-Group

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp access-group**  *access-list* | Controls multicast group – subnet host that is serviced by the corresponding interface. |
| **no ip igmp access-group** | Disables multicast group – subnet host that is serviced by the corresponding interface. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **access-list 1 deny 225.1.1.0 0.0.0.255**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 7/1**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip igmp access-group 1**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **end** |

#### IGMP Query-Interval

The multicast router sends an IGMP query message periodically for managing multicast membership.

To change IGMP query message interval, use the following command in interface configuration mode:

An IGMP Querier is elected among multicast routers in each Network to transmit IGMP Query message. A router whose IP address is the smallest value will be elected. The elected IGMP Querier is responsible to send IGMP Query messages periodically to all host on the Network.

The IGMP Querier sent IGMP Query messages every 125 seconds by default in order to keep tranmission overhead low. To change the interval between this message transmission, the below command is executed in interface configuration mode.

Table 135 IGMP Query-Interval

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp query-interval**  *<1-18000>* | Sets igmp query-interval (Default: 125 seconds) |
| **no ip igmp query-interval** | Sets IGMP query interval as default. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 7/1**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip igmp query-interval 60**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **end**  Router# **show ip igmp interface**  Interface Giga7/1 (Index 1211)  IGMP Enabled, Active, Querier, Version 2 (default)  IGMP interface has 0 group-record states  IGMP activity: 0 joins, 0 leaves  **IGMP query interval is 60 seconds**  IGMP other querier interval is 262 seconds  IGMP max query response time is 25 seconds  Group Membership interval is 275 seconds  IGMP Last member query count is 2  IGMP Last member query interval is 1000 milliseconds  IGMP Startup query count is 2  IGMP Startup query interval is 31 seconds  IGMP Snooping is not enabled on this interface  IGMP Snooping fast-leave is not enabled  IGMP Snooping querier is not enabled  IGMP Snooping report suppression is enabled  Router# |

#### IGMP Last-Member-Query-Count

When an IGMP Querier receives an IGMP Leave message from a Host which means the Host secedes from the Multicast Group, the IGMP Querier generates IGMP Group-Specific Query in order to check out there is any other Host in the same Multicast Group.

If there is no response from any Host to the Group-Specific Query, then the IGMP Querier removes the Multicast Membership.

IGMP last-member-query-count specifies the number of occurrence of IGMP group-specific queries when finding another host of a multicast group by a IGMP querier.

To set IGMP last-member-query-count, use the following commands in interface configuration mode:

Table 136 Last-Member-Query-Count

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp last-member-query-count** *<2-7>* | Sets the number of occurrence of IGMP group-specific query  (Default : 2 times) |
| **no ip igmp last-member-query-count** | Sets the number of occurrence for default |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 7/1**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip igmp last-member-query-count 3**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **end** |

#### IGMP Last-Member-Query-Interval

Last-member-query-interval is available with IGMPv2 and has a max response time for group-specific query messages from a IGMP querier, as a response to ‘IGMP Leave’ message. It is an interval for group-specific query message and the default is “1”. This value is to control leave latency of network, and network can sense the last member existence of group faster with smaller value.

To set the interval, use the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Table 137 IGMP Last-Member-Query-Interval

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp last-member-query-interval** *<1000-25500>* | Sets the IGMP last-member-query-interval  (Default : 1000ms) |
| **no ip igmp last-member-query-interval** | Sets the IGMP last-member-query-interval for default |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 7/1**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip igmp last-member-query-interval 2000**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **end**  Router# **show ip igmp interface**  Interface Giga7/1 (Index 1211)  IGMP Enabled, Active, Querier, Version 2 (default)  IGMP interface has 0 group-record states  IGMP activity: 0 joins, 0 leaves  IGMP query interval is 125 seconds  IGMP other querier interval is 262 seconds  IGMP max query response time is 25 seconds  Group Membership interval is 275 seconds  **IGMP Last member query count is 3**  **IGMP Last member query interval is 2000 milliseconds**  IGMP Startup query count is 2  IGMP Startup query interval is 31 seconds  IGMP Snooping is not enabled on this interface  IGMP Snooping fast-leave is not enabled  IGMP Snooping querier is not enabled  IGMP Snooping report suppression is enabled  Router# |

#### IGMP Immediate-Leave

Normally, a querier sends a group-specific or group-source-specific query message upon receipt of a leave message from a host. If you set a leave latency as 0 (zero), you can omit the querying procedure. When the querying procedure is omitted, the router immediately removes the interface from the IGMP cache for that group, and informs the multicast routing protocols.

To set the IGMP immediate-leave, use the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Table 138 IGMP Immediate-Leave

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp immediate-leave group-list** *access-list* | Enables IGMP immediate-leave on relevant interface. |
| **no ip igmp immediate-leave** | Disables IGMP immediate-leave on the relevant interface. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **access-list 2 permit 225.1.1.0 0.0.0.255**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 7/1**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip igmp immediate-leave group-list 2**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **end** |

#### IGMP Group Limit

You can use a IGMP group limit to limit the number of IGMP states that can be joined to a router on an interface or global level. Membership reports exceeding the configured limits are not entered into the IGMP cache and traffic for the excess membership reports is not forwarded.

To set the IGMP Group Limit, use the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Table 139 IGMP Group Limit

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp limit** *<1-2097152>* | Sets IGMP group limit on the relevant interface.  (Default : unlimited) |
| **no ip igmp limit** | Disables IGMP group limit on the relevant interface. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 7/1**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip igmp limit 100**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **end** |

#### IGMP Global Limit

IGMP Querier manages the Hosts which join a Multicast Membership Group per the interface. Multicast Router can limit the total number of Multicast Membership Group which are managed by the IGMP Querier.  
  
To set the IGMP Global Group Limit the following command in global configuration mode is executed.  
Table 140 IGMP Global Limit

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp limit** *<1-2097152>* | Sets IGMP group limit to global  (Default: unlimited) |
| **no ip igmp limit** | Disables the IGMP group limit set to global |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **ip igmp limit 100**  Router(config)# **end** |

#### IGMP Minimum-Version

You can limit a version of IGMP message be received. In the case of setting IGMP minimum-version with 2, the received IGMPv1 message is limited and IGMPv2, IGMPv3 message is allowed. In the case of IGMPv3 message, decide processing or not by IGMP version of the set interface.

To set the IGMP minimum-version, use the following commands in interface configuration mode:

Table 141 IGMP Minimum-Version

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp minimum-version** *<2|3>* | Sets IGMP minimum-version to relevant interface. |
| **no ip igmp minimum-version** | Disables IGMP minimum-version. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 7/1**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip igmp minimum-version 2**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **end** |

#### IGMP Querier-Timeout

There should be a single querier on a network segment to prevent duplicating multicast traffic for connected hosts. When there are several routers, if the router has the lowest IP address or if the router hears no queries during the timeout period, it becomes the querier.

To set the IGMP querier-timeout, use the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Table 142 IGMP Querier-Timeout

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp querier-timeout** *<60-300>* | Sets IGMP querier timeout  (Default : 262 seconds) |
| **no ip igmp querier-timeout** | Sets IGMP querier timeout to default |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 7/1**  Router(config-if-Giga**7/1**)# **ip igmp querier-timeout 300**  Router(config-if- Giga**7/1**)# **end**  Router# **show ip igmp interface**  Interface Giga**7/1** (Index 1211)  IGMP Enabled, Active, Querier, Version 2 (default)  IGMP interface has 0 group-record states  IGMP activity: 0 joins, 0 leaves  IGMP query interval is 125 seconds  **IGMP other querier interval is 300 seconds**  IGMP max query response time is 25 seconds  Group Membership interval is 275 seconds  IGMP Last member query count is 2  IGMP Last member query interval is 1000 milliseconds  IGMP Startup query count is 2  IGMP Startup query interval is 31 seconds  IGMP Snooping is not enabled on this interface  IGMP Snooping fast-leave is not enabled  IGMP Snooping querier is not enabled  IGMP Snooping report suppression is enabled  IGMP Snooping last-member-query is enabled  Router# |

#### 

#### IGMP Query-Max-Response-Time

In IGMP version 2 and 3, membership query messages include the maximum query response time field. This field specifies the maximum time allowed before sending a responding report. The maximum query response time allows a router to quickly detect that there are no more directly connected group members on a network segment.

To set the IGMP query max-response-time, use the following commands in the interface configuration mode.

Table 143 IGMP Query-Max-Response-Time

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp query-max-response-time** *<1-240>* | Designates max-response-time.  (Default : 25 second) |
| **no ip igmp query-max-response-time** | Returns to default setting. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 7/1**  Router(config-if-Giga**7/1**)# **ip igmp query-max-response-time 10**  Router(config-if-Giga**7/1**)# **end**  Router# **show ip igmp interface**  Interface Giga7/1 (Index 1211)  IGMP Enabled, Active, Querier, Version 2 (default)  IGMP interface has 0 group-record states  IGMP activity: 0 joins, 0 leaves  IGMP query interval is 125 seconds  IGMP other querier interval is 262 seconds  **IGMP max query response time is 10 seconds**  Group Membership interval is 275 seconds  IGMP Last member query count is 2  IGMP Last member query interval is 1000 milliseconds  IGMP Startup query count is 2  IGMP Startup query interval is 31 seconds  IGMP Snooping is not enabled on this interface  IGMP Snooping fast-leave is not enabled  IGMP Snooping querier is not enabled  IGMP Snooping report suppression is enabled  IGMP Snooping last-member-query is enabled  Router# |

#### IGMP Rate

Multicast Router can limit PPS about IGMP packet incoming to CPU. IGMP packet over set IGMP rate drop from CPU.

To limit IGMP packet to PPS, use the following commands in the interface configuration mode.

Table 144 IGMP Rate

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp rate** *<500-6000>* | Sets the IGMP rate in pps units. |
| **no ip igmp rate** | Disables the IGMP rate. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 7/1**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip igmp rate 100**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **end**  Router# **show ip igmp rate-limit statistics**  IGMP Message Ratelimit (pps) for IP Multicast  Ifname Incoming rate Rate-limit Permit Drop Rx-Total  ------------+---------------+------------+--------+--------+-----------+  **Gi7.1 0 100 0 0 0**  Router# |

#### IGMP Robustness-Variable

You can statically configure the querier’s robustness variable (QRV) field in the membership query message for IGMP version 2 and 3. The QRV allows tuning for the expected packet loss on a network. If a network is expected to be lossy, the QRV value may be increased. When receiving the query message that contains a certain QRV value from a querier, a host returns the report message as many as the specified QRV value.

To set the IGMP Robustness-Variable, use the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Table 145 IGMP Robustness-Variable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp robustness-variable** *<2-7>* | Sets the IGMP robustness variable  (Default: 2) |
| **no ip igmp robustness-variable** | Sets the IGMP robustness variable to default |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 7/1**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip igmp robustness-variable 5**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **end**  Router# |

#### IGMP Static-Group

When there are no more group members on a network segment or a host cannot report its group membership using IGMP, multicast traffic is no longer transmitted to the network segment. However, you may want to pull down multicast traffic to a network segment to reduce the time from when an IGMP join request is made to when the requested stream begins arriving at a host, which is called the *zapping time*.

The IGMP-Group reduces the zapping time by statically creating a virtual host that behaves like a real on a port, even if there is no group member in the group where the port belongs. As a result, a multicast router realizes there is still group member, allowing multicast traffic to be permanently reachable on the group.

To set an IGMP Static-Group, use the IGMP Class-Map. To generate an IGMP Class-Map, use the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Table 146 IGMP Static-Group

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **class-map type multicast-flows** *name* | Makes an IGMP class-map. |
| **no class-map type multicast-flows** | Deletes the IGMP class-map. |

To set IGMP Class-Map, use the following command.

Table 147 IGMP Class-Map

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **group** *A.B.C.D* | Assigns an IGMPv2 group (\*, G). |
| **group** *A.B.C.D* **source** *A.B.C.D* | Assigns an IGMPv3 group and source (S, G). |
| **group** *A.B.C.D* **to** *A.B.C.D* | Assigns multiple IGMPv2 groups (\*, Gn). |
| **group** *A.B.C.D* **to** *A.B.C.D* **source** *A.B.C.D* | Assigns multiple IGMPv3 groups and a source(S, Gn). |
| **no group** *A.B.C.D* | Deletes the assigned IGMPv2 group (\*, G). |
| **no group** A.B.C.D **source** A.B.C.D | Deletes the assigned IGMPv3 and source (S, G). |
| **no group** *A.B.C.D* **to** *A.B.C.D* | Deletes the assigned multiple IGMPv2 groups (\*, Gn). |
| **no group** *A.B.C.D* **to** *A.B.C.D* **source** *A.B.C.D* | Deletes the assigned multiple IGMPv3 groups and a source(S, Gn). |

The source setting, assigned in IGMP class-map, is valid only in IGMPv3.

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **class-map type multicast-flows igmp\_static**  Router(config-mcast-flows-cmap)# **group 225.1.1.1 to 225.1.1.10**  Router(config-mcast-flows-cmap)# **group 225.1.2.1**  Router(config-mcast-flows-cmap)# **end**  Router# **show ip igmp static-group class-map**  Class-map igmp\_static  description : -  Group address range 225.1.1.1 to 225.1.1.10  Group address 225.1.2.1  Router# |

To set IGMP static-group, use the following command in interface configuration mode:

Table 148 IGMP Rate

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp static-group** *A.B.C.D* | Sets the IGMPv2 static-group not using the IGMP class-map. |
| **ip igmp static-group** *A.B.C.D* **interface** *IFNAME* | For the VLAN interface with enabled IGMP Snooping, it sets the member port of VLAN interface when setting IGMPv2 static-group. |
| **ip igmp static-group** *A.B.C.D* **source** *A.B.C.D* | Sets an IGMPv3 static-group not using the IGMP class-map. |
| **ip igmp static-group** *A.B.C.D* **source** *A.B.C.D* **interface** *IFNAME* | For the VLAN interface with IGMP Snooping enabled, it sets the member port of VLAN interface when setting IGMPv3 static-group. |
| **ip igmp static-group class-map** *name* | Sets a static-group based on the information of the assigned group in the IGMP class-map using IGMP class-map. |
| **no ip igmp static-group** *A.B.C.D* | Disables the IGMPv2 static-group. |
| **no ip igmp static-group** *A.B.C.D* **interface** *IFNAME* | Disables the IGMPv2 static-group that is set in the VLAN interface with enabled IGMP Snooping. |
| **no ip igmp static-group** *A.B.C.D* **source** *A.B.C.D* | Disables the IGMPv3 static-group. |
| **no ip igmp static-group** *A.B.C.D* **source** *A.B.C.D* **interface** *IFNAME* | Disables the IGMPv3 static-group that is set in the VLAN interface with enabled IGMP Snooping. |
| **no ip igmp static-group class-map** *name* | Disables the static-group of IGMP Class-Map. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 7/1**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip igmp static-group igmp\_static**  Router(config-if-Giga7/1)# **end**  Router# **show ip igmp group**  IGMP Connected Group Membership  Group Address Interface Uptime Expires Last Reporter  225.1.1.1 Giga7/1 00:01:42 static 0.0.0.0  225.1.1.2 Giga7/1 00:01:42 static 0.0.0.0  225.1.1.3 Giga7/1 00:01:42 static 0.0.0.0  225.1.1.4 Giga7/1 00:01:42 static 0.0.0.0  225.1.1.5 Giga7/1 00:01:42 static 0.0.0.0  225.1.1.6 Giga7/1 00:01:42 static 0.0.0.0  225.1.1.7 Giga7/1 00:01:42 static 0.0.0.0  225.1.1.8 Giga7/1 00:01:42 static 0.0.0.0  225.1.1.9 Giga7/1 00:01:42 static 0.0.0.0  225.1.1.10 Giga7/1 00:01:42 static 0.0.0.0  225.1.2.1 Giga7/1 00:01:42 static 0.0.0.0  Router# **show ip igmp static-group class-map interface gi7/1**  Giga7/1  Class-map attached : igmp\_static  Group address range 225.1.1.1 to 225.1.1.10  Group address 225.1.2.1  Router# |

#### IGMP SSM-MAP

The purpose of static SSM mapping is to provide SSM service on IGMPv1 and IGMPv2 messages. It means that it enables a multicast host to signal to a router which groups it wants to receive multicast traffic from, and from which sources this traffic is expected. You can specify a source address of multicast server to receive the multicast traffic from specified sources. If the system receives IGMPv1 or IGMPv2 report message from the host when static SSM mapping is enabled, it handles as if it receives IGMPv3 report messages.

By default, the PIM SSM is enabled. To disable the PIM SSM, use the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Table 149 IGMP SSM-MAP1

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **no ip igmp ssm-map enable** | Disables the SSM-MAP |
| **ip igmp ssm-map enable** | Enables SSM-MAP |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **no ip igmp ssm-map enable**  Router(config)# **exit**  Router# **show ip igmp ssm-map**  **SSM Mapping : Disabled**  Database : None configured  Router#  Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **ip igmp ssm-map enable**  Router(config)# **exit**  Router# **show ip igmp ssm-map**  **SSM Mapping : Enabled**  Database : None configured |

A group joined with IGMPv2 processes assigned source with mapping group assigned from database of IGMP SSM-MAP.

To generate database of IGMP SSM-Map, use the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Table 150 IGMP SSM-MAP2

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip igmp ssm-map static** *access-list* **A.B.C.D** | Adds ssm-map database using access-list. |
| **no ip igmp ssm-map static** *access-list* **A.B.C.D** | Deletes the added ssm-map database using access-list. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **access-list 20 permit 224.1.1.0 0.0.0.255**  Router(config)# **access-list 21 permit 224.1.3.0 0.0.0.255**  Router(config)# **ip igmp ssm-map static 20 179.1.1.200**  Router(config)# **ip igmp ssm-map static 21 179.1.1.201**  Router(config)# **exit**  Router# **show ip igmp ssm-map**  SSM Mapping : Enabled  **Database : Static mappings configured**  Router#  Router# **show ip igmp ssm-map 224.1.1.1**  Group address: 224.1.1.1  Database : Static  Source list : 179.1.1.200  Router#  Router# **show ip igmp ssm-map 224.1.2.1**  Can't resolve 224.1.2.1 to source-mapping  Router#  Router# **show ip igmp ssm-map 224.1.3.1**  Group address: 224.1.3.1  Database : Static  Source list : 179.1.1.201  Router# |

### Configure PIM-SM Functionality

To configure the Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) feature, do the following tasks.

#### PIM Hello-Interval

PIM sends out Hello message in periodic manner. To set the interval between message transmission use the below commands in interface configuration mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| command | Description |
| **ip pim hello-interval** *<* *1-65535>* | Set the interval between Hello message transmission.  (Default : 30s) |
| **no ip pim hello-interval** | Return the interval to the default value. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 6/1**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip pim hello-interval 60**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Router# **show ip pim sparse-mode interface**  Address Interface VIFindex Ver/ Nbr **Query** DR DR  Mode Count **Intvl** Prior  3.1.3.222 Giga6/1 0 v2/S 0 **60** 1 3.1.3.222  Router# |

#### PIM Hello-Holdtime

PIM sends out Hello message in periodic manner and any Neighbor who receives the PIM Hello message should maintain the message sender as its neighbor for the ‘Holdtime’ period specified in the received Hello message. To set Holdtime use the below commands in interface configuration mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip pim hello-holdtime** *<* *1-65535>* | Set the holdtime in Hello message.  (Default : 105s) |
| **no ip pim hello-interval** | Return the holdtime to default value in Hello message. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 6/1**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip pim hello-holdtime 120**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end** |

#### PIM DR-Priority

PIM sends out Hello message in periodic manner and any Neighbor who receives the PIM Hello message should select DR of the corresponding interface according to the specified DR-Priority in the received Hello message.

When selecting DR, the following rule will be applied:

* After comparing the DR Priority specified in both the interface and the Neighbor message, the host whose DR Priority is higher will be the DR Router.
* When the DR Priority specified in both the interface and the Neighbor message is same, the host whose IP address is the highest will be the DR Router.
* In case the received PIM Hello message do not include DR Priority, it is deemed that the Neighbor has the highest priority so the Neighbor will be the DR Router.
* When there are multiple Neighbors which do not include DR Priority, the Neighbor whose IP address is the highest will be the DR Router.

To modify the DR Priority in PIM Hello message, use the following commands in interface configuration mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| command | Description |
| **ip pim dr-priority** *<0-4294967294 >* | Set DR Priority in PIM Hello message.  (Default : 1) |
| **no ip pim dr-priority** | Return DR Priority to default value. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 6/1**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip pim dr-priority 10**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Router# **show ip pim sparse-mode interface**  Address Interface VIFindex Ver/ Nbr Query **DR** DR  Mode Count Intvl **Prior**  3.1.3.222 Giga6/1 0 v2/S 0 60 **10** 3.1.3.222  Router# |

#### PIM Propagation-Delay

In Multi-Access Network environment, if any one particular PIM Neighbor no longer wants to receive Multicast Traffic, the PIM Neighbor will send ‘PIM Prune’ message to the Upstream Router. Then the Upstream Router will stay on hold during the specified time so as to determine whether there is any other PIM Router which may want to receive the same Multicast Traffic.

If there is any PIM Router which wants to receive the delayed Multicast Traffic, the PIM Router will need to send PIM Join message within the reserved time period to the Upstream Router so that the Upstream Router will continue to forward the Multicast Traffic.

For the Multicast Traffic Forwarding in Multi-Access Network environment, PIM Router sends out the propagation delay time that is necessary for delaying PIM Prune process. This is included in PIM Hello messages.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip pim propagation-delay** *<1000-5000>* | Set propagation delay in PIM Hello message.  (Default: 1000ms) |
| **no ip pim propagation-delay** | Release the set propagation delay in PIM Hello message. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 6/1**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip pim propagation-delay 5000**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Router# **show ip pim sparse-mode interface detail**  Giga6/1 (vif 0):  Address 3.1.3.222, DR 3.1.3.222  Hello period 30 seconds, Next Hello in 23 seconds  Triggered Hello period 5 seconds  Propagation delay is 1000 milli-seconds  **Configured Propagation-delay 5000 milli-seconds**  Generation ID : 795759275  Neighbors:  Router# |

#### PIM Exclude-Genid

PIM sends out Hello message in periodic manner and the PIM Hello message may include Generation ID in the message. In case a PIM Router received PIM Hello messages which have different Generation IDs from an identical Neighbor, it is deemed that the Neighbor has been Started or Restarted. Consequently PIM Neighbor Discovery is conducted to update RP information or PIM RPF.

If you want not to include Generation ID in the PIM Hello message, use the below command in interface configuration mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip pim exclude-genid** | Configure not to include Generation ID in the PIM Hello message. |
| **no ip pim exclude-genid** | Remove the configuration of exclude-genid. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 6/1**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip pim exclude-genid**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Router# |

#### PIM Neighbor-Filter

PIM sends out Hello message in periodic manner and the Neighbor which receives the PIM Hello messages will choose the DR in its network.

When you need to block any particular PIM Neighbor, use the below command in interface configuration mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip pim neighbor-filter** *access-list* | Set to block the PIM neighbor. |
| **no ip pim neighbor-filter** *access-list* | Release the blocked the PIM neighbor.. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **access-list 3 permit 3.1.3.1**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 6/1**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip pim neighbor-filter 3**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end** |

#### PIM BSR-Border

Bootstrap Router (BSR) generates periodically the Bootstrap message which has the information regarding the dispatched RP over the network. If you configure BSR Border on a specific interface, then different PIM domain can be configured as the transmission of the Bootstrap messages is limited.

To configure BSR Border on a specific interface, use the below commands in interface configuration mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip pim bsr-border** | Block the transmission of BSR message for the interface. |
| **no ip pim bsr-border** | Release the blocked transmission of BSR message for the interface. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 6/1**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip pim bsr-border**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end** |

#### PIM JP-Timer

Multicast Router sends out PIM Join/Prune messages to the Upstream Multicast Router which is on the Routing Path of SPT or RPT so as to maintain Multicast Traffic Forwarding.

The default value of interval for transmiting PIM Join/Prune messages is 60 seconds. To modify the interval, use the below commands in global configuration mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip pim jp-timer** *<1-65535>* | Set the interval for transmiting PIM Join/Prune messages.  (Default : 60 sec) |
| **no ip pim jp-timer** | Return the set the interval to default value. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **ip pim jp-timer 120**  Router(config)# **exit** |

#### PIM Access-Group

Multicast Router maintains Multicast Traffic Forwarding receiving PIM Join message periodically. For the case that any PIM Join message for unwanted Multicast Group would be received, you may restric the join message.

To restric the PIM join message to unwanted Multicast Group, use the below commands in interface configuration mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip multicast boundary** *access-list* | Limit the PIM join message to the Multicast Group specified as Access-List. |
| **no ip multicast boundary** *access-list* | Release the limitation set for the PIM join message. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **access-list 3 deny 224.1.1.0 0.0.0.255**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 6/1**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip multicast boundary 3**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end** |

#### PIM Accept-Register

The Multicast Router which acts as RP manages Multicast Source Entry by receiving PIM Register messages from the 1st-Hop Multicast Router in PIM Domain.

To limit the particular source from which the received PIM Register messages are coming, use the below commands in global configuration mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip pim accept-register list** *access-list* | Limit the particular source of the received PIM Register messages. |
| **no ip pim register-filter-group** | Release the limitation on the particular source. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **access-list 30 permit 100.1.1.0 0.0.0.255**  Router(config)# **access-list 30 deny any**  Router(config)# **ip pim accept-register list 30**  Router(config)# **exit** |

#### PIM SPT-Threshold

When a Multicast Router keeps the IGMP Membership for the IGMP Host, this Multicast Router is called as Last-Hop Router. The Last-Hop Router can configure the SPT(Shortest-Path-Tree) so that it can receive the Multicast Traffic which come from RP Tree in the fastest path.

To configure PIM SPT-Threshold, use the below commands in global configuration mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip pim spt-threshold** *[***group-list** *access-list]* | Configure PIM SPT-Threshold  Default is ‘Enable’. |
| **no ip pim spt-threshold** *[***group-list** *access-list]* | Release the configured PIM SPT Threshold. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **no ip pim spt-threshold**  Router(config)# **exit** |

#### PIM Cisco-Register-Checksum

The First-Hop Router which has received the Multicast Packet from Multicast Packet Originator sends the packet that is included in PIM Register message to RP by way of unicast routing. The RP which receives this PIM Register message forwards the Multicast Packet to all the Multicast Routing Entry.

According to RFC standards the Checksum of PIM-SM Register message is calculated with the Header part meanwhile Cisco uses the entire message for the Checksum. Therefore, in order to be compatible with CISCO Router Checksum calculation shall be with the whole of the message.   
To set the Cisco Register-Checksum use the below command in global configuration mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip pim cisco-register-checksum** | Configure to be compatible with CISCO for all Group. |
| **ip pim cisco-register-checksum group-list** *access-list* | Configure to be compatible with CISCO for the Group specified in Access-list. |
| **no ip pim cisco-register-checksum** | Release the configuration for all Group. |
| **no ip pim cisco-register-checksum group-list** *access-list* | Release the configuration for the specified Group. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **ip pim cisco-register-checksum**  Router(config)# **exit** |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **access-list 11 permit 224.1.1.0 0.0.0.255**  Router(config)# **ip pim cisco-register-checksum group-list 11**  Router(config)# **exit** |

#### PIM BSR-Candidate

In order for a Multicast Router to act as the BSR Candidate, it should be included in PIM Domain. To configure the Multicast Router to be the BSR Candidate, use the below commands in global configuration mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip pim bsr-candidate** *ifname* [*hash-mask-length*] [*priority*] | Configure the Multicast Router to be the BSR Candidate |
| **no ip pim bsr-candidate** *[ifname]* | Release the configuration for the BSR candidate. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **ip pim bsr-candidate lo0**  Router(config)# **exit**  Router# **show ip pim sparse-mode bsr-router**  PIMv2 Bootstrap information  This system is the Bootstrap Router (BSR)  BSR address: 172.16.1.222  Uptime: 00:02:32, BSR Priority: 64, Hash mask length: 10  Next bootstrap message in 00:00:24  Role: Candidate BSR  State: Elected BSR  Router# |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **ip pim bsr-candidate lo0 24 128**  Router(config)# **exit**  Router# **show ip pim sparse-mode bsr-router**  PIMv2 Bootstrap information  This system is the Bootstrap Router (BSR)  BSR address: 172.16.1.222  Uptime: 00:05:01, BSR Priority: 128, Hash mask length: 24  Next bootstrap message in 00:00:59  Role: Candidate BSR  State: Elected BSR  Router# |

#### PIM RP-Candidate

In order for a Multicast Router to act as the RP Candidate, it should be included in PIM Domain. RP Candidate can provide service to the whole IP multicast address range or a part of them. Candidate RP sends periodically Candidate RP Advertisement message to Bootstrap Router (BSR).

To configure the Multicast Router to be the RP Candidate, use the below commands in global configuration mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip pim rp-candidate** *ifname* | Configure the Candidate RP to operate with Default value. |
| **ip pim rp-candidate** *ifname* **priority** *<0-255>* | Configure the Candidate RP of specified priority to operate. |
| **ip pim rp-candidate** *ifname* **priority** *<0-255>* **interval** *<1-16383>* | Configure the Candidate RP that has specified priority and sends out Advertisement message periodically to operate. |
| **ip pim rp-candidate** *ifname* **priority** *<0-255>* **interval** *<1-16383>* **group-list** *access-list* | Configure the Candidate RP that has specified priority and sends out Advertisement message periodically to the specified Group to operate. |
| **no ip pim rp-candidate** *[ifname]* | Release the configuration set on the Candidate RP. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **ip pim bsr-candidate lo0**  Router(config)# **ip pim rp-candidate lo0**  Router(config)# **exit**  Router# **show ip pim sparse-mode bsr-router**  This system is the Bootstrap Router (BSR)  BSR address: 172.16.1.222  Uptime: 00:03:56, BSR Priority: 64, Hash mask length: 10  Next bootstrap message in 00:00:07  Role: Candidate BSR  State: Elected BSR  Candidate RP: 172.16.1.222(Loopback0)  Advertisement interval 60 seconds  Next C-RP advertisement in 00:00:36  Router#  Router# **show ip pim sparse-mode rp mapping**  PIM Group-to-RP Mappings  This system is the Bootstrap Router (v2)  Group(s): 224.0.0.0/4  RP: 172.16.1.222  Info source: 172.16.1.222, via bootstrap, priority 192  Uptime: 00:00:08, expires: 00:02:24  Router# |

#### PIM RP-Address

You can use this feature when you configure a Multicast router to be the RP in static fashion in the Network environment where RP Candidate or BSR Candidate are not available.

Static RP information will have a lower priority than the RP Candidate which has been updated by dynamic learning from Bootstrap message. If you want to increase the priority of the set Static RP than the learned RP Candidate, you will need to configure RP-Address Override.

To set Static RP information on the Multicast Router, use the below command in global configuration mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip pim rp-address** A.B.C.D [*access-list] [override]* | Set Static RP on the Multicast Router. |
| **no ip pim rp-address** *A.B.C.D [access-list]* | Release the set Static RP information. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **ip pim rp-address 172.16.0.1**  Router(config)# **exit**  Router# **show ip pim sparse-mode rp mapping**  PIM Group-to-RP Mappings  Group(s): 224.0.0.0/4, Static  RP: 172.16.0.1  Uptime: 00:00:37  Router# |

#### PIM Register-Source

When transmitting PIM Register from 1st-Hop Router to RP, you can assign the IP source of the PIM Register Packet. To set the PIM Register-Source, use the below command in global configuration mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip pim register-source [** *ifname* ***|*** *A.B.C.D* **]** | Set PIM Register-Source. |
| **no ip pim rp-address** *A.B.C.D [access-list]* | Release the set PIM Register-Source. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **ip pim register-source lo0**  Router(config)# **exit**  Router# |

#### PIM SSM

If you set PIM SSM, all the groups which are included in the configured SSM will not have RPT function but SPT.

To configure the Group Range of SSM, use the below commands in global configuration mode.

Table 151 PIM SSM

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **ip pim ssm default** | Assign Default Group range(232/8) for PIM SSM. |
| **ip pim ssm range** *access-list* | Assign the Group range specified in Access-List for PIM SSM. |
| **no ip pim ssm** | Release the PIM SSM Group range. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **ip pim ssm default**  Router(config)# **access-list 10 permit 224.1.1.0 0.0.0.255**  Router(config)# **ip pim ssm range 10**  Router(config)# **exit** |

### Display System and Network Statistics

Table 152 Monitoring Commands of IP Multicast Routing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **show ip igmp groups** | Display the multicast groups. |
| **show ip igmp interface** | Display the multicast related information of the interface. |
| **show ip igmp rate-limit statistics** | Display the statistics on multicast packet of the interface which is set with rate-limit. |
| **show ip igmp ssm-map** | Display the configuration status of ssm-map. |
| **show ip igmp static-group class-map** | Display the configuration status of class-map which is for specifying static group. |
| **show ip igmp statistics {receive|send} {interface|}** | Display the igmp statistics. |
| **show ip mcache** | Display the content of multicast routing cache. |
| **show ip mroute** | Display the content of multicast routing table. |
| **show ip mvif** | Display the information of multicast interface. |
| **show ip pim sparse-mode anycast-rp** | Display the information of PIM anycast RP. |
| **show ip pim bsr-router** | Display the information of BSR router. |
| **show ip pim sparse-mode interface** | Display the information of the interface which PIM has configured. |
| **show ip pim sparse-mode local-members** | Display the PIM local membership information. |
| **show ip pim sparse-mode mroute** | Display the content of multicast routing table which PIM manages. |
| **show ip pim neighbor** | Display the PIM neighbors. |
| **show ip pim rp** | Display the information about RP. |
| **show ip pim rp-hash** | Display the information about RP-HASH. |
| **show ip rpf** | Display the information about RPF. |
| **show ip rpf event** | Display the received RPF event information. |

# Statistics Monitoring

This chapter describes the monitoring function for the system and statistics of C9500 OLT systems:

* System Status Monitoring
* Interface Statistics
* Logging setting
* RMON (Remote Monitoring)
* Setting threshold value

The Statistics that C9500 system provide help system administrator to grasp the current status of network operation quickly. If you pay attention to statistical data then you will be able to forecast future operations and prevent possible issues from arising.

## Status Monitoring

The status monitoring provides information about C9500. With show and its sub-commands, it provides status information, which will be displayed on your terminal screen.

Table 153 Status Monitoring Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| show logging | Displays the current snapshot of the log | Privileged |
| show memory usage | Shows the status of the system memory usage | Privileged |
| show cpu usage | Shows the current CPU usage | Privileged |
| show environment [cooling|temperature|status|scu] | Displays status of the system, FAN, and temperature  cooling: FAN information  temperature: shows the temperature  status: shows information of Power, FAN, Temperature  scu: the current SCM voltage Information | Privileged |
| show version | Displays the version of the system | Privileged |

## System Threshold Configuration

You can set the threshold for the values of system module temperature, CPU and memory usage ratio. The threshold will have either upper limit or lower limit. If the value cross the limit it will induce syslog and SNMP trap.

### Temperature Configuration

You can set the upper and lower thresholds of the temperature of the system.

Table 154 Temperature Configuration Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| temperature threshold *HIGHVAL* *LOWVAL* | Sets the threshold value for temperature. If the value cross the limit it will induce syslog and SNMP trap. | Config |
| show environment temperature | Displays current temperature and temperature threshold. In case FAN is available in the system, it also displays the status of FAN. | Privileged |

The example below shows setting a threshold for the temperature of the system:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **temperature threshold 80 20**  Switch(config)# exit  Switch# **show environment temperature**  Temperature : 74.2 (`C)  Threshold : High 80 (`C) Low 20 (`C) |

### CPU Usage Configuration

You can set the threshold for CPU usage ratio. If the value crosses the threshold the system will notify the violation by syslog and SNMP trap.

Table 155 CPU Usage Threshold Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| cpu usage threshold low *<30-100>* high *<40-100>* | * Sets the threshold value for CPU usage ratio. If CPU usage ratio will rise above the threshold or go down below the threshold the system will produce syslog. | Config |
| cpu usage time-period (<300>|<5>|<60>) | Sets the reference value for CPU usage in terms of time. | Config |
| show cpu usage | Shows current CPU usage. | Privileged |

### 

### Memory Usage Configuration

You can set the threshold for memory usage. If the remaining memory is lower than the threshold value the system will notify the violation by syslog and SNMP trap.

Table 156 Memory Usage Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| memory free low-watermark *<10-70>* | Sets the threshold value for the memory size to be kept. If the remaining memory is lower than the threshold or go up above the threshold again, the system will produce syslog. | Config |
| show memory usage | Shows current memory usage. | Privileged |

### Application Memory Usage Display

To show the memory related information which are used by individual applications, use the following command:

Table 157 Memory Display Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| show memory (bfd|bgp|imi|mstp|nsm|ospf|pimd|rip) | Shows memory-related information used by individual applications. | Privileged |

## Port Statistics

The C9500 system provides the statistics for individual ports of the system. To view the statistics, use the following commands.

|  |
| --- |
| **show interface [*ifname*]** |

The C9500 provides information of the port statistics as follows:

* **Received Packet Count (Rx Pkt Count)** – The total number of good packets that have been received by the port.
* **Received Byte Count (Rx Byte Count)** – The total number of bytes that were received by the port, including bad or lost frames. This number includes bytes contained in the Frame Check Sequence (FCS), but excludes bytes in the preamble.
* **Transmit Packet Count (Tx Pkt Count)** – The number of packets that have been successfully transmitted by the port.
* **Transmit Byte Count (Tx Byte Count)** – The total number of data bytes successfully transmitted by the port.
* **Received Broadcast (Rx Bcast)** – The total number of frames received by the port that are addressed to a broadcast address.
* **Received Multicast (Rx Mcast)** – The total number of frames received by the port that are addressed to a multicast address.
* **Transmit Collisions (Tx Coll)** – The total number of collisions seen by the port, regardless of whether a device connected to the port participated in any of the collisions.
* **Received Bad CRC Frames (RX CRC)** – The total number of frames received by the port that were of the correct length, but contained a bad FCS value.
* **Receive Oversize Frames (RX Oversize)** – The total number of good frames received by the ports that were of greater than the supported maximum length of 1,522 bytes.
* **Receive Dropped Frames (Rx Drop)** – The total number of dropped frames due to lack of system resources.

The following shows a display of the port information including statistical data by the show interface command.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show interface GigabitEthernet 7/1**  Giga7/1 is up, line protocol is up (connected)  Hardware is Ethernet, address is 0007.709e.2914 (bia 0007.709e.2914)  index 1111 metric 1 mtu 1500 arp ageing timeout 7200  Full-duplex, A-1000Mb/s, media type is 1000BaseLX  <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>  VRF Binding: Not bound  Bandwidth 1g  inet 3.44.1.230/24 broadcast 3.44.1.255  VRRP Master of: VRRP is not configured on this interface.  Last clearing of "show interface" counters never  60 seconds input rate 88 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec  60 seconds output rate 72 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec  L2/L3 in Switched: ucast 30 pkt - mcast 20,532 pkt  L2/L3 out Switched: ucast 36 pkt - mcast 20,871 pkt  20,565 packets input, 1,782,898 bytes  Received 3 broadcast pkt (20,532 multicast pkt)  0 CRC, 0 oversized, 0 dropped  20,918 packets output, 1,790,946 bytes  0 collisions  0 late collisions, 0 deferred |

Table 158 Commands for Port Statistics Check

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| show port counter [detail] | For the items below, it displays the accumulated statistics of all the interfaces.  I-Kbps/ O-Kbps  InOctets/ OutOctets  InPkts/ OutPkts | Privileged |
| show port statistics  {all | *IFNAME*} | For the items below, it displays the accumulated statistics of the interface by unit of 5 seconds/1 minute/5 minutes.  TX: bits/s, pkts/s  RX: bits/s, pkts/s | Privileged |
| show port statistics avg type  *[IFNAME]* | For the items that are classified per traffic types, it displays the accumulated statistics of the interface by unit of 5 seconds/1 minute/5 minutes.  TX: Unicast/Multicast/Broadcast s  RX: Unicast/Multicast/Broadcast | Privileged |
| show port statistics interface  *[IFNAME]* | For the items below, it displays the statistics of the interfaces.  InOctets/ OutOctets  InUcastPkts/ OutUcastPkts  InMcastPkts/ OutMcastPkts  InBcastPkts/ OutBcastPkts  IfInDiscards  IfInErrors | Privileged |
| show port-mib *IFNAME* | It displays current statistics and the accumulated statistics of the interface in detail. | Privileged |
| show interface counters | For the items below, it displays the accumulated statistics of the interface.  InOctets/ OutOctets  InUcastPkts/ OutUcastPkts  InMcastPkts/ OutMcastPkts  InBcastPkts/ OutBcastPkts | Privileged |
| show interface counters  errors | It displays the accumulated errors of the interface. | Privileged |

The following is the displayed content brought by show interface counter command, which shows the accumulated statistics of all the ports:

|  |
| --- |
| Router#show interface counters  Port InOctets InUcastPkts InMcastPkts InBcastPkts  ---------- --------------- --------------- --------------- ---------------  Te6/1 0 0 0 0  Te6/2 0 0 0 0  Te6/3 0 0 0 0  Te6/4 0 0 0 0  Te6/5 0 0 0 0  Te6/6 0 0 0 0  Te6/7 2,560 0 20 0  Te6/8 2,560 0 20 0  Port OutOctets OutUcastPkts OutMcastPkts OutBcastPkts  ---------- --------------- --------------- --------------- ---------------  Gi7/1 0 0 0 0  Gi7/2 0 0 0 0  Gi7/3 0 0 0 0  Gi7/4 0 0 0 0  Gi7/5 37,466 0 305 0  Gi7/6 37,220 0 303 0  Gi7/7 36,974 0 301 0  Gi7/8 36,605 0 298 0  Router# |

The following is the displayed content brought by show port statisticscommand, which shows the accumulated statistics of a port in the unit of 5 seconds/1 minute/5 minutes:

|  |
| --- |
| Router#show port statistics gi7/5  Last clearing of counters 00:14:24  ===============================================================================  Port TX| RX  bits/s pkts/s| bits/s pkts/s  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  Gi7/5 ---------------------------------------------------------------------  5 sec. 392 0 0 0  1 min. 488 0 0 0  5 min. 488 0 0 0  =============================================================================== |

The statistics of any interface have an average value and accumulated value. By use of the following commands, you can change the interval time to which the system refer, when it calculates the average value. Also, by setting high and low threshold values toward any interface, you can monitor whether it works out fine or not for the set duration of time.

Table 159 Commands for Port Statistics Configuration

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| load-interval *interval* | Sets the interval value - the system updates the average statistics of the interface for the period of the interval. | Interface |
| no load-interval | Returns the interval value to default one. | Interface |
| input-load-monitor *interval*  *low-threshold high-threshold* | It sets High and Low threshold values which will be effective for the period of interval so that you can monitor whether it crosses the threshold. | Interface |
| no input-load-monitor | Clears the monitoring setting. | Interface |
| show port input-load-monitor | Shows the current monitoring setting. | Interface |

You can use the following commands to initialize the accumulated statistic values.

Table 160 Command for Initialization of Port Statistic

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| clear counters | Initializes the accumulated statistic values of all the interfaces. | Privileged |
| clear counters *IFNAME* | Initializes the accumulated statistic values of the specified interface. | Privileged |

.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Notice** | For the statistics which are displayed toward SNMP, you cannot initialize them by using of clear countercommand. |

## RMON (Remote MONitoring)

Using the Remote Monitoring (RMON) capabilities of C9500 allows network administrators to improve system efficiency and reduce the network load.

The following sections explain more about RMON and the features that C9500 supports.

### RMON Overview

RMON is international standard defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) documents RFC 1271 and RFC 1757, which allows remote LAN monitoring.

A typical RMON setup consists of the following two components:

* **RMON probe**
* An intelligent, remotely controlled device or software agent that keeps collecting statistics about a LAN segment or VLAN.
* The probe transfers the information to a management workstation upon request or when a predefined threshold is crossed.
* **RMON Manager**
* Communicates with the RMON probe and collects the statistics from it.
* The workstation does not have to be on the same network as the probe, and can manage the probe by in-band or out-of-band connections.

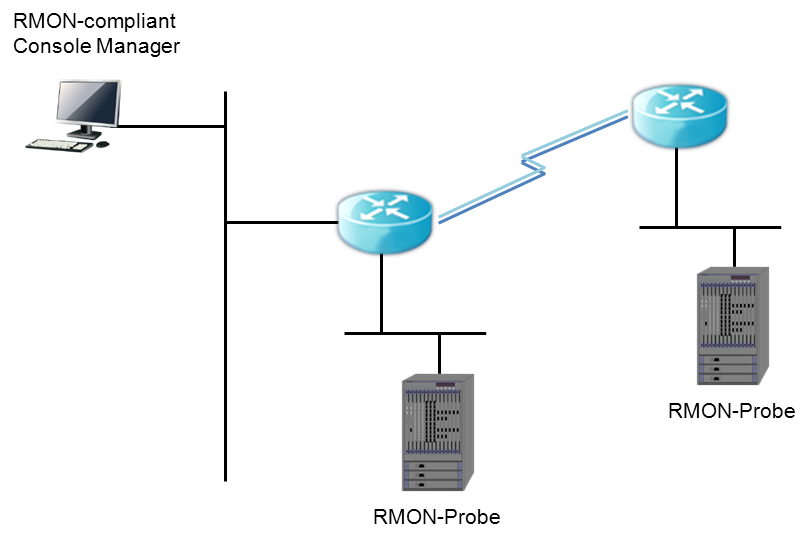


Figure 22 RMON Manager와 RMON Probe

While the existing SNMP MIBs manage only gears with SNMP agent, RMON MIBs can extend the management object to the LAN segment where the device is connected. RMON agent informs the status of the entire traffic of LAN segment, each host connected to each segment, and the traffic status between hosts.

RMON agent must have the entire statistical data, history data, host-related data, host matrix and as well as the alarming function that warns when the thereshold, which is set to predict and remove certain packets for filtering, is reached.

C9500 supports only statistics, history, alarm, and event groups among the nine RMON groups, as defined in Table 161. All the RMON functions are set as disabled by default.

Table 161 RMON Items

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Item | Description |
| Statistics | Provides statistical information of the number of packets/bytes generated in one segment, the broadcast/multicast count, the conflict count, packet count by length, and errors (fragment, CRC Alignment, jabber, insufficient length, excessive length) |
| History | Provides information on the traffic and errors generated during the time span that the operation manager has set.  Sets short-term/long-term time span and the interval is limited to 1-3.600 seconds.  Displays of the usage by time and comparing the data with other segment data. |
| Alarm | Checks a particular value regularly and report to the manager when the value reaches the standard and the agent has its record.  Sets an absolute or relative value as the standard. An alarm occurs only when the value goes over or down the upper limit/the lowest limit in order to prevent continuous alarms. |
| Host | Manages the traffic of each device connected to the segment, and the error count by hosts. |
| N high level hosts | Finds the host that generates the most traffic during a certain period among the hosts found in the above host table.  The manager can get information by setting the data type, the interval, and the number of hosts that he/she wants. |
| Traffic matrix | Collects the information on the traffic and errors generated between two hosts based on data link layer, that is, MAC address.  With this information, you can see who uses a certain host most often.  If a host in other segment users the host the most, you cannot find the actual user because the user uses the host through the router. |
| Filter | Used by the manager to monitor the trend of a particular packet. |
| Packet collection | The manager collects and analyzes the packets generated in the segment. |
| Event | When a certain event occurs, this item saves the log and sends a warning message to the manager. The trap generation and the logging storage are optional. |

### RMON Alarm and Event Group Configuration

The user can set RMON configuration through CLI or SNMP manager.

Table 162 Commands for RMON Alarm and Event Configuration

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| rmon alarm *index* *variable* interval *seconds*  {absolute |delta}  rising-threshold *value* event *num*  falling-threshold *value* event *num*  [owner *string*] | Adds a RMON alarm to RMON alarm table   * *Index*: Alarm index   *Variable*: As the target of Alarm, any SNMP mib instance is specified  Interval: Sampling time period (Unit: second).  Absolute: Indicates the sampled alarm value to be set and monitored as absolute value.  Delta: Indicates the sampled alarm value to be monitored in terms of the difference between current and previous values.  Rising-threshold, falling-threshold *value*: The configured value which is used as the reference while the system generates alarm.  event: Indicates the specified event to be invoked when the sampled alarm value reaches either rising-threshold or falling –threshold.  owner: Registers the owner of the alarm. | Config |
| rmon event *index*  [log]  [trap *community*]  [description *string*]  [owner *string*] | Adds an event to RMON event table  *Index*: Event index.  log: Sets the system to produce log when an Event happens.  trap: Sets the system to transfer trap along with community when an Event happens.  owner: Registers the owner of the Event.  description*:* Registers the description about the Event. | Config |
| no rmon alarm *alarm-index* | Clears the setting of RMON alarm. | Config |
| no rmon event *event-index* | Clears the setting of RMON event. | Config |
| show rmon alarms | Prints out RMON alarm information. | Privileged |
| show rmon events | Prints out RMON event information. | Privileged |

The following example demonstrates how to set the rmon alarm with respect to GigabitEthernet 7/2. It shows the system will do sampling in the Octets value of GigabitEthernet 7/2 every 30 seconds and generate event whenever the value goes beyond the rising-threshold or under falling-threshold. When you set Rmon alarm you must set event or stats first.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **rmon event 1 log trap rmon\_test description RisingAlarm**  Switch(config)# **rmon event 2 log trap rmon\_test description FallingAlarm**  Switch(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 7/2**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/2)# **rmon collection stats 1**  Switch(config)# **rmon alarm 1 etherStatsEntry.4.1158 interval 30 absolute rising-threshold 2000000 event 1 falling-threshold 1000000 event 2**  Switch(config)# **exit**  Switch# **show rmon alarm**  Alarm 1 is active, owned by RMON\_SNMP  Monitors etherStatsOctets.1158 every 30 second(s)  Taking Absolute samples, last value was 00  Rising threshold is 2000000, assigned to event 1  Falling threshold is 1000000, assigned to event 2  On startup enable rising or falling alarm alarmRisingThreshold : 15  alarmFallingThreshold : 0  alarmRisingEventIndex : 1  alarmFallingEventIndex : 1  alarmOwner : hong  Switch# **show rmon event**  event Index = 1  Description RisingAlarm  Event type Log & Trap  Event community name rmon\_test  Last Time Sent = 5774:38:20  Owner RMON\_SNMP  event Index = 2  Description FallingAlarm  Event type Log & Trap  Event community name rmon\_test  Last Time Sent = 00:00:00  Owner RMON\_SNMP  **Switch# show rmon statistics**  Collection 1 on Giga7/2 is active, and owned by RMON\_SNMP,  Monitors ifEntry.1.1158 which has  Received 014354459 octets, 0195285 packets,  03 broadcast and 021164 multicast packets,  00 undersized and 00 oversized packets,  00 fragments and 00 jabbers,  00 CRC alignment errors and 00 collisions.  # of dropped packet events (due to lack of resources): 00  # of packets received of length (in octets):  64: 01585, 65-127: 0440336, 128-255: 0308  256-511: 04, 512-1023: 00, 1024-1518: 00 |

Table 163 Commands for RMON History Setting and Statistics

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| rmon collection stats *index*  [owner *string*] | Collects the statistics of physical interface.   * *Index*: etherStats index | Interface |
| rmon collection history *index* [buckets *number*] [interval *seconds*]  [owner *string*] | Collects the history of physical interface.  *Index*: History index,  buckets: The number of history,  Interval: Collection period (Unit: second)  owner:Registers the owner of the History. | Interface |
| no rmon collection stats  *index* | Clears the setting so as not to collect the statistics of physical interface. | Interface |
| no rmon collection history *index* | Clears the setting so as not to collect the history of physical interface. | Interface |
| show rmon history | Prints out RMON history information. | Privileged |
| show rmon statistics | Prints out RMON statistics information. | Privileged |
| rmon clear counters | Initializes the statistics of the interface. | Interface |

The following example shows how to set RMON with using maximum 30 numbers bucket per 10 seconds to gi 7/2.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 7/2**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/2)# **rmon collection stats 1**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/2)# **rmon collection history 1 buckets 30 interval 10**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/2)# exit  Switch(config)#exit  Switch# **show rmon history**  Entry 1 is active, and owned by RMON\_SNMP  Monitors ifIndex 1158 every 10 second(s)  Requested # of time intervals, ie buckets, is 30,  Sample # 1 began measuring Received 14953616 octets, 203700 packets,  3 broadcast and 21362 multicast packets,  0 undersized and 0 oversized packets,  0 fragments and 0 jabbers,  0 CRC alignment errors and 0 collisions.  # of dropped packet events is 0  Sample # 2 began measuring Received 14956451 octets, 203740 packets,  3 broadcast and 21363 multicast packets,  0 undersized and 0 oversized packets,  0 fragments and 0 jabbers,  0 CRC alignment errors and 0 collisions.  # of dropped packet events is 0  Sample # 3 began measuring Received 14959509 octets, 203783 packets,  3 broadcast and 21364 multicast packets,  0 undersized and 0 oversized packets,  0 fragments and 0 jabbers,  0 CRC alignment errors and 0 collisions.  # of dropped packet events is 0 |

## Logging

C9500 log shows all information on configuration and alarms. The system message logging software saves log messages in the switch memory and sends messages to other devices. The system message logging function supports the following:

* Enables the user to select the logging type to collect
* Enables the user to select the device to which he/she sends the collected logging

C9500 saves and sends debug-level logs in the internal buffer and the system console by default. The user can control system messages by using CLI. The switch saves up to 500 log messages in the system memory. The system administrator can monitor the system messages from local through console or from remote through Telnet or syslog server log.

The C9500 has 0-7 severity levels as shown in the following table:

Table 164 C9500 Log Level

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Severity Level | Description |
| Emergencies (0) | System is not available. |
| Alerts (1) | An Immediate action is required. |
| Critical (2) | Critical Status |
| Errors (3) | Error Message |
| Warnings (4) | Warning Message |
| Notifications (5) | Normal status but important information |
| Informational (6) | Informational message given to user |
| Debugging (7) | Debugging message |

### System Log Message

The system log messages of C9500 contains the following information.

* **Timestamp**
* The timestamp records the month, day and year of the event, along with the time (hours, minutes, and seconds) in the form HH:MM:SS MM/DD/YYYY.
* **Severity level**
* Indicates the log message level defined in the < > as in Table 164.
* Integer between 1 and 7
* **Log description**
* Text string including detailed information on event

The following is the log message for system booting:

|  |
| --- |
| May 6 11:53:48 [5] %REMOTE-CONNECT: login from console as lns  May 6 11:54:01 [5] IFM-NOTICE: Rate limit ra creation  May 7 02:10:24 [5] %REMOTE-CONNECT: login from console as lns  May 7 02:10:40 [5] IFM-NOTICE: Flow xx classified  May 7 02:10:48 [5] IFM-NOTICE: Flow xx match rate 10  May 7 05:17:56 [5] %REMOTE-CONNECT: login from console as lns  May 7 05:23:10 [5] IFM-NOTICE: Service pa add interface fa1 |

### 

### Default Logging Value

Table 165 System Log Default value

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Configuration Parameter | Default |
| Display logging to console | disabled |
| Display logging to Telnet session | disabled |
| Logging buffer size | 1MB |
| Display Time-Stamp | enabled |
| Logging Server | disabled |
| Syslog server IP address | None configured |
| Server facility | LOCAL7 |
| Server severity | Warnings (4) |
| Console Severity | Debuggings (7) |
| Telnet Severity | info (6) |

Table 166 Commands for System Message Logging Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| logging console {*<0-7> |alerts|critical|debugging|emergencies|errors|*  informations|notifications|warnings} | Sets to print out the logging information toward console. |
| logging facility {*auth|cron|daemon|kernel|local0|*  *local1|local2local3|local4|local5|*  local6|local7|lpr|mail|news|syslog|  user|uucp} | Sets the Facility parameter to which syslog messages are to be sent. |
| logging *A.B.C.D* | Sets to send syslog messages toward external syslog server. |
| logging monitor  *|alerts|critical|debugging|emergencies|errors|*  informations|notifications|warnings} | Sets to print out the logging information toward current session. |
| logging source-ip *A.B.C.D* | Sets the source ip of syslog packet. |
| logging trap  *|alerts|critical|debugging|emergencies|errors|*  informations|notifications|warnings} | Sets the logging level of syslog server. |
| show logging | Prints out logging buffer and its settings. |

### Examples of Logging Configuration

While accessing the console, if you want to have a log message with the log level notice (5) or below printed toward console, follow the example shown below. When you want to stop printing the log message toward console, use the no logging console command.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **logging console notifications**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch#  Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **no** **logging console**  Switch(config)# |

While accessing via Telnet if you want to have the log message with log level warn (4) or below printed toward Telnet session, follow the example below. When you want to stop printing the log message toward Telnet session, use the logging session disable command.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#  Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **logging monitor warnings**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch#  Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **no logging session**  Switch(config)# |

If you want to have the log message with Log level err (5) or below printed toward Log server 100.10.1.1, follow the example below. When you want to stop printing the toward log server, use the no logging A.B.C.D command to log message.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **logging 100.10.1.1**  Switch(config)# **logging trap errors**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch#  Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **no logging 100.10.1.1**  Switch(config)# |

## sFlow

The C9500 supports sFlow in order to monitor the Traffic flow and collect statistics of individual interface. The objects scope of interface that sFlow takes care confine to physical port in C9500. sFlow consists of sFlow agent and sFlow collector; sFlow agent collects the status and statistics information of its switch or router while sFlow collector sorts out the collected information and reports to administrator. The following figure shows the basic operation of sFlow:

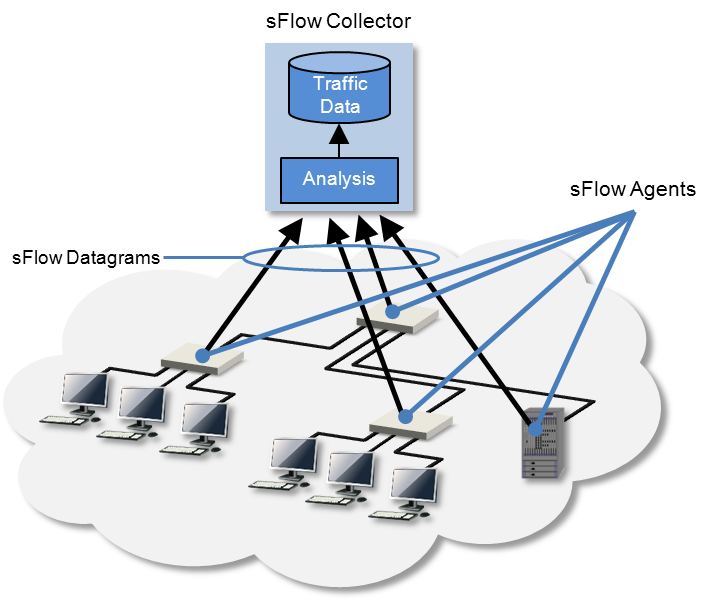


Figure 23 Concept of sFlow (sFlow agent and collector)

### sFlow agent

This section introduces the function and commands for an sFlow agent. There are commands for setting the IP address of the agent and collector, flow sampling rate, counter(statistics) polling interval, sFlow forward, and service sFlow. The Agent IP is to be inserted into the sampling packet when sFlow agent sends out the sampling packet to sFlow collector, and sFlow collector must specify the Agent IP which is inserted to the sampling packet. sFlow is classified into two categories; one is Flow sampling which is packet based and the other is counter(statistics) sampling which is time based. The flow sampling rate determines the number of packets which come through the interface before the system undertakes sampling, whereas counter polling interval determines the period in terms of seconds as to when the system does sampling the Interface statistics. By use of the sFlow forward command, you can configure the physical interface (ex, gi7) for sampling upto maximum 4 interfaces. With the service sFlow command you can initiate the sFlow service.

Table 167 sFlow Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| **show sFlow** | Shows the commands that you can use to set sFlow. | Privileged |
| **service sFlow** | Makes the system start flow sampling and statistics sampling for the enabled interface.  When you want to clear the command, use ‘no’ preposition. | Config |
| **sFlow forwarding** | Sets to do sampling with respect to the packets which come through the interface.  When you want to clear the command, use ‘no’ preposition. | Interface |
| **sFlow sample** *<10-65530>* | Sets the sampling rate in terms of the number of packets which come through the interface.  When you use ‘no’ preposition with this command, it sets to the default value. | Interface  Config |
| **sFlow polling-interval** *<20-120>* | Sets the sampling rate in terms of seconds. | Config |
| **sFlow agent** *A.B.C.D* | Sets the IP address of sFlow agent. When you use ‘no’ preposition with this command, it sets to Default value. | Config |
| **sFlow destination** *A.B.C.D* | Sets the IP address of sFlow collector. When you use ‘no’ preposition with this command, it sets to Default value. | Config |

### sFlow collector

This section describes sFlow collector. It shows statistics values to administrator after analyzing sampling packet. It consists of sflowtool, sFlowTrend, and Inmon Traffic Server. sFlowTool and sFlowTrend are open version. You can download from inmon corporation hompage <http://www.inmon.com/index.htm>. The following describes sfllowtool and sFlowTrend setting.

#### sflowtool Configuration

1. You can show sFlow sampling packet in port 6343.with the following command:

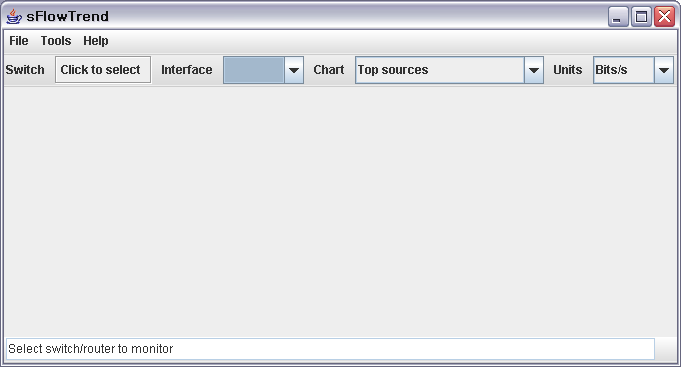
|  |
| --- |
| [lns:/home/lns] **sflowtool -p 6343**  startDatagram =================================  datagramSourceIP 192.168.0.212  datagramSize 144  unixSecondsUTC 1136381882  datagramVersion 5  agentSubId 0  agent 192.168.0.212  packetSequenceNo 9512  sysUpTime 190157000  samplesInPacket 1  startSample ----------------------  sampleType\_tag 0:2  sampleType COUNTERSSAMPLE  . . . . . .  endSample ----------------------  endDatagram ================================= |

1. You can show sFlow sampling packet by line unit with the following command:

|  |
| --- |
| [lns:/home/lns] sflowtool -l  CNTR,10.0.0.254,17,6,100000000,0,2147483648,175283006,136405187,2578019,297011,0,3,0,0,0,0,0  ,0,0,1  FLOW,10.0.0.254,0,0,00902773db08,001083265e00,0x0800,0,0,10.0.0.1,10.0.0.254,17,0x00,64,3569  0,161,0x00,143,125,80 |

#### sFlowTrend Configuration

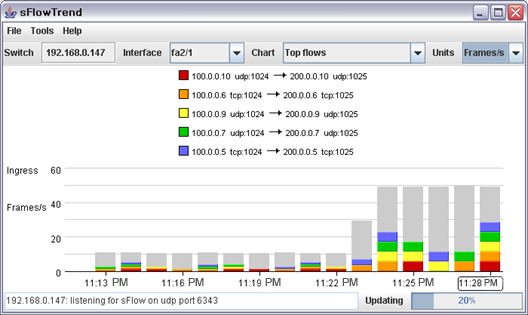
1. After executing sFlowTrend program, click the “Click to select” button at upper-left corner.



1. Type in the IP Address of sFlow Agent at the ‘Select switch/router to monitor’ dialog box.



1. Once sFlowTrend has acquired sampling information, select the relevant option within the scroll down menu of Interface, Chart (Utilization, Counters, Top flows . . .), and Units.



sFlow Network Configuariton

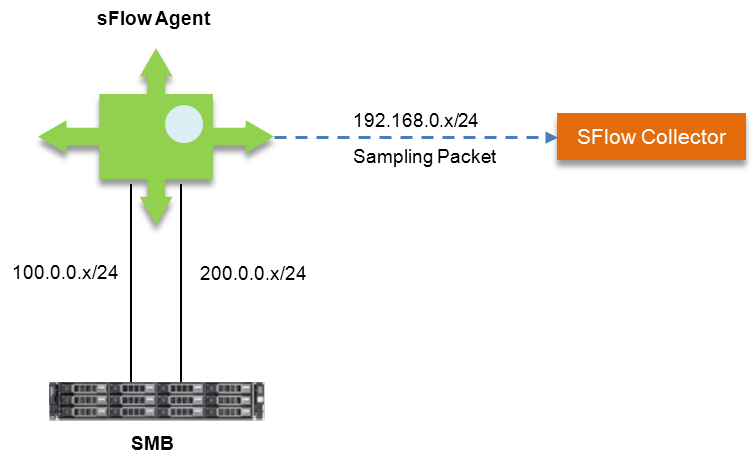


Figure 24 sFlow Network Configuration

#### sFlow sampling test

sFlow sampling has traffic flow sampling and interface staticstics sampling. You can make sure sampling result via sFlow collector in the above figure.

1. Make traffic per various flows with using SMB and send to Sflow Agent.
2. To send this traffic to SFlow collector, set IP Address of SFlow Collector and SFlow Agent. Enable SFlow Service.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch(config)# **interface gi1**  Switch(config-if-Giga5/1)# **sflow forwarding**  Switch(config-if-Giga5/1)# **exit**  Switch(config)# **sflow agent 192.168.0.147**  Switch(config)# **sflow destination 192.168.0.200**  Switch(config)# **service sflow** |

1. To use sFlow Collector, make sure there is traffic flow sampling and interface statistics sampling.

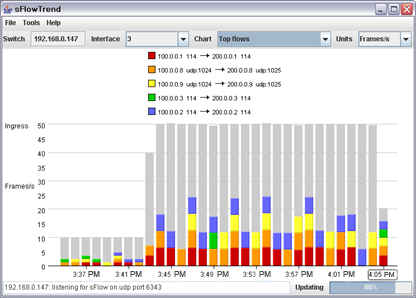


Figure 25 Traffic flow sampling

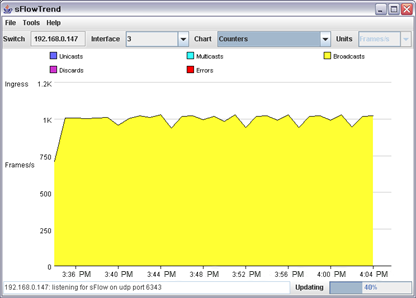


Figure 26 Interface statistics sampling

# STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) & SLD (Self-loop Detection)

This chapter introduces how to configure Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) and Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) on the switch. It also explains frame transmission from the bridge.

This chapter includes the following sections:

* Understanding Spanning-Tree Features
* Understanding RSTP
* Understanding MSTP
* Configuring Spanning-Tree Features
* Displaying the Spanning-Tree Status
* Configuring Bridge Mac Forwarding

## Understanding Spanning-Tree Features

This chapter explains the following STP features:

* STP Overview
* Supported Spanning-Tree Instances
* Bridge Protocol Data Units
* Election of the Root Switch
* Bridge ID, Switch Priority, and Extended System ID
* Spanning-Tree Timers
* Creating the Spanning-Tree Topology
* Spanning-Tree Interface State

### STP Overview

STP is a Layer 2 link management protocol which prevents self-loops and provides duplicated paths in a network. To let a Layer 2 Ethernet network operate normally, only one active path should be established between two random terminals. As a spanning-tree operation is transparent to end stations, it is impossible to determine whether end stations are connected to a single LAN or to a switched LAN composed of several segments. To configure a fault-free network, there should be no self-loops between nodes of the network. The spanning-tree algorithm calculates an optimized loop-free path over the switched Layer 2 network. The switch periodically sends and receives spanning-tree frames called bridge protocol data units (BPDUs). It does not forward these frames but processes them to create a loop-free path.

A loop is formed where there are several active paths between two end stations. If a loop exists in a network, the affected end stations will receive replicated frames. In such a case, MAC address of a certain end station will be registered for several Layer 2 interfaces in the switch. This situation makes the network unstable. Spanning tree defines loop-free path from root switch to every switch in a Layer 2 network. Spanning tree makes replicated data paths enter standby (blocked) status. If faults are detected in a network containing the replicated path, the spanning-tree algorithm recalculates the spanning-tree topology to enable the standby path.

Where two interfaces of a switch compose a part of a loop, the spanning-tree port priority and path cost settings determine the forwarding and blocking states of these interfaces.

### Bridge Protocol Data Units

The following shows elements provide stable active spanning-tree topology of a switched network:

* Unique bridgeID related to each VLAN (switch priority and MAC address)
* Spanning-tree path cost to the Root switch
* Port identifier assigned to each Layer 2 interface (port priority and port number)

When powered on, the switch acts as a root switch. Each switch sends the configuration BPDUs to all of its own ports. Switches exchange BPDUs each other to calculate a spanning-tree topology. Each configuration BPDU contains the following information:

* BridgeID of the Root switch
* Spanning-tree path cost to the Root
* Switch BridgeID transmitting BPDU
* Message age
* Switch interface identifier transmitting BPDU
* hello, forward-delay, max-age protocol timer value

When the switch receives a BPDU carrying information superior to that of the current port (lower BridgeID, lower path cost, etc.), it stores the information in the port that has received the BPDU. If the port is a root port, the switch updates the message and forwards it to the designated LAN.

The switch drops a BPDU containing information inferior to that of the current port. When the switch receives an inferior message from the designated LAN, it transfers the BPDU updated with the information stored in the port to LAN. In this way, inferior information is dropped and superior information is forwarded to the network.

The following shows the result from BPDU exchange:

* A switch is chosen as root switch.
* Root port of each switch, except root switch, is chosen. This port provides the best path (the lowest cost) for the switch to transmit packets to the root switch.
* Designated switch for each LAN should be decided. The designated switch transmits the packet by the lowest path in which provides in the lowest cost.
* Designated switch, port or the designated switch connected to LAN, for each LAN is decided and provides the lowest path cost when LAN transmits packet to the root switch.
* Root ports and designated ports are configured in forwarding state.
* All interfaces not in the spanning-tree are blocked.

### Election of Root Switch

All switches with spanning-tree gather information of other switches as exchanging BPDU, and the following shows results from message exchange:

* Only root switch first-out for each spanning-tree instance
* Designated switch first-out for all switched LAN segmentation
* Remove switched network loop by the block of L2 interface connected with redundant link

A switch with the highest priority (with the smallest value) in each VLAN is determined as the root switch. In the case that all switches are set to the default priority (32768), the switch with the smallest MAC address in the VLAN will be a root switch. Switch priority is carried by the most significant bit of BridgeID.

You can change the possibility of a switch to be a root switch by changing its switch priority. A larger switch priority has a lower probability to be a root switch.

Root switch is at the logical center of a spanning-tree topology in a switched network. Those paths unnecessary for reaching the root switch in a switched network go into blocking state in the spanning-tree.

A BPDU contains the information such as source switch and port, MAC address, switch priority, port priority and path cost. Spanning tree determines root switch, root port and designated port from the information.

### Bridge ID, Switch Priority, and Extended System ID

In accordance with the IEEE 802.1D standard, each switch is assigned a unique bridge identifier (BridgeID) to select a root switch. Since each VLAN is logically regarded as an individual bridge, a unique BridgeID is assigned for each VLAN. A switch carries BridgeID of 8 bytes; the most significant 2 bytes are used for switch priority and the rest 6 bytes indicate MAC addresses of the switch. C9500 supports 802.1T spanning-tree extensions. As seen in the table, the two bytes used for switch priority are reallocated to 4-bit priority and 12-bit extended system ID identical to the VLAN ID.

Table 168 Switch Priority Value and Extended System ID

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Switch Priority Value** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| **Bit16** | | | **Bit15** | | | | **Bit14** | | | | **Bit13** | | | |
| 32768 | | | 16384 | | | | 8192 | | | | 4096 | | | |
| **Extended System ID(Set Equal to the VLAN ID)** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| **Bit12** | **Bit11** | **Bit10** | | **Bit9** | **Bit8** | **Bit7** | | **Bit6** | **Bit5** | **Bit4** | | **Bit3** | **Bit2** | **Bit1** |
| 2048 | 1024 | 512 | | 256 | 128 | 64 | | 32 | 16 | 8 | | 4 | 2 | 1 |

Spanning tree creates BridgeID with extended system ID, switch priority and MAC address.

### Spanning-Tree Timers

The following shows Spanning-tree timers that affect the spanning tree performance:

Table 169 Spanning-Tree Timers

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Variable** | **Description** |
| Hello timer | Decides the interval that the switch transmits Hello message to other switches |
| Forward-delay timer | Decides how long the interface is in listening and learning state before forwarding |
| Maximum-age timer | Decides the amount of time the switch stores received protocol information |

### Creating the Spanning-Tree Topology

Assuming that the switch priority of all switches in the figure is default (32768) and Switch A carries the lowest MAC address, Switch A becomes a root switch. However, Switch A is not an ideal root switch on account of the number of forwarding interfaces or link-type. It is possible to recalculate the spanning-tree topology to let an ideal switch elected as a root switch by increasing its switch priority (using a smaller value).

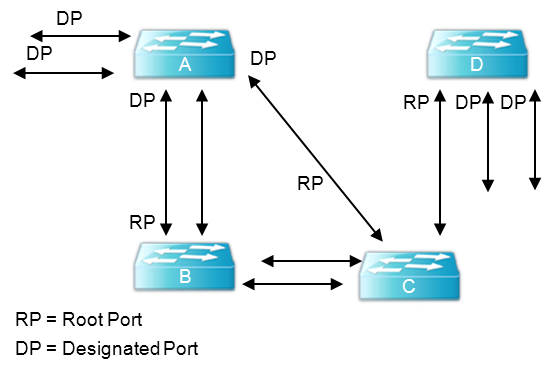


Figure 27 Spanning-Tree Topology

When a spanning-tree topology is calculated based on the default settings, the path between a source terminal and a destination terminal would not be an ideal one. For instance, a high-speed link connected to an interface with a port number higher than that of the root port may result in changing the root port of the switch. The goal is to elect the fastest link as a root port.

For example, assume that a port of Switch B is a gigabit Ethernet link and another port (10/100 link) of Switch B is currently a root port. It is more efficient to transfer network traffic through the gigabit ethernet link. It is possible to elect the gigabit ethernet interface as a new root port by changing the port priority of the gigabit ethernet interface to a priority (lower value) higher than the root port.

### Spanning-Tree Interface States

Propagation delay occurs when protocol information is transferred through a switched LAN, resulting in changes in switched LAN configuration in a different place at a different time. A transient data loop may be formed if a Layer 2 interface not participating in the spanning-tree immediately goes into forwarding state. Therefore, prior to forwarding the frames, the switch should wait for new configuration information transferred through the switched LAN.

The following shows the states of each Layer 2 interface of the switch enabling spanning tree:

* Blocking – The interface does not forward any frames.
* Listening – The state succeeding the blocking state when the interface decides to forward frames.
* Learning – The interface is ready to forward frames. MAC learning is carried out in this state.
* Forwarding – The interface forwards frames.
* Disabled – The interface does not participate in the spanning tree because the port is shutdown state, or no link is available for the port, or there is no spanning-tree instance under execution.

An interface can change its state as follows:

* From initial state to blocking state
* From blocking state to listening or disabled state
* From listening state to learning or disabled state
* From learning state to forwarding or disabled state
* From forwarding state to disabled state

The figure below shows state transition of an interface.

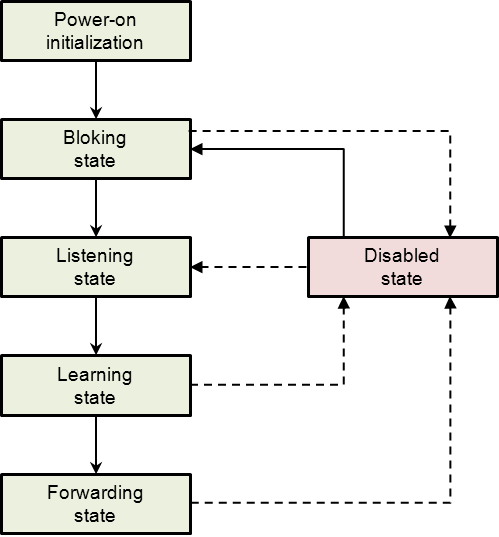


Figure 28 Spanning-Tree Interface States

When STP is enabled, all interfaces of the switch are in blocking state and then go into listening and learning state for a while. In a stabilized spanning tree, each interface is in forwarding state or blocking state. If the spanning-tree algorithm decides to set a Layer 2 interface to forwarding state, the following process occurs:

1. Receiving the protocol information to set the interface to forwarding state, the interface goes into listening state.
2. Upon forward-delay time out, the spanning tree lets the interface go into learning state and sets the forward-delay timer again.
3. In learning state, the interface blocks forwarding while learning MAC address of the end station.
4. When the forward-delay timer expires, the spanning tree lets the interface enter forwarding state in which both learning and forwarding are permitted.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Item | **Description** |
| Blocking State | A Layer 2 interface in blocking state does not forward frames. The switch transfers BPDUs to each interface after initialization. The switch acts as a root switch until it exchanges BPDUs with other switches. One switch of the network is elected as root switch through BPDU exchange. If only one switch is included in the network, BPDU exchange between switches does not occur and the interface goes into listening state after forward-delay timer out. The interface is always set to blocking state after switch initialization.  An interface acts as following in blocking state:  Drops the frames received through the port  Drops the frames switched from other interfaces  Does not perform address learning  Receives BPDUs |
| Listening State | Listening state comes after the blocking state. If an interface decides to forward the frames, it goes into listening state.  An interface acts as following in listening state:  Drops the frames received through the port  Drops the frames switched from other interfaces  Does not perform address learning  Receives BPDUs |
| Learning State | In learning state, a Layer 2 interface is ready to forward frames. The interface goes from listening state to learning state.  In learning state, an interface acts as follows:  Drops the frames received through the port  Drops the frames switched from other interfaces  Performs address learning  Receives BPDUs |
| Forwarding State | In forwarding state, a Layer 2 interface forwards frames. The interface goes from learning state to forwarding state.  In forwarding state, an interface acts as follows:  Forwards the frames received through the port  Forwards the frames switched from other interfaces  Performs address learning  Receives BPDUs |
| Disable State | In disabled state, a Layer 2 interface does not participate in frame forwarding or spanning tree.  A disabled interface acts as follows:  Drops the frames received through the port  Drops the frames switched from other interfaces  Does not perform address learning  Does not receive BPDUs |

## Understanding RSTP

RSTP supports rapid convergence of spanning tree for point-to-point connection, which takes less than 1 second (by contrast, 802.1D spanning tree takes 50 seconds maximum by default). This feature is efficient for a network which transmits traffic sensitive to delay such as voice and image.

This section explains the following operations of RSTP:

* RSTP Overview
* Port Roles and the Active Topology
* Rapid Convergence
* Bridge Protocol Data Unit Format and Processing

### RSTP Overview

The operation of RSTP provides rapid recovery (in less than 1 second) of connectivity in the case of failure of a switch, switch port, or a LAN. A new root port can transit rapidly to the forwarding port state, and the use of explicit acknowledgements between the switches allows the designated ports to transit rapidly to the forwarding port state.

### Port Roles and the Active Topology

RSTP provides fast recovery of spanning tree by assigning port roles to determine an active topology. Like STP, RSTP selects a switch with the highest switch priority (the smallest priority value) as the root switch.

RSTP assigns one of following port roles to each port:

* Root port – It provides the best path (the lowest cost) when the switch forwards packet to the root switch.
* Designated port – Designated port – It connects to the designated switch and provides the lowest cost when LAN forwards packet to the root switch. The designated switch port connected to LAN is called the designated port.
* Alternate port – It provides an alternative path to the root switch by current root port.
* Backup port – It act as a backup port for the path to the leaves of the spanning tree. Backup port exists when two ports are connected together in a loopback by a point-to-point link or if there are two or more connection to the designated VLAN.
* Disabled port – It has no role for spanning tree operation.

A port with the root or designated port role is included in the active topology. A port with alternate or backup port role is excluded from the active topology.

RSTP guarantees that root port and designated port transit to forwarding state when whole network has the consistent port role. But all alternate and backup ports are always in a discarding state (equivalent to blocking state). The following table compares 802.1D and RSTP port state:

Table 170 Port State Comparison

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Operational Status** | **STP Port State** | **RSTP Port State** | **Is Pot Included in the Active Topology?** |
| Enabled | Blocking | Discarding | No |
| Enabled | Listening | Discarding | No |
| Enabled | Learning | Learning | Yes |
| Enabled | Forwarding | Forwarding | Yes |
| Disabled | Disabled | Discarding | No |

For consistency with STP implementation, this document uses blocking state instead of discarding state. The designated port is initiated in listening state.

### Rapid Convergence

RSTP provides rapid convergence for the failure of switch, port, or LAN. It also provides rapid recovery for edge port, new root port, and ports linked by point-to-point.

* **Edge ports** – If a port is configured as an edge port in RSTP switch by using the spanning-tree admin-edge-port command, edge port immediately transits to forwarding state. Edge port should set in the port connected to one end station.
* **Root ports** – If the RSTP selects a new root port, the old root port is blocked and new root port is to be forwarding state.
* **Point-to-point links** – When a port is connected to another port through point-to-point link, the local port becomes a designated port and negotiates fast transition to remove loops by exchanging proposal-agreement with other ports.

In the figure below, Switch A is connected to Switch B through point-to-point link and all ports are in blocking state. Assume that the priority value of Switch A is smaller than that of Switch B. Switch A transmits a proposal message (BPDU with proposal flag enabled) to Switch B and proposes itself as a designated switch.

Receiving the proposal message, Switch B selects the port that has received the proposal message as a new root port, sets all non-edge ports to blocking state, and sends an agreement message (BPDU with agreement flag enabled) through the new root port.

Receiving the agreement message of Switch B, Switch A changes the designated port to forwarding state. No loop is formed in the network because Switch B has blocked all nonedge ports and Switch A is connected to Switch B through point-to-point link.

A similar negotiation message is exchanged when Switch C is connected to Switch B.

Switch C selects a port connected to Switch B as a root port, and the two ports of the two switches transit to forwarding state. In the process of negotiation, more than one switch participates in the active topology. In the network recovery, such a proposal-agreement negotiation proceeds toward leaves of the spanning tree.

A switch determines link-type with the duplex port mode: a full-duplex port is regarded as a point-to-point link and a half-duplex port is regarded as a shared link. You can change the default settings determined by duplex mode using the interface configuration command and the spanning-tree link-type command.



Figure 29 Proposal and Agreement Handshaking for Rapid Convergence

### Bridge Protocol Data Unit Format and Processing

RSTP BPDU format is the same as IEEE 802.1D BPDU format except the protocol version field value is set to 2. The new 1 byte version 1 length field is set to 0, which does not include version 1 protocol information. The following table shows the RSTP flag field:

Table 171 RSTP BPDU Flags

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Bit** | **Function** |
| 0 | Topology change (TC) |
| 1 | Proposal |
| 2-3:  00  01  10  11 | Port role:  Unknown  Alternate port  Root port  Designated port |
| 4 | Learning |
| 5 | Forwarding |
| 6 | Agreement |
| 7 | Topology change acknowledgement (TCA) |

The switch proposing itself as the designated switch sets the proposal flag of RSTP BPDU and transmits it. The port role of the message is always set as the designated port.

The switch agreeing the proposal from other switches sets the agreement flag of RSTP BPDU and transmits it. The port role of the message is always set as the root port.

RSTP does not use independent topology change notification (TCN) BPDU. To notice topology change, use topology change (TC) flag of RSTP BPDU flag. But generate and process TCN BPDU to interwork with 802.1D switch.

Learning and forwarding flag are set according to transmitting port state.

## Understanding MSTP

MSTP (Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol) is defined in IEEE 802.1s and binds multiple VLAN with one group. Then it make spanning tree work. As one spanning tree named instance in MSTP runs per VLAN group, the system need not to calculate a lot of spanning tree. The sytem thus has reduced load. For example, If you use PVST in network that uses 2000 numbers VLAN, the systems must calculate 2000 numbers spanning tree. But, If you divide 2000 numbers VLAN with 2 numbers group with using MSTP, the only 2 spanning trees are used. Forthermore if MSTP runs, BPDU transmmition quantity also reduses prograssively. By using MSTP, the reason why the system can reduce spanning tree number is that it needs spanning tree only as many as path number that can do load balancing.

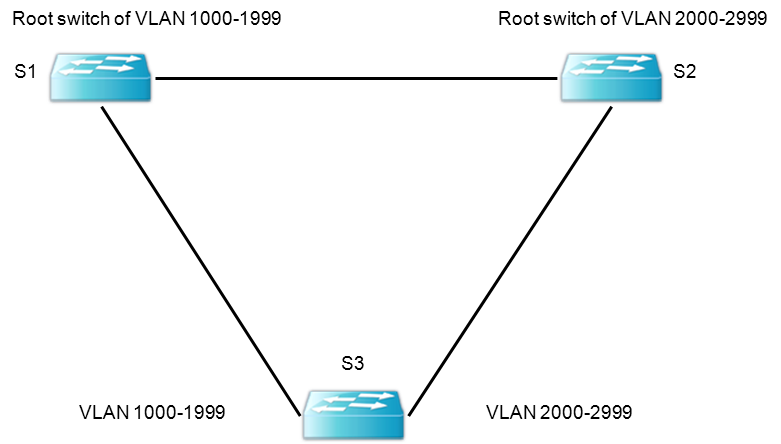


Figure 30 load balance over VLANs

Even if the VLANs used from switch S3 is 2000 numbers from 1000 to 2999, if two spanning trees work, the system can get load balancing to S1, S2.

### MST Region

The group of switchs having the same MST setting value is called one MST region. It defines the switchs that have the same MST setting values - MST name, MST revision and VLAN list value of instance as the same MST region.

### IST, CST and CIST

MSTP uses two kinds of spanning tree. IST (Internal Spanning Tree) runs in one MST region. You can run 63 number spanning trees in the same MST region. You can use the number from 0 to 63 on each spanning tree instance and instance 0 is called as IST. MST sends or receives BPDU only IST. Thus, the other spanning tree information of instance is included in BPDU of IST and the BPDU of numbers that the switch covers reduce more. CIST is a group of IST and CST. In IEEE 802.1Q, even if multi VLANs exist, the spanning tree runs only one. We define this spanning tree as CST (common Spanning Tree). The following figure shows the relation of IST, CST, and CIST:

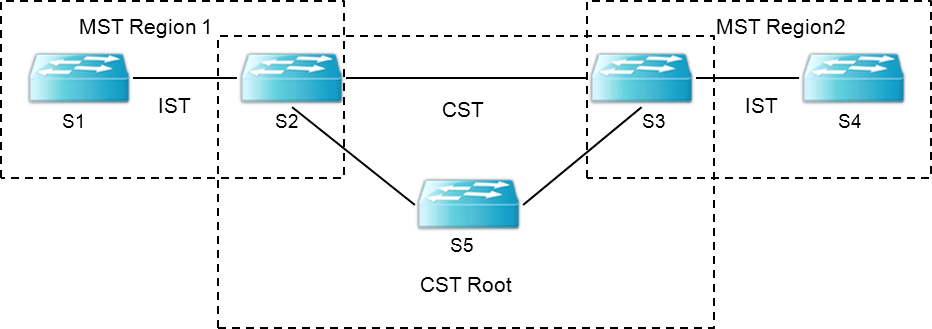


Figure 31 CST, IST, CIST

In the case that MST region differs, IST also runs separately. As MST region of S1 and S2 differs with region of S3, S4, IST running in each MST region runs separately. We define the switch having the least values about the path value to the CST root switch, bridge ID, port ID as IST mster. If S5 is CST root switch, S2 and S3 run as IST master switch within each MST region. If CST root switch is outside of MST resion, IST master always exist on border of CST and MST. In the case that the switch network is configured with one MST region, the same switch run as CST root and IST mater. CST run not only each different MST region but also between the switchs running with 802.1D or bwtween MST and 802.1D. From view of CST, it considers a total MST region as one switch. Thus, CST knows the previous network as knowing, as in the following figure:

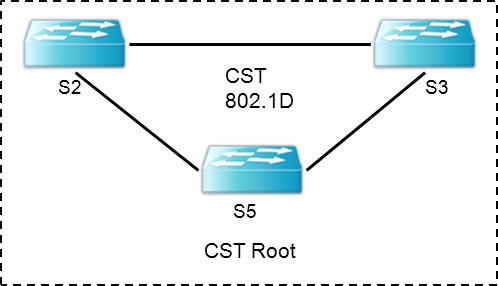


Figure 32 The network perceived at CST

## Configuring Spanning-Tree Features

This section describes how to configure spanning-tree features. The way of spanning-tree is different according to mode. It is set the same way in the case of RSTP and STP. In the case of MSTP, it has another way.

### Default STP Configuration

The following table shows the default setting of STP.

Table 172 Default STP Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Feature** | **Default Setting** |
| Enable state | Disabled. |
| Spanning-tree mode | IEEE 802.1w STP |
| System priority | 32768. |
| Spanning-tree VLAN port priority (configurable on a per-VLAN basis) | 128. |
| Spanning-tree VLAN port cost (configurable on a per-VLAN basis) | 10000 Mbps: 2000  1000 Mbps: 20000.  100 Mbps: 200000  10 Mbps: 2000000. |
| Hello time | 2 sec. |
| Forward-delay time | 15 sec. |
| Maximum-aging time | 20 sec. |

### STP Configuration Guidelines

The system does not provide PVST. Thus, one spanning-tree runs in one Bridge and the VLAN included in the bridge does not affect anything. You can run spannin-tree per Bridge and create a Bridge with up to 256 numbers. A VLAN can belong to only one Bridge. In the case of trunk VLAN, it can belong to only the default Bridge. When you set spanning-tree on Trunk VLAN, you must set one spanning-tree to the total VLAN.

### Enabling STP

At first, STP does not work in the system. If the possibility that the loop exists is in the network, enable STP. When you enable STP, RSTP works.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Caution** | If STP is not active and a network loop has been developed, it could degrade the network performance severly because of excessive traffic and unlimited packet duplication. |

To enable STP, do the following steps on the Privileged mode.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enter to Global configuration. |
| **Step2** | **spanning-tree enable** | Enables STP on Default Bridge. |
| **Step3** | **exit** | Back to Privileged mode. |
| **Step4** | **show spanning-tree** | Shows current configuration. |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Saves current configuration to startup configuration. |

To disable STP, execute the spanning-tree shutdown bridge-forwardcommand on global configuration mode.

The following shows how to enable spanning tree and show the result:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#  Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# **spanning-tree enable**  Switch(config)#  Switch(config)# exit  Switch#  Switch# show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/2 Disb BLK 4 128.610 P2p  Switch#  Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# **spanning-tree shutdown bridge-forward**  Switch(config)# exit  Switch# show spanning-tree  Spanning tree instance(s) does not exist  Switch# |

### Enable STP in no default Bridge

You can manage spanning-tree per Bridge. First, create Bridge. After you include the interface to be worked as a spanning-tree, enable the spanning-tree in the relevant Bridge.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | The interface included to run spanning-tree on Bridge can input on Bridge directly. After setting VLAN on the interface, you must set VLAN on the Bridge. |

To enable STP in no default bridge, do the following steps on Privileged mode:

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enter Global configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **Bridge <1-255> protocol VLAN-bridge** | Creates Bridge. |
| **Step3** | **bridge <1-255> spanning-tree enable** | Enables STP on Bridge. |
| **Step4** | **Bridge-group <1-255>** | Includes VLAN on Bridge. |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Save the current configuration. |

To enable STP in bridges other than the default bridge, use **bridge shutdown <1-256> bridge-forward** command in global configuration mode. To remove the brige use **no bridge <1-256>** command.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#  Switch# show spanning-tree  Spanning tree instance(s) does not exist  Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config) **Bridge 1 protocol vlan-bridge**  Switch(config) **Bridge 1 spanning-tree enable**  Switch(config)# interface Vlan100  Switch (config-if-Vlan100)#**bridge-group 1**  Switch(config)# exit  Switch# show running-config  !  bridge 1 protocol vlan-bridge  bridge 1 spanning-tree enable  !  Switch#  Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# **bridge shutdown 1 bridge-forward**  Switch(config)# **no bridge 1**  Switch(config)# exit  Switch# show running-config  !  Switch# |

### Configuring the Port Priority

If a loop occurs, the spanning tree decides the interface in the forwarding state with port priority.

It is possible to assign the higher priority (lower number) to the prior interface and the lower priority (higher number) to posterior interface. If all interfaces have same priority, spanning tree set interface with the lowest number in forwarding state, and block other interfaces.

To configure the port priority of interface, follow the procedures below:

Table 173 Configuring the Port Priority

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode |
| **Stpe2** | **interface** *interface-id* | Enters interface configuration mode, and specify an interface to configure.  Available interface is physical interface and port group. |
| **Step3** | **spanning-tree**  **port-priority** *priority* | Sets VLAN port priority for an interface. |
| **Step4** | **exit** | Changes to Privileged mode |
| **Step5** | **show spanning-tree** | Checks Configuration |
| **Step6** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Saves the setting in configuration file (optional) |

To return the default setting of interface, use interface configuration command no spanning-tree VLAN *VLAN-id* port-priority.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch # configure terminal  Switch(config)#int GigabitEthernet 6/3  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#**spanning-tree port-priority 0**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#exit  Switch # show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 **0**.138 P2p  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/3  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#**no spanning-tree port-priority**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4  **128**.138 Shared  Switch# |

### Configuring the Path Cost

The default value of the path cost of spanning-tree is decided by the media speed of interface. If a loop occurs, the spanning tree decides the interface in forwarding state with port cost. It is possible to assign the lower cost to the prior interface and the higher cost to posterior interface. If all interfaces have the same cost, the spanning tree sets an interface with the lowest number in the forwarding state, and blocks other interface.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | Port group cannot decide the path cost by interface speed but each member port can have a different speed. Set path cost for the port group manually. |

To configure the path cost of interface, follow the procedure set out below:

Table 174 Configuring the Path Cost

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Step | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | To enter global configuration mode |
| **Stpe2** | **interface** *interface-id* | To enter interface configuration mode, and specify an interface to configure.  Available interface is physical interface and port group. |
| **Step3** | **spanning-tree path-cost** *cost* | Sets cost. |
| **Step4** | **exit** | To return to Privileged mode |
| **Step5** | **show spanning-tree** | To check the setting |
| **Step6** | **copy running-config startup-config** | To save the setting in the configuration file (optional) |

To return the default setting of interface, use interface configuration command no spanning-tree VLAN *VLAN-id* cost.

In the case that bridge is not a default, the system use bridge<1-255> besides of spanning-tree.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/3  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#**spanning-tree path-cost 10**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK **10** 128.138 P2p  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/3  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#**no spanning-tree path-cost**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#exit  Switch#sh spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK **4** 128.138 P2p  Switch# |

### Configuring the Switch Priority of a VLAN

To be a root switch, the switch priority can be changed. To return the default setting of switch, use global configuration command no spanning-tree VLAN *VLAN-id* priority. In the case that the Bridge is not a default, the system use bridge<1-255> besides a spanning-tree.

To be a root switch, the switch priority can be changed.

To configure the switch priority for VLAN, perform the following tasks:

Table 175 Configuring the Switch Priority of a VLAN

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Step | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | To enter Global configuration mode |
| **Step2** | **spanning-tree priority** *priority* | priority is a multiple of 4096 between 0 and 61440. The default setting is 32768. A smaller number is more probable to be a root switch. Effective priority values include 4096, 8192, 12288, 16384, 20480, 24576, 28672, 32768, 36864, 40960, 45056, 49152, 53248, 57344 and 61440. Other values are not permitted. |
| **Step3** | **exit** | To return to Privileged mode. |
| **Step4** | **show spanning** | To check the setting |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | To Save Setting in the configuration file (optional) |

To return the default setting of switch, use global configuration command no spanning-tree VLAN *VLAN-id* priority.

Use **bridge <1-256> command rather than** spanning-tree except for Default Bridge.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch#  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#spanning-tree priority 4096  Switch(config)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 4096  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority **4096**  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch#conf t  Switch(config)#no spanning-tree priority  Switch(config)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority **32768**  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch# |

### Configuring the Hello Time

As modifying the hello time, you can change the configuration BPDU interval that root switch transmits. To configure the hello time for a VLAN, perform the following the procedures:

Table 176 Configuring the Hello Time

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Step | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | To enter global configuration mode |
| **Step2** | **spanning-tree hello-time**  *seconds* | Hello time is a period for the root switch to send a configuration message, indicating that the switch is alive.  • *seconds* ranges from 1 to 10. The default setting is 2. |
| **Step3** | **exit** | To return to Privileged mode |
| **Step4** | **show spanning-tree** | To check the setting |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | To save the setting in configuration file (optional) |

To return the default setting of switch, use global configuration command no spanning-tree VLAN *VLAN-id* hello-time. In the case that bridge is not a default, the system use bridge<1-255> besides of spanning-tree.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch#  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#spanning-tree hello-time 9  Switch(config)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 9 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time **9** sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#no spanning-tree hello-time  Switch(config)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time **2** sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch# |

### Configuring the Forwarding-Delay Time for a VLAN

To configure the forwarding-delay time for a VLAN, perform the following the procedures:

Table 177 Configuring the Forwarding-Delay Time for a VLAN

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Step | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | To enter Global configuration mode |
| **Step2** | **spanning-tree forward-time** *seconds* | Seconds range is between 4 and 30. The default is 15. |
| **Step3** | **exit** | Exit the configuration mode |
| **Step4** | **show spanning-tree** | To check the setting |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | (optional) Save the new configuration. |

To return the default setting of switch, use global configuration command no spanning-tree VLAN *VLAN-id* forward-time.

In the case that bridge is not a default, the system use bridge<1-255> of spanning-tree.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#**spanning-tree forward-time 20**  Switch(config)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 20 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay **20** sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#**no spanning-tree forward-time**  Switch(config)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay **15** sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch# |

### Configuring the Maximum-Aging Time for a VLAN

To configure the maximum-aging time, perform the follow ing the procedure:

Table 178 Configuring the Maximum-Aging Time for a VLAN

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Step | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode |
| **Step2** | **spanning-tree max-age**  *seconds* | Sets maximum-aging time  Seconds range is between 6 and 40. The default is 20. |
| **Step3** | **exit** | Returns to Privileged mode |
| **Step4** | **show spanning-tree** | Checks the setting |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Save settings in the configuration file (optional). |

To return the default setting of switch, use global configuration command no spanning-tree VLAN *VLAN-id* max-age.

In the case that bridge is not a default, the system use bridge<1-255> of spanning-tree.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#spanning-tree max-age 15  Switch(config)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 15 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age **15** sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#no spanning-tree max-age  Switch(config)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age **20** sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch# |

### Changing the Max-hops for switch

MSTP mode use hop count like TTL of IP instead of using max age and forward delay.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters to global configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **Spanning-tree max-hops count** | Changes max-hop. |
| **Step3** | **exit** | Backs to Privileged mode. |
| **Step4** | **show running-config** | Shows current configuration. |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Saves current configuration to start-up configuration. |

|  |
| --- |
| Switch(config)#spanning-tree max-hops 10  Switch(config)#do show spa mst  #### MST1 vlans mapped:20,70  Bridge address 0007.70de.ad99 priority 32768 (32768 sysid 0)  Root address 0007.709e.12fd priority 8000 (8000 sysid 0)  Regional Root this switch  Operational hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, txholdcount 6  Configured hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, max hops **10**  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ---------------- ---------- --- --------- -------- --------------------------------  Giga6/3 Mstr FWD 20000 128.138 P2p  Giga6/4 Altn BLK 20000 128.139 P2p  Switch(config)#**no spanning-tree max-hops**  Switch(config)#do show spa mst  #### MST1 vlans mapped:20,70  Bridge address 0007.70de.ad99 priority 32768 (32768 sysid 0)  Root address 0007.709e.12fd priority 8000 (8000 sysid 0)  Regional Root this switch  Operational hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, **txholdcount 6**  Configured hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, max hops 20  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ---------------- ---------- --- --------- -------- --------------------------------  Giga6/3 Mstr FWD 20000 128.138 P2p  Giga6/4 Altn BLK 20000 128.139 P2p |

### Changing the Spanning-Tree mode for switch

To change the spanning-tree mode for switch, follow the procedures set out below:

Table 179 Changing the Spanning-Tree mode for switch

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Step | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | To enter global configuration mode |
| **Step2** | **spanning-tree mode {stp|rstp**|**mstp**|  **provider-mstp|provider-rstp|**  **stp-VLAN-bridge|rstp-VLAN-bridge**} | To change the spanning-tree mode |
| **Step3** | **exit** | To return to Privileged mode |
| **Step4** | **show running-config** | To check the setting |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | To save the settings in the configuration file (optional) |

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#spanning-tree mode stp-vlan-bridge  Switch(config)#exit  Switch(config)#spanning-tree enable  Switch(config)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled stp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb DIS 4 128.138 P2p  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#spanning-tree mode mstp  Switch(config)#spanning-tree enable  Switch(config)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled mstp  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 20000 128.138 P2p |

### Configuring portfast for switch

You can configure all the port in the C9500 to have bpdu-filter and bpdu-guard features. The option ‘bpdu-filter’ is for blocking the incoming bpdu to the port meanwhile ‘bpdu-guard’ is for turning the port to block state when bpdu come into the port.

The following example shows how to set portfast for switch:

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enter the the Global configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **spanning-tree**  **portfast**  **{bpdu-filter|bpdu-guard|}** | Sets the portfast to every port. |
| **Step3** | **exit** | Enter the Privileged mode. |
| **Step4** | **show running-config** | Shows the current running configuration. |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Saves the configuration to startup-configuration. |

|  |
| --- |
| Switch(config)#do show spa inter gi6/3  Default: Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled  Default: Root Path Cost 4 - Root Port 138 - Bridge Priority 32768  Default: Forward Delay 15 - Hello Time 2 - Max Age 20  Default: Root Id 80000007709e12fd  Default: Bridge Id 8000000770dead99  Default: last topology change Tue Jan 13 23:32:51 1970  0: 2 topology change(s) - last topology change Tue Jan 13 23:32:51 1970  Default: portfast bpdu-filter disabled  Default: portfast bpdu-guard disabled  Default: portfast errdisable timeout disabled  Default: portfast errdisable timeout interval 300 sec  Giga6/3: Port 138 - Id 808a - Role Rootport - State Forwarding  Giga6/3: Designated Path Cost 0  Giga6/3: Configured Path Cost 4 - Add type Explicit ref count 1  Giga6/3: Designated Port Id 8001 - Priority 128 -  Giga6/3: Root 80000007709e12fd  Giga6/3: Designated Bridge 80000007709e12fd  Giga6/3: Message Age 0 - Max Age 20  Giga6/3: Hello Time 2 - Forward Delay 15  Giga6/3: Forward Timer 0 - Msg Age Timer 4 - Hello Timer 0 - topo change timer 0  Giga6/3: forward-transitions 1  Giga6/3: Version Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol - Received RSTP - Send RSTP  Giga6/3: No portfast configured - Current portfast off  Giga6/3: portfast bpdu-guard default - Current portfast bpdu-guard off  Giga6/3: portfast bpdu-filter default - Current portfast bpdu-filter off  Giga6/3: no root guard configured - Current root guard off  Giga6/3: Configured Link Type point-to-point - Current point-to-point    Switch(config)#**spanning-tree portfast bpdu-filter**  Switch(config)#do show spa inter gi6/3  Default: Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled  Default: Root Path Cost 4 - Root Port 138 - Bridge Priority 32768  Default: Forward Delay 15 - Hello Time 2 - Max Age 20  Default: Root Id 80000007709e12fd  Default: Bridge Id 8000000770dead99  Default: last topology change Tue Jan 13 23:32:51 1970  0: 2 topology change(s) - last topology change Tue Jan 13 23:32:51 1970  Default: portfast bpdu-filter **enabled**  Default: portfast bpdu-guard disabled  Default: portfast errdisable timeout disabled  Default: portfast errdisable timeout interval 300 sec  Giga6/3: Port 138 - Id 808a - Role Rootport - State Forwarding  Giga6/3: Designated Path Cost 0  Giga6/3: Configured Path Cost 4 - Add type Explicit ref count 1  Giga6/3: Designated Port Id 8001 - Priority 128 -  Giga6/3: Root 80000007709e12fd  Giga6/3: Designated Bridge 80000007709e12fd  Giga6/3: Message Age 0 - Max Age 20  Giga6/3: Hello Time 2 - Forward Delay 15  Giga6/3: Forward Timer 0 - Msg Age Timer 4 - Hello Timer 0 - topo change timer 0  Giga6/3: forward-transitions 1  Giga6/3: Version Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol - Received RSTP - Send RSTP  Giga6/3: No portfast configured - Current portfast off  Giga6/3: portfast bpdu-guard default - Current portfast bpdu-guard off  Giga6/3: portfast bpdu-filter default - Current portfast bpdu-filter on  Giga6/3: no root guard configured - Current root guard off  Giga6/3: Configured Link Type point-to-point - Current point-to-point |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | Before you set bpdu-guard or bpdu-filter, you set portfast. |

### Changing transmit-holdcount for switch

You can limit BPDU number to transmit for the maximum transmit rate (Default: 3 sec). It is saved to transmit-holdcount. (Default: 6)

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **spanning-tree**  **transmit-holdcount** *holdcount* | Changes transmit-holdcount. |
| **Step3** | **exit** | Back to Privileged mode. |
| **Step4** | **show running-config** | Shows current running configuration. |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Saves the current running configuration to startup-configuration. |

|  |
| --- |
| #### MST1 vlans mapped:70  Bridge address 0007.70de.ad99 priority 32768 (32768 sysid 0)  Root address 0007.709e.12fd priority 8000 (8000 sysid 0)  Regional Root this switch  Operational hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, **txholdcount 6**  Configured hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, max hops 20  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ---------------- ---------- --- --------- -------- --------------------------------  Giga6/3 Mstr FWD 20000 128.138 P2p  Giga6/4 Altn BLK 20000 128.139 P2p  C9500\_112(config)#**no spanning-tree transmit-holdcount**  C9500\_112(config)#do show spa mst  #### MST1 vlans mapped:70  Bridge address 0007.70de.ad99 priority 32768 (32768 sysid 0)  Root address 0007.709e.12fd priority 8000 (8000 sysid 0)  Regional Root this switch  Operational hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, **txholdcount 10**  Configured hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, max hops 20  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ---------------- ---------- --- --------- -------- --------------------------------  Giga6/3 Mstr FWD 20000 128.138 P2p  Giga6/4 Altn BLK 20000 128.139 P2p |

### Changing Cisco-interoperability for switch

As BPDU is defined by Cisco is different from standard BPDU, it needs to change Cisco-interoperability for the switch.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Co Command** | **Pu Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **spanning-tree**  **cisco-interoperability**  **{enable|disable}** | Sets if it is comparable with Cisco. |
| **Step3** | **exit** | Back to Privileged mode. |
| **Step4** | **show running-config** | Shows current running configuration. |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Saves the current running configuration to startup-configuration. |

### Configuring autoedge for port

You can set to check if device connected to port is edge device. When you set it with autoedge, do the following steps:

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Co Command** | **Pu Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **Interface interface-id** | Enters interface configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **spanning-tree autoedge** | Sets autoedge on port. |
| **Step3** | **exit** | Back to Privileged mode. |
| **Step4** | **show running-config** | Shows current running configuration. |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Saves current running configuration to startup-configuration. |

### Configuring the Port as Edge Port

If a port is not defined as an edge port, 2 x Forward Time will be taken for the port to transit to the forwarding state.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | You should set a port connected to your terminal as an edge port. Otherwise, STP state of the port connected to the terminal will be affected by changes in the STP configuration of the network. |

To define a port as an edge port, go through the following steps starting in Privileged mode:

Table 180 Configuring the Port as Edge Port

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Step | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | Interface interface-id | Sets an interface and enters interface configuration mode.  Effective interfaces include physical interfaces and port groups. |
| **Step2** | **spanning-tree edgeport** | Sets a port as an edge port. |
| **Step3** | **exit** | Changes to Privileged mode. |
| **Step4** | **show running-config** | Views the settings. |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Stores the (option) settings in the configuration file. |

To restore the default setting of the switch, use the interface configuration command no spanning-tree admin-edge-port.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/3  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#**spanning-tree edgeport**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p **edge port**  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/3  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#**no spanning-tree edgeport**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch# |

### Specifying the Link Type to Ensure Rapid Transitions

When a port is connected to another port over a point-to-point link, the port becomes a designated port.

Link-type is determined by duplex mode of interface: a full-duplex port is regarded as a point-to-point link; and half-duplex mode is regarded as a shared link. If there is a half-duplex link connected to a port of the remote switch by point-to-point connection, you can enable fast transition to forwarding state by changing the default setting of link-type.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | In the case of a port group, it is not feasible to determine the link type from duplex mode: the ports may have different duplex modes each other. Therefore, you should manually set link type for a port group. |

To change the default link-type, go through the following steps starting in Privileged mode:

Table 181 Specifying the Link Type to Ensure Rapid Transitions

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Step | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Stpe2** | **interface** *interface-id* | Enters interface configuration mode. |
| **Stpe3** | **spanning-tree link-type point-to-point** | Sets the link type of port to point-to-point. |
| **Step4** | **exit** | Changes to Privileged mode. |
| **Step5** | **show running-config** | Views the settings. |
| **Step6** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Stores the (option) settings in the configuration file. |

To restore the default setting, use the interface configuration command no spanning-tree link-type.

### Configuring force-version for port

For the sake of STP compatibility the port can keep the version of RSTP or MSTP so that it can operate according to the set version.

To set force-version on port, do the following steps on Privileged mode:

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **Interface** *interface-id* | Enters interface configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **spanning-tree force-version** *version* | Sets force-version on port.  (0 : STP, 2 : RSTP, 3 : MSTP) |
| **Step3** | **exit** | Back to Privileged mode. |
| **Step4** | **show running-config** | Shows current running configuration. |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Saves current running configuration to startup-configuration. |

|  |
| --- |
| Default: Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled  Default: Root Path Cost 4 - Root Port 138 - Bridge Priority 32768  Default: Forward Delay 15 - Hello Time 2 - Max Age 20  Default: Root Id 80000007709e12fd  Default: Bridge Id 8000000770dead99  Default: last topology change Wed Jan 14 12:07:59 1970  0: 2 topology change(s) - last topology change Wed Jan 14 12:07:59 1970  Default: portfast bpdu-filter disabled  Default: portfast bpdu-guard disabled  Default: portfast errdisable timeout disabled  Default: portfast errdisable timeout interval 300 sec  Giga6/3: Port 138 - Id 808a - Role Rootport - State Forwarding  Giga6/3: Designated Path Cost 0  Giga6/3: Configured Path Cost 4 - Add type Explicit ref count 1  Giga6/3: Designated Port Id 8001 - Priority 128 -  Giga6/3: Root 80000007709e12fd  Giga6/3: Designated Bridge 80000007709e12fd  Giga6/3: Message Age 0 - Max Age 20  Giga6/3: Hello Time 2 - Forward Delay 15  Giga6/3: Forward Timer 0 - Msg Age Timer 5 - Hello Timer 0 - topo change timer 0  Giga6/3: forward-transitions 1  Giga6/3: Version Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol - **Received RSTP - Send RSTP**  Giga6/3: No portfast configured - Current portfast off  Giga6/3: portfast bpdu-guard default - Current portfast bpdu-guard off  Giga6/3: portfast bpdu-filter default - Current portfast bpdu-filter off  Giga6/3: no root guard configured - Current root guard off  Giga6/3: Configured Link Type point-to-point - Current point-to-point    Switch(config)#inter gi6/3  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#**spanning-tree force-version 0**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#do show spa inter gi6/3  Default: Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled  Default: Root Path Cost 4 - Root Port 139 - Bridge Priority 32768  Default: Forward Delay 15 - Hello Time 2 - Max Age 20  Default: Root Id 80000007709e12fd  Default: Bridge Id 8000000770dead99  Default: last topology change Wed Jan 14 12:09:00 1970  0: 3 topology change(s) - last topology change Wed Jan 14 12:09:00 1970  Default: portfast bpdu-filter disabled  Default: portfast bpdu-guard disabled  Default: portfast errdisable timeout disabled  Default: portfast errdisable timeout interval 300 sec  Giga6/3: Port 138 - Id 808a - Role Designated - State Discarding  Giga6/3: Designated Path Cost 4  Giga6/3: Configured Path Cost 4 - Add type Explicit ref count 1  Giga6/3: Designated Port Id 808a - Priority 128 -  Giga6/3: Root 80000007709e12fd  Giga6/3: Designated Bridge 8000000770dead99  Giga6/3: Message Age 1 - Max Age 20  Giga6/3: Hello Time 2 - Forward Delay 15  Giga6/3: Forward Timer 14 - Msg Age Timer 0 - Hello Timer 0 - topo change timer 34  Giga6/3: forward-transitions 1  Giga6/3: Version Spanning Tree Protocol - **Received None - Send STP**  Giga6/3: No portfast configured - Current portfast off  Giga6/3: portfast bpdu-guard default - Current portfast bpdu-guard off  Giga6/3: portfast bpdu-filter default - Current portfast bpdu-filter off  Giga6/3: no root guard configured - Current root guard off  Giga6/3: Configured Link Type point-to-point - Current point-to-point |

### Configuring root guard for port

This is used to prevent the switch that is connected to the port from being the root switch. In case Root guard is configured, even if superior BPDU is transferred, they are to be ignored. This feature is only for MSTP.

To set root guard on port, do the following steps on Privileged mode:

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Co Command** | **Pu Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **Interface** *interface-id* | Enters interface configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **spanning-tree guard root** | Sets root guard on port. |
| **Step3** | **exit** | Back to Privileged mode. |
| **Step4** | **show running-config** | Shows current running configuration. |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Saves current running configuration to startup-configuration. |

|  |
| --- |
| Giga6/3 of MST1isRootport Forwarding  Edge port: no (default) **port guard : none (default)**  Link type: point-to-point (auto) bpdu filter :disable (disable)  bpdu guard:disable (disable)  Bpdus send 0  Instance Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Vlans mapped  -------- ---- --- --------- -------- -------------------------------  1 Root FWD 20000 128.138  70  %  Switch#con t  Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.  Switch(config)#inter gi6/3  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#**spanning-tree guard root**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#do show spa mst inter gi6/3  Giga6/3 of MST1isDesignated root-inconsistent  Edge port: no (default) **port guard : root (root)**  Link type: point-to-point (auto) bpdu filter :disable (disable)  bpdu guard:disable (disable)  Bpdus send 0  Instance Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Vlans mapped  -------- ---- --- --------- -------- -------------------------------  1 Desg RIT 20000 128.138  70 |

### Configuring hello-time for port

You can set hello-time per port. This is the same as setting of a switch except entering interface mode.

### Configuring portfast for port

You can set portfasper port. This is the same as setting of a switch except entering interface mode.

### Configuring transmit-holdcount for port

You can set transmit-holdcount per port. This is the same as setting of a switch except entering interface mode.

### Configuring restricted-role for port

This is used to prevent the specified port from being the root port in MSTP mode.

To set restricted-role for port, do the following steps on Privileged mode:

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **C Command** | **Pu Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **Interface** *interface-id* | Enters interface configuration mode. |
| **Step3** | **spanning-tree restricted-role** | Sets restricted-role on port. |
| **Step4** | **exit** | Back to Privileged mode. |
| **Step5** | **show running-config** | Shows current running configuration. |
| **Step6** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Saves current running configuration to startup-configuration. |

|  |
| --- |
| C9500\_112(config)#inter gi6/3  C9500 \_112(config-if-Giga6/3)#**spanning-tree restricted-role**  C9500 \_112(config-if-Giga6/3)#do show spa  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 0007709e12fd  Cost 4  Port 139 (Giga6/4)  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 000770dead99  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  **Giga6/3 Altn BLK 4 128.138 P2p**  Giga6/4 Root FWD 4 128.139 P2p  C9500 \_112(config-if-Giga6/3)#**no spanning-tree restricted-role**  C9500\_112(config-if-Giga6/3)#do show spa  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 0007709e12fd  Cost 20000  Port 138 (Giga6/3)  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 000770dead99  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  **Giga6/3 Root FWD 4 128.138 P2p**  Giga6/4 Altn BLK 4 128.139 P2p |

### Configuring restricted-tcn for port

You can configure the specified port not to receive tcn BPDU.

To set restricted-role for port, do the following steps on Privileged mode.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Co Command** | **Pu Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **Interface** *interface-id* | Enters interface configuration mode. |
| **Step3** | **spanning-tree restricted-tcn** | Sets restricted-tcn on port. |
| **Step4** | **exit** | Back to Privileged mode. |
| **Step5** | **show running-config** | Shows current running configuration. |
| **Step6** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Saves current running configuration to startup-configuration. |

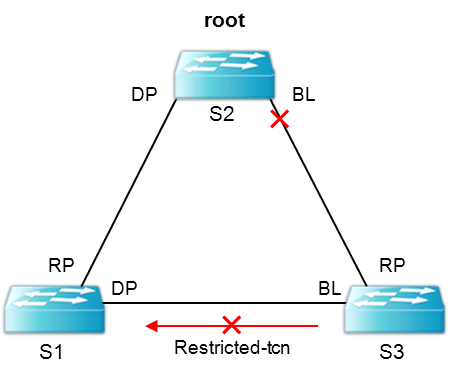


Figure 33 restricted-tcn

## Configuring MSTP Features

This section describes how to set MSTP. In the MSTP. As spanning-tree is consisted of per instance, it creates instance and includes VLAN in it. Also it sets hello time and port priority like STP or RSTP.

### Instance Creation and VLAN Connection

To create instance and include VLAN in it, do the following steps on Privileged mode.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Stpe2** | **Spanning-tree mst configuration** | Enters mst configuration mode to connect created instance and VLAN. |
| **Stpe3** | **instance** *instance-id* **VLAN** *VLAN-id* | Creates Instance ID and includes VLAN in it. |
| **Step4** | **exit** | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step5** | **interface** *interface-id* | Enters interface configuration mode. |
| **Step6** | **Spanning-tree instance** *instance-id* | Set relevant port on Instance. |
| **Step7** | **exit** | Back to Privileged mode. |
| **Step8** | **show running-config** | Shows current running configuration. |
| **Step9** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Saves current running configuration to startup-configuration. |

To delete instance, do **no instance** *instance-id* command.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#**show spanning-tree mst configuration**  name [Default]  Revision 0 Instances configured 0  % Instance VLAN  % 0: 2-3, 100  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#**spanning-tree mst configuration**  Switch(config-mst)#**instance 1 vlan 2**  Switch(config-mst)#exit  Switch(config)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/3  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#**spanning-tree instance 1**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree mst configuration  name [Default]  Revision 0 Instances configured 0  % Instance VLAN  % 0: 3, 100  % **1: 2**  Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)#spanning-tree mst configuration  Switch(config-mst)#**no instance 1 vlan 2**  Switch(config-mst)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree mst configuration  name [Default]  Revision 0 Instances configured 0  % Instance VLAN  % 0: **2**-3, 100  Switch# |

### Instance and port configuration

At MSTP, the spanning-tree runs for each instance. The priority of each instance should therefore be configured. The commands used here include each ‘instance’ in the commands used by STP and RSTP.

To set priority on interface, do the following steps on Privileged mode:

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters Global configuration mode. |
| **Stpe2** | **Spanning-tree instance** *instance-id*  **priority** *priority* | Sets priority on Instance. |
| **Step3** | **exit** | Back to Privileged mode. |
| **Step4** | **show running-config** | Shows current running configuration. |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | (Optional)Saves current running configuration to startup-configuration. |

To return to default value, use **no spanning-tree instance** *instance-id* **priority** command.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#**show spanning-tree mst**  #### MST1 vlans mapped:2  Bridge address 0007.7074.ff01 priority 32768 (32768 sysid 0)  Root this switch for the CIST  Regional Root this switch  Operational hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, txholdcount 6  Configured hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, max hops 20  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ---------------- ---------- --- --------- -------- --------------------------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 20000 128.138 P2p  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#**spanning-tree instance 1 priority 4096**  Switch(config)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree mst  #### MST1 vlans mapped:2  Bridge address 0007.7074.ff01 priority **4096** (4096 sysid 0)  Root this switch for the CIST  Regional Root this switch  Operational hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, txholdcount 6  Configured hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, max hops 20  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ---------------- ---------- --- --------- -------- --------------------------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 20000 128.138 P2p  Switch# |

To set the priority to a port, follow the steps below in Privileged mode.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enter Global configuration mode. |
| **Stpe2** | **interface** *interface-id* | Enter interface configuration mode by specifying the intended interface. |
| **Step3** | **Spanning-tree instance** *instance-id*  **priority** *priority* | Assign priority to the port. |
| **Step4** | **exit** | Get back to Privileged mode. |
| **Step5** | **show running-config** | Check out the configuration is made. |
| **Step6** | **copy running-config startup-config** | (Optional) Modified configuration is to be save as a file. |

To return to default value, use **no spanning-tree instance** *instance-id* **priority** command.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show spanning-tree mst  #### MST1 vlans mapped:2  Bridge address 0007.7074.ff01 priority 32768 (32768 sysid 0)  Root this switch for the CIST  Regional Root this switch  Operational hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, txholdcount 6  Configured hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, max hops 20  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ---------------- ---------- --- --------- -------- --------------------------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 20000 128.138 P2p  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/3  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#**spanning-tree instance 1 priority 0**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree mst  #### MST1 vlans mapped:2  Bridge address 0007.7074.ff01 priority 32768 (32768 sysid 0)  Root this switch for the CIST  Regional Root this switch  Operational hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, txholdcount 6  Configured hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, max hops 20  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ---------------- ---------- --- --------- -------- --------------------------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 20000  **0**.138 P2p  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/3  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#**no spanning-tree instance 1 priority**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree mst  #### MST1 vlans mapped:2  Bridge address 0007.7074.ff01 priority 32768 (32768 sysid 0)  Root this switch for the CIST  Regional Root this switch  Operational hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, txholdcount 6  Configured hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, max hops 20  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ---------------- ---------- --- --------- -------- --------------------------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 20000 **128**.138 P2p  Switch# |

To set the path cost value of port, do the following steps on Privileged mode:

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Stpe2** | **interface** *interface-id* | Enters to interface configuration mode. |
| **Step3** | **Spanning-tree instance** *instance-id*  **path-cost** *path-cost* | Sets path cost on port. |
| **Step4** | **exit** | Back to Privileged mode. |
| **Step5** | **show running-config** | Shows current running configuration. |
| **Step6** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Saves current running configuration to startup-configuration. |

To restore as default value, do no spanning-tree instance instance-id path-cost command.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show spanning-tree mst  #### MST1 vlans mapped:2  Bridge address 0007.7074.ff01 priority 32768 (32768 sysid 0)  Root this switch for the CIST  Regional Root this switch  Operational hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, txholdcount 6  Configured hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, max hops 20  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ---------------- ---------- --- --------- -------- --------------------------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 20000 128.138 P2p  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/3  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#**spanning-tree instance 1 path-cost 1**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree mst  #### MST1 vlans mapped:2  Bridge address 0007.7074.ff01 priority 32768 (32768 sysid 0)  Root this switch for the CIST  Regional Root this switch  Operational hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, txholdcount 6  Configured hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, max hops 20  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ---------------- ---------- --- --------- -------- --------------------------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK **1** 128.138 P2p  Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#interface GigabitEthernet 6/3  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#**no spanning-tree instance 1 path-cost**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/3)#exit  Switch#show spanning-tree mst  #### MST1 vlans mapped:2  Bridge address 0007.7074.ff01 priority 32768 (32768 sysid 0)  Root this switch for the CIST  Regional Root this switch  Operational hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, txholdcount 6  Configured hello time 2, forward delay 15, max age 20, max hops 20  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ---------------- ---------- --- --------- -------- --------------------------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK **20000** 128.138 P2p  Switch# |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | To set MSTP on the port, you must create instance first. |

### Setting region and revision number for MST

Any switch that belongs to a same MST should keep same MST configuration. ‘Region’ and ‘revision number’ are the items included in MST configuration.

To set revision number and Region, do the following steps on Privileged mode.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Stpe2** | **spanning-tree mst configuration** | Enters mst configuration mode. |
| **Step3** | **Region** *NAME* | Sets region name. |
| **Step4** | **Revision** *number* | Sets revision number. |
| **Step5** | **exit** | Back to Privileged mode. |
| **Step6** | **show running-config** | Shows current running configuration. |
| **Step7** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Saves current running configuration to startup-configuration. |

|  |
| --- |
| name [Default]  Revision 0 Instances configured 2  Instance VLAN  -------- ---------------------------------------------------------------------  0 1-69, 71-4000  1 70  -------------------------------------------------------------------------------  SWITCH(config-mst)#**region TEST**  SWITCH(config-mst)#**revision 100**  SWITCH(config-mst)#do show spa mst conf  name [**TEST**]  Revision **100** Instances configured 2  Instance VLAN  -------- ---------------------------------------------------------------------  0 1-69, 71-4000  1 70  ------------------------------------------------------------------------------- |

### Pathcost for MSTP

The pathcost value about MSTP is as follows:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **speed** | **Path cost** |
| 10M | 2000000 |
| 100M | 200000 |
| 1G | 20000 |
| 10G | 2000 |

## Displaying the Spanning-Tree Status

To show spanning-tree status, do the following commands on Privileged mode.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **show spanning-tree** | Show spanning-tree information about total interface. |
| **show spanning-tree interface** *interface-id* | Shows spanning-tree information about specific interface. |
| **show spanning-tree detail** | Shows detailed spannin-tree information. |

The following example shows how to show the spanning-tree information:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show **spanning-tree**  Default Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled rstp-vlan-bridge  Root ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  This bridge is the root  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Bridge ID Priority 32768  Address 00077074ff01  Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Foward Delay 15 sec  Aging Time 300  Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type  ------------- ---- --- --------- -------- ----------------  Giga6/3 Disb BLK 4 128.138 P2p  Switch#**show spanning-tree interface gi6/3**  % Default: Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled  % Default: Root Path Cost 0 - Root Port 0 - Bridge Priority 32768  % Default: Forward Delay 15 - Hello Time 2 - Max Age 20  % Default: Root Id 800000077074ff01  % Default: Bridge Id 800000077074ff01  % Default: last topology change Thu Jan 1 00:00:00 1970  % 0: 0 topology change(s) - last topology change Thu Jan 1 00:00:00 1970  % Default: portfast bpdu-filter disabled  % Default: portfast bpdu-guard disabled  % Default: portfast errdisable timeout disabled  % Default: portfast errdisable timeout interval 300 sec  % Giga6/3: Port 138 - Id 8263 - Role Disabled - State Discarding  % Giga6/3: Designated Path Cost 0  % Giga6/3: Configured Path Cost 4 - Add type Explicit ref count 1  % Giga6/3: Designated Port Id 0 - Priority 128 -  % Giga6/3: Root 000000077074ff01  % Giga6/3: Designated Bridge 000000077074ff01  % Giga6/3: Message Age 0 - Max Age 0  % Giga6/3: Hello Time 0 - Forward Delay 0  % Giga6/3: Forward Timer 0 - Msg Age Timer 0 - Hello Timer 0 - topo change timer 0  % Giga6/3: forward-transitions 0  % Giga6/3: Version Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol - Received None - Sexit STP  % Giga6/3: No portfast configured - Current portfast off  % Giga6/3: portfast bpdu-guard default - Current portfast bpdu-guard off  % Giga6/3: portfast bpdu-filter default - Current portfast bpdu-filter off  % Giga6/3: no root guard configured - Current root guard off  % Giga6/3: Configured Link Type point-to-point - Current P2p  %  %  Switch#**show spanning-tree detail**  Defaultis executing the rstp-vlan-bridgecompatible Spanning Tree protocol  Bridge Identifier has priority 8000 address 00077074ff01  Configured hello time 2, max age 20, forward delay 15  We are the root of the spanning tree  Topology change flag not set, detected flagnot set  Number of topology changes 0 last change occurred Thu Jan 1 00:00:00 1970  Times: hold 6, topology change 0, notification 5  hello 2, max age 20, forward delay 15  Timers: hello 0, topology change25, notification 0, aging 300  Port 138 (Giga6/3)of Default is Discarding  Port path cost 0 Port priority 128 ,128.138.  Designated root has priority 1280, address 0007.7074.ff01  Designated bridge has priority 8000, address 0007.7074.ff01  Designated port id is 0, designated path cost 4 Hello is not pending  Number of transitions to forwarding state: 0  Link type is P2p  BPDU: sent 0  Switch# |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | “show spanning-tree interface IFNAME” command does not run in MSTP. |

## Configuring Bridge MAC Forwarding

To make a Layer 2 Ethernet network operate, L2 frames can be sent to the intended destination interface, which requires comparing the MAC address of the frame with the MAC address table. For this, the MAC address table should be built up in advance. The process that collects all the MAC address and assigns them into the MAC address table is called MAC learning. There are two ways to achieve MAC learning – Dynamic MAC learning and Static MAC learning.

To do MAC learning, do the following commands on config mode:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **spanning-tree acquire** | Sets MAC learning of Default Bridge dynamically. (It is enabled by default.) |
| **no spanning-tree acquire** | Disables it. |
| **bridge <1-255> acquire** | Sets MAC learning of Bridge except default Bridge dynamically. (It is enabled by default.) |
| **no bridge <1-255> acquire** | Disables it. |
| **mac-address-table static MAC**  **(forward|discard) IFNAME** | Forwards MAC address of relevant Bridge to interface or discards. |
| **no mac-address-table static MAC**  **(forward|discard) IFNAME** | Deletes the relevant forwarding entry of MAC address. |

Use bridge <1-256> mac-address-table static MAC (forward|discard) IFNAME command except for Default Bridge.

The following example shows how to set MAC learning statically:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#configure terminal  Switch(config)#**mac-address-table static 1111.1111.1111 forward gi6/3**  Switch(config)#exit  Switch#**show mac-address-table**  vlan mac address type fwd ports  ------+----------------+--------+-----+--------------------------  **1 1111.1111.1111 static 1 Gi6/3**  Switch(config)#**no mac-address-table static 1111.1111.1111 forward gi6/3**  Switch(config)#exit  Switch#show mac-address-table  vlan mac address type fwd ports  ------+----------------+--------+-----+--------------------------  No entries present.  Switch# |

To delete dynamic entry and static entry from MAC address table, do the following command:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **clear mac-address-table**  **(dynamic|multicast|static)** | Clears multicast MAC address entry in the relevant Bridge. |
| **clear mac-address-table**  **(static|multicast|dynamic)**  **(address MACADDR | interface IFNAME | VLAN VID)** | Clears VLAN or the physical port of muticast MAC address entry in the relevant Bridge. |

Use clear mac-address-table (dynamic|multicast|static) (address MACADDR | interface IFNAME | vlan VID) bridge <1-256> command except for Default Bridge.

The following example shows how to delete static MAC address entry:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show mac-address-table  vlan mac address type fwd ports  ------+----------------+--------+-----+--------------------------  1 1111.1111.1111 static 1 Gi6/3  Switch#**clear mac-address-table static**  Switch#show mac-address-table  vlan mac address type fwd ports  ------+----------------+--------+-----+--------------------------  **No entries present.**  Switch# |

To show MAC address entry, do the following command on EXEC mode:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **show mac-address-table** | Shows MAC address table information. |
| **show mac-address-table**  **(static|dynamic|multicast|) VLAN <1-4094>** | Shows MAC address table information as option. |
| **show mac-address-table count (module <1-6> | VLAN <1-4094> |)** | Shows static and dynamic multicast address number in MAC address table. |

## Self-loop Detection

This section describes how to set self-loop detection to detect the returned packets which have been transmitted by the switch itself.

### Understanding Self-loop Detection

Although there are no dual paths in the user switch, a loop may be formed depending on a network configuration or on the status of cables connected to the switch.

A self-loop is formed when the packet transmitted through a port of the switch is returned through the same port. The figure below illustrates an environment where a self-loop is formed.

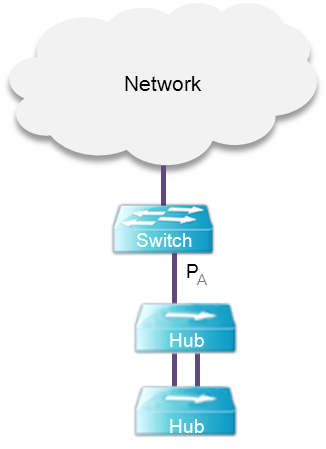


Figure 34 Environment Where a Self-loop is Formed

In the figure, a loop is formed by dual paths between two hubs. As STP is not enabled, the loop between those hubs would not be removed, resulting in instability of the network. In such a case, the packet transmitted through Port PA will be received through PA. If the self-loop detection feature is enabled in the switch, it detects the self-loop of port PA and makes it administrative disable status to protect other networks not connected to the switch and port PA. The loop exists in the equipment and networks connected to port PA as ever (use STP to completely delete the loop from the network).

### Default SLD Configuration

The table below shows the default setting of SLD.

Table 182 Default SLD Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Feature** | **Default Setting** |
| System SLD enable | Disable |
| Interface SLD enable | Disable |
| Loop detection action | Port shutdown |
| Port check | Disable |
| Hello time | 2 seconds |

### 

### Configuring Self-loop Detection

This section describes how to set self-loop detection in a switch:

* Configuring SLD PDU Policy-MAP
* Enabling Self-loop Detection on System
* Enabling Self-loop Detection on Interface
* Changing The Service Status of Port
* Disabling Self-loop Detection
* Disabling SLD Port Check (option)
* Changing SLD Interval (option)
* Changing SLD Action (option)

#### Enabling Self-loop Detection on System

To activate the SLD function of the switch, follow the steps below in Privileged mode.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | Configure terminal | Enter Global configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **sld enable** | Activate SLD function of the system. |
| **Step3** | **end** | Return to Privileged mode. |
| **Step4** | **show running-config** | Check out the configuration is made. |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | (Optional) Save the modified configuration to a file. |

#### Enabling Self-loop Detection on Interface

You can active the SLD function per each port. The default option for SLD function is ‘Not active’. To activate the SLD function per port of the switch, follow the steps below in Privileged mode.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | Configure terminal | Enter Global configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **interface** *interface-name* | Enter Interface configuration mode. |
| **Step3** | **sld enable** | Activate SLD function. |
| **Step4** | **end** | Return to Privileged mode. |
| **Step5** | **show running-config** | Check out the configuration is made. |
| **Step6** | **copy running-config startup-config** | (Optional) Save the modified configuration to a file. |

The below example shows how to activate SLD function for gi6/1 port.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# **interface gi6/1**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **sld enable**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# service-policy input SLD\_PDU  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Switch# **show sld**  Interface Enable Flag Sts Link Count Last change  Gi6/1 yes PL ok up 0 00:00:02  Gi6/2 no PL n/a down 0 n/a  Gi6/3 no PL n/a down 0 n/a  Gi6/4 no PL n/a down 0 n/a  ……  Switch# |

#### Changing the Service Status of Port

You can enable the locked port which has been set to be disabled by SLD function. For this use the below command in Privileged mode.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **clear sld** interface-type portID | Have the port to be enabled. |
| **Step2** | **show ip interface brief** | Display the port status. |

#### Disabling Self-loop Detection

To deactive the SLD detection function, follow the steps below in Privileged mode.

Table 183 Disabling Self-loop Detection

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | Configure terminal | Enter Global configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **interface** *interface-name* | Enter Interface configuration mode. |
| **Step3** | **no sld enable** | Deactive the SLD detection function. The port that were shutdown by SLD will be released. |
| **Step4** | **end** | Return to Privileged mode. |
| **Step5** | **show running-config** | Check out the configuration is made. |
| **Step6** | **copy running-config startup-config** | (Optional) Save the modified configuration to a file. |

The below example shows how to deactivate the SLD function for port gi6/1:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# **interface gi6/1**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# no service-policy input SLD\_PDU  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **no sld enable**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Switch# **show sld**  Interface Enable Flag Sts Link Count Last change  Gi6/1 no PL ok up 0 n/a  Gi6/2 no PL n/a down 0 n/a  Gi6/3 no PL n/a down 0 n/a  Gi6/4 no PL n/a down 0 n/a  ……  Switch# |

#### Disabling SLD Port Check

If you disable SLD port-check function of a port, the switch will not check out the port for SLD packet transmission when it determine if a self-loop is developed. In order to detect a loop when receiving SLD packets from other ports, you should deactivate the port-check function for the ports that are involved. To deactivate the SLD port-check function, follow the below steps in Privileged mode.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | Configure terminal | Enter Global configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **interface** *interface-name* | Enter Interface configuration mode. |
| **Step3** | **no sld port-check** | Deactive the SLD port-check function. |
| **Step4** | **end** | Return to Privileged mode. |
| **Step5** | **show running-config** | Check out the configuration is made. |
| **Step6** | **copy running-config startup-config** | (Optional) Save the modified configuration to a file. |

The below example shows how to deactivate SLD port-check function for port gi6/1:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# **interface gi6/1**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **no sld port-check**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Switch# show sh sld parameters  Global SLD information:  Protocol version: 1  SLD is enabled  Interface Enable Hello Action Option  Gi6/1 yes 2 link down  Gi6/2 no 2 link down port-check  Gi6/3 no 2 link down port-check  Gi6/4 no 2 link down port-check  ……  Switch# |

#### Changing SLD Interval

To modify the transmission period for SLD PDU, follow the below steps in Privileged mode.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | Configure terminal | Enter Global configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **interface** *interface-name* | Enter Interface configuration mode. |
| **Step3** | **sld interval** *<1-10>* | Modify the transmission period for SLD PDU. |
| **Step4** | **end** | Return to Privileged mode. |
| **Step5** | **show running-config** | Check out the configuration is made. |
| **Step6** | **copy running-config startup-config** | (Optional) Save the modified configuration to a file. |

The below example shows how to modify the transmission period for SLD PDU to be 5 seconds for port gi6/1:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# **interface gi6/1**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **sld interval 5**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Switch# show sh sld parameters  Global SLD information:  Protocol version: 1  SLD is enabled  Interface Enable Hello Action Option  Gi6/1 yes 5 link down port-check  Gi6/2 no 2 link down port-check  Gi6/3 no 2 link down port-check  Gi6/4 no 2 link down port-check  ……  Switch# |

#### Changing SLD Action

To change the SLD operation so that it will display log information rather than turn it to disabled state when a self-loop is detected. For this, follow the below steps in Privileged mode.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | Configure terminal | Enter Global configuration mode. |
| **Step2** | **interface** *interface-name* | Enter Interface configuration mode. |
| **Step3** | **sld notify-only** | Change the SLD operation to display log information. |
| **Step4** | **end** | Return to Privileged mode. |
| **Step5** | **show running-config** | Check out the configuration is made. |
| **Step6** | **copy running-config startup-config** | (Optional) Save the modified configuration to a file. |

The below example shows how to set SLD operation to display log information for port gi6/1.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# **interface gi6/1**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **sld notify-only**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Switch# show sh sld parameters  Global SLD information:  Protocol version: 1  SLD is enabled  Interface Enable Hello Action Option  Gi6/1 yes 2 notify port-check  Gi6/2 no 2 link down port-check  Gi6/3 no 2 link down port-check  Gi6/4 no 2 link down port-check  ……  Switch# |

### Displaying Self-loop Status

To display the self-loop detection settings for a port, use the Privileged command show running-config or show self-loop-detection.

|  |
| --- |
| For the case of “show self-loop-detection”  Interface name (Port name)  \* sld : self-loop-detection (set)  \* link : Link status (up, down)  \* shutdown : Shutdown by SLD (set)  \* set\_time : Limit time (minutes). If limit time is set to 0, shutdown caused by SLD will remain until the affected port is manually cleared to ‘no shutdown’.  \* remain\_time : The remaining time until the normal state is recovered from shutdown state caused by SLD (minute:second)  \* count : Number of shutdown events caused by SLD  \* last-occur : The last shutdown time |
|  |

To display the SLD operation status, use **show sld** command in Privileged mode.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show sld**  Interface Enable Flag Sts Link Count Last change  Gi6/1 no PL n/a up 0 n/a  Gi6/2 no PL n/a down 0 n/a  Gi6/3 no PL n/a down 0 n/a  Gi6/4 no PL n/a down 0 n/a  ……  Switch# |

# BFD (Bidirectional Forwarding Detection)

This chapter describes BFD (Bidirectional Forwarding Detection). BFD is a protocol for rapid detecting the error of forwarding path. BFD independently runs regardless of network type and routing protocol.

This chapter consists of the following sections:

* Understanding BFD
* Restrictions BFD Configuration
* Default BFD Configuration
* Configuring BFD
* BFD Configuration Samples

## Understanding BFD

### BFD Operation

BFD can rapidly detect between the forwarding path error and interface, data link and forwarding layer errors. The C9500 provides a BFD asynchronous mode exchanging control message between two systems optionally. For making BFD session, you set BFD to two systems. If the BFD session is made by a routing protocol, BFD transmittion period is desided by negotiating between two routers. The two routers send BFD control message periodically.

BFD can rapidly detect the error between BFD systems regardless of network type or routing protocol. If BFD detects an error, it informs the routing protocol. As a routing protocol can rapidly reaccount the routing table, it can reduce the time taken to change the routing table over the total network. The following figure shows a simple network set with two routers. Each router runs OSPF and BFD. When OSPF finds out its neighbor, OSPF requests a BFD session to BFD process to make a BFD session. Then the BFD session is also made like an OSPF neighbor.

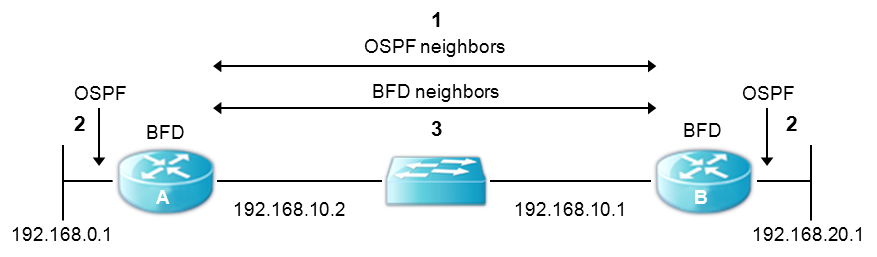


Figure 35 Establishing a BFD neighbor relationship

The following figure shows the link error to occur in the network. If the OSPF neighbor and BFD session is down, the BFD informs the OSPF process that the system can not communicate with BFD peer. The OSPF process disconnects the OSPF neighbor relation. If another path is available, the router recalculates the routing table immediately.

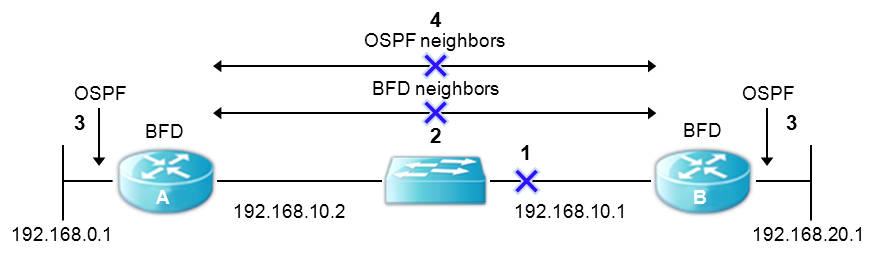


Figure 36 Tearing down an OSPF neighbor relationship

### Benefits of using BFD for Failure Detection

BFD can provide failure detection in the routing protocol like OSPF. The merits of BFD are as follows:

* BFD can detect failure within one second.
* BFD can use failure detection of various routing protocols.

### BFD Session Type

BFD uses BFD single hop session and BFD multi hop session according to network configuration.

BFD single hop session is used between two systems connected directly. The following figure shows BFD single hop configuration. As the two systems are directly connected via a specific interface, BFD single hop session is only made via this interface. After you set BFD session parameter on an interface of C9500 with the bfd intervalcommand, BFD single hop session is made.

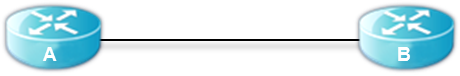


Figure 37 BFD single hop session

BFD multihop session is used when the connection path between two systems is optional. It differs according to routing table of network beween two systems like the following figure. Therfore, BFD multihop session does not belong to specific interface. You can make BFD multihop session regardless of BFD session parameter setting on the interface. You can set BFD multihop session parameter with the bfd multihop-peercommand.

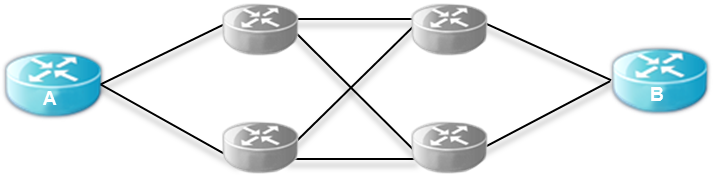


Figure 38 BFD multhop session

### BFD Version Interoperability

C9500 provides not only BFD version 1 but also version 0. Even if All BFD sessions are made with version 1, it can interact with version 0.

After the system automatically detects BFD version, BFD session runs as the highest version that can use commonly with the interactive system.

For example, if one system uses version 0 and the other systems use version 0, all systems become to use version 0. You can make sure the version to use BFD session with show bfd neighbor [details].

## BFD Restrictions

The BFD restrictions of C9500 are as follows:

* It only supports asynchronous mode. It can start BFD session although some BFD peer.
* It supports BGP, OSPF, and static routing.
* It can make BFD session of maximum 128 numbers. When you make the session more than 128 number, the following message is displayed.

%BFD-5-SESSIONLIMIT: Attempt to exceed session limit of 128 neighbors.

* It provides all BFD functions from control plane. So if the CPU utilization increases, the error detection possibility by packet loss increases. In this case, you must adjust required minimum receive interval with proper value.

## Default BFD Configuration

The following table shows the basic BFD configuration:

Table 184 Default BFD Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Feature** | **Default Setting** |
| BFD | Enable. |
| Interface passive mode | Active mode. |
| BFD Echo packet reception | Disable |
| BFD Echo mode | No use |
| Desired transmit interval | 750 msec (Multihop session) |
| Required minimum receive interval | 500 msec (Multihop session) |
| Multiplier | 3 (Multihop session) |
| BFD Slow-timer | 1000 msec |

Desired transmit interval, Required minimum receive interval and Multiplier are imfortant BFD session parameters. To make BFD single hop session, you set this parameter value directly with bfd interval command.

If bfd multihop-peer configuration for BFD multihop session does not exist, use the values defined in the table.

## Configuring BFD

This section describes BFD configuration as follows:

* Configuring BFD session parameters on the interface
* Configuring BFD multi-hop session parameters
* Configuring BFD support for BGP
* Configuring BFD support for OSPF
* Configuring BFD support for static routing
* Configuring Passive Mode on the Interface
* Configuring BFD slow timer
* Configuring BFD echo mode
* Monitoring and Troubleshooting BFD

### Configuring BFD session parameters on the interface

To configure BFD session parameters on the interface, do the following tasks:

Table 185 Configuring BFD session parameters on the interface

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**  **Example:**  Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters the global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **interface** *interface-name*  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **interface gi7/1** | Enter the interface configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **ip address** *ip-address/prefix-length*  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip address 33.1.1.1/24** | Sets IP address on interface. |
| **Step 4** | **bfd interval** *minlliseconds* **min\_rx** *milliseconds* **multiplier** *interval-multiplier*  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **bfd interval 750 min\_rx 500 multiplier 3** | Sets BFD parameter on interface. |
| **Step 5** | **end**  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **end** | Returns the Privileged mode. |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | You must set BFD parameter on relevant interface with bfd interval command to make single-hop BDF session |

### Configuring multi-hop BFD session parameters

You must configure multi-hop BFD session parameters per BFD peer. To configure multi-hop BFD session parameters, do the following tasks:

Table 186 Configuring multi-hop BFD session parameters

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**  **Example:**  Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters the global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **bfd multihop-peer** *A.B.C.D* **interval** *minlliseconds* **min\_rx** *milliseconds* **multiplier** *interval-multiplier*  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **bfd multihop-peer 10.1.1.1 interval 750 min\_rx 500 multiplier 3** | Sets multi-hop BFD session parameter |
| **Step 3** | **End**  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **end** | Returns the Privileged. |

### Configuring BFD support for BGP

To configure BFD on BGP, do the following tasks.

Table 187 Configuring BFD support for BGP

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**  **Example:**  Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters the global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **router bgp** *as-tag*  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **router bgp 100** | Enters the BGP router mode. |
| **Step 3** | **neighbor** *ip-address* **fall-over bfd**  **Example:**  Switch(config-router**)# neighbor 3.3.3.2 fall-over bfd** | Enables BFD for checking connection status with BGP neighbor. |
| **Step 4** | **end**  **Example:**  **Switch(config-router)# end** | Returns to the Privileged. |

### Configuring BFD support for OSPF

You can configure BFD on OSPF with the following ways.

* You can make BFD session for all OSPF interface excepting OSPF virtual link with bfd all-interface command in OSPF routing configuration mode.
* You can make BFD session for specific interface of OSPF with ip ospf bfd command in the interface mode.

#### Configuring BFD support for OSPF for all interface

To configure BFD session on all OSPF interface, do the following tasks:

Table 188 Configuring BFD support for OSPF for all interface

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**  **Example:**  Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **router ospf** *process-id*  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **router ospf 10** | Enter OSPF routing configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **bfd all-interfaces**  **Example:**  Switch(config-router**)# bfd all-interface** | Set to make BFD session for all OSPF interface. |
| **Step 4** | **exit**  **Example:**  Switch(config-router)# **exit** | Return to global configuration mode. |
| **Step 5** | **interface** *type number*  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **interface gi7/1** | Enter interface configuration mode. |
| **Step 6** | **bfd interval** *milliseconds* **min\_rx** *milliseconds* **multiplier** *interval-multiplier*  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **bfd** **interval 750 min\_rx 500 min 3** | Sets BFD session parameter value on OSPF interface. |
| **Step 7** | **interface** *type number*  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **interface gi7/1** | Enters interface configuration mode (Optinal). |
| **Step 8** | **Ip ospf bfd [disable]**  **Example:**  Switch(confg-if-Giga7/1)# **ip ospf bfd disable** | Disable BFD session for specific OSPF interface.  disable keyword command must be used only for interace enabled BFD. |
| **Step 9** | **end**  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **end** | Return to Privileged mode. |

#### Configure BFD Support for OSPF for One or More Interface

To configure BFD session on the specific OSPF interface, do the following tasks:

Table 189 Configure BFD Support for OSPF for One or More Interface

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**  **Example:**  Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **interface** *type number*  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **interface gi7/1** | Enters interface configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **bfd interval** *minlliseconds* **min\_rx** *milliseconds* **multiplier** *interval-multiplier*  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **bfd interval 750 min\_rx 500 multiplier 3** | Sets BFD parameter on interface. |
| **Step 4** | **ip ospf bfd [disable]**  **Example:**  Switch(confg-if-Giga7/1)# **ip ospf bfd** | Sets to make BFD session via OSPF interface. |
| **Step 5** | **end**  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **end** | Return to Privileged mode. |

### Configuring BFD support for Static routing

In static routing, you should configure the gateway of the static routing network to be the BFD peer. To configure BFD for Static routing, do the following tasks:

Table 190 Configuring BFD support for Static routing

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**  **Example:**  Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters the global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **interface** *interface-name*  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **interface gi7/1** | Enters the interface configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **ip address** *ip-address/prefix-length*  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip address 1.1.1.1/24** | Assigns IP address on interface. |
| **Step 4** | **bfd interval** *milliseconds* **min\_rx** *milliseconds* **multiplier** *interval-multiplier*  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **bfd** **interval 750 min\_rx 500 min 3** | Sets BFD session parameter value on interface. |
| **Step 5** | **Exit**  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **exit** | Return to global configuration mode. |
| **Step 6** | **ip route** *A.B.C.D/M gateway-addr*  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **ip route 7.0.0.0/8 1.1.1.254** | Sets static router. |
| **Step 7** | **ip route static bfd** *IFNAME gateway-addr*  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **ip route static bfd gi7/1 1.1.1.254** | Assign BFD neighbor of static route. |
| **Step 8** | **end**  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **end** | Return to Privileged mode. |

### Configuring Passive Mode on the Interface

After BFD passive mode receives a packet from another BFD neighbor to BFD control, it will start to send a BFD control packet. In other words, it does not send BFD control packet first. If BFD runs in passive mode, you set the interface with the following tasks.

If you set all routers in the network with BFD passive mode, the BFD does not run. At least the BFD of one system must run with active mode.

Table 191 Configuring Passive Mode on the Interface

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**  **Example:**  Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters the global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **interface** *interface-name*  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **interface gi7/1** | Enters interface configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | **bfd passive**  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **bfd** **passive** | Sets interface with BFD passive mode. |
| **Step 4** | **end**  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-Giga7/1)# **end** | Return to Privileged mode. |

### Configuring BFD Echo Mode

The system that receives a BFD echo packet from the BFD echo mode returns this packet to the sending system. In the case of using a BFD Echo packet, the sending period of BFD control packet is longer. So you can reduce BFD control packet number sent or received between BFD neighbors. The default setting of BFD echo mode is enabled.

Table 192 Configuring BFD Echo Mode

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**  **Example:**  Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters the global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **bfd echo** [accept | send]  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **bfd echo** | Enable BFD echo mode.  - accept keyword use when it receive Echo packet.  - send keyword use when it sends Echo packet. |
| **Step 3** | **end**  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **end** | Returns Privileged mode. |

### Configuring BFD slow timer

When BFD neighbors do not recognize each other, it would be of no use to transmit BFD control packets according to the set interval which has been configured by **bfd interval** command. To modify the transmission interval of BFD control packets, use **bfd slow-timer** command.

Table 193 Configuring BFD slow timer

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**  **Example:**  Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters the global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | **bfd slow-timer** *milliseconds*  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **bfd slow-timer 2000** | Sets BFD slow timer. |
| **Step 3** | **end**  **Example:**  Switch(confg)# **end** | Returns Privileged mode. |

### Displaying BFD information

Table 194 Displaying BFD information

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **Step 1** | **show bfd neighbor** [detail]  **Example:**  Switch# **show bfd neighbor details** | Shows BFD adjacency database (optional).  - Detail keyword shows all BFD protocol parameter and timer. |
| **Step 2** | **debug bfd**  [echo|event|fsm|loopback|neighbor|nsm|packet]  **Example:**  Switch# **debug bfd packet** | Shows debugging information about BFD (optional). |

## BFD Configuration Samples

The section includes the following examples:

* Sample One: Configuring BFD in an OSPF Network
* Sample Two: Configuring BFD in an BGP Network
* Sample Three: Configuring BFD for static routing

### Sample One: Configuring BFD in an OSPF Network

This example describes the way of using BFD in an OSPF network. Let us assume the following network configuration:

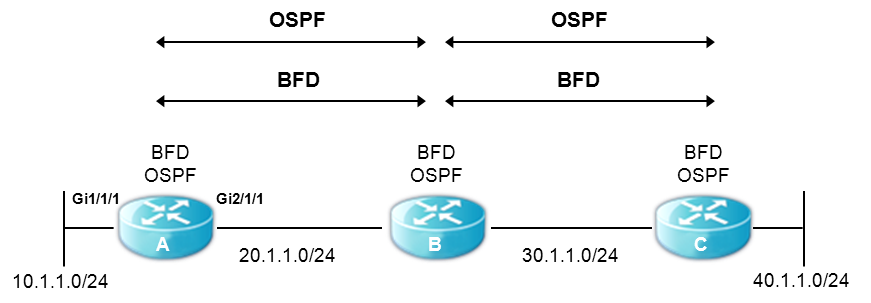


Figure 39 Configuring BFD in an OSPF Network

You must set BFD on OSPF interface. To set BFD on OSPF interface, do the following tasks:

* Set BFD on all OSPF interface.
* Set BFD on specific OSPF interface optionally.

#### Configuring BFD Support for OSPF for All Interfaces

To use BFD on all OSPF interface, do the following tasks:

Table 195 Configuring BFD in an OSPF Network

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Description** |
| **Step 1** | **Set OSPF.**  Switch\_A# **configure terminal**  Switch\_A(config)# **router ospf 100**  Switch\_A(config-router)# **network 10.1.1.0/24 area0**  Switch\_A(config-router)# **network 20.1.1.0/24 area0** |
| **Step 2** | **Sets BFD session parameter.**  Switch\_A# **configure terminal**  Switch\_A(config)# **interface gi7/1**  Switch\_A(config-if-Giga7/1)# **bfd interval 300 min\_rx 300 multiplier 3** |
| **Step 3** | Enables BFD on all OSPF interface.  Switch\_A# **configure terminal**  Switch\_A(config)# **router ospf**  Switch\_A(config-router)# **bfd all-interfaces** |
| **Step 4** | **Disables BFD session to interface not to connect with OSPF neighbor.**  Switch\_A# **configure terminal**  Switch\_A(config)# **interface gi6/1/1**  Switch\_A(config-if-Giga6/1/1)# **ip ospf bfd disable** |
| **Step 5** | **Shows BFD peer information.**  Switch\_A# **show bfd neighbors** |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | If you disable BFD at the specific interface only with being set the bfd all-interface status, use ip ospf bfd disablecommand. |

The configuration of the switch is as follows:

|  |
| --- |
| !  interface Giga6/1/1  ip address 10.1.1.1/24  ip ospf bfd diable  !  interface Giga7/1  ip address 20.1.1.1/24  bfd interval 300 min\_rx 300 multiplier 3  !  router ospf 100  network 10.1.1.0/24 area0  network 20.1.1.0/24 area0  bfd all-interfaces  ! |

#### Configuring BFD Support for OSPF for One or More Interfaces

To use BFD on specific OSPF interface, do the following tasks:

Table 196 BFD on specific OSPF interface

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Description** |
| Step 1 | **Sets OSPF**  Switch\_A# **configure terminal**  Switch\_A(config)# **router ospf 100**  Switch\_A(config-router)# **network 10.1.1.0/24 area0**  Switch\_A(config-router)# **network 20.1.1.0/24 area0** |
| Step 2 | **Sets Single hop BGP session and sets bfd session parameter.**  Switch\_A# **configure terminal**  Switch\_A(config)# **interface gi7/1**  Switch\_A(config-if-Giga7/1)# **bfd interval 300 min\_rx 300 multiplier 3** |
| Step 3 | Sets BFD on the specific OSPF interface.  Switch\_A# **configure terminal**  Switch\_A(config)# **interface gi7/1**  Switch\_A(config-if-Giga7/1)# **ip ospf bfd** |
| Step 4 | **Shows BFD peer information..**  **Shows BFD peer.**  Switch\_A# **show bfd neighbors** |

The configuration of switch is as follows:

|  |
| --- |
| !  interface Giga7/1  ip address 20.1.1.1/24  ip ospf bfd  bfd interval 300 min\_rx 300 multiplier 3  !  router ospf 100  network 10.1.1.0/24 area0  network 20.1.1.0/24 area0  ! |

### Sample Two: Configuring BFD in a BGP Network

The example below describes the way to use BFD in a BGP network.

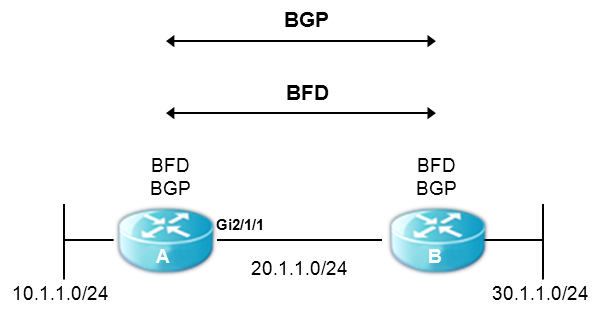


Figure 40 Configuring BFD in an BGP Network

You must configure BFD per each BGP neighbor. You set BGP to BGP neighbor and the ways setting BFD session parameter differ according to the following two cases.

* Configuring BFD Support for connected external BGP
* Configuring BFD Support for Multihop-External BGP and Internal BGP

#### Configuring BFD Support for connected external BGP

To use BFD about specific BGP peer on BGP, do the following tasks:

Table 197 Configuring BFD in an BGP Network

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Description** |
| Step 1 | Sets BGP.  Switch\_A# **configure terminal**  Switch\_A(config)# **router bgp 80**  Switch\_A(config-router)# **neighbor 20.1.1.81 remote-as 81** |
| Step 2 | Sets BFD to specific neighbor and session on BGP.  Switch\_A# **configure terminal**  Switch\_A(config)# **router bgp 80**  Switch\_A(config-router)# **neighbor 20.1.1.81 fall-over bfd** |
| Step 3 | **Enables Single hop BGP session and sets bfd session parameter.**  Switch\_A# **configure terminal**  Switch\_A(config)# **interface gi7/1**  Switch\_A(config-if-Giga7/1)# **bfd interval 300 min\_rx 300 multiplier 3** |
| Step 4 | **Shows BFD peer information.**  Switch\_A# **show bfd neighbors** |

The configuration of switch is as follows:

|  |
| --- |
| !  interface Giga7/1  ip address 20.1.1.1/24  bfd interval 300 min\_rx 300 multiplier 3  !  router bgp 80  neighbor 20.1.1.81 remote-as 81  neighbor 20.1.1.81 fall-over bfd  ! |

#### Configuring BFD Support for Internal BGP

To use BFD on internal BGP, do the following tasks:

Table 198 BFD on internal BGP

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Description** |
| Step 1 | **Sets Internal BGP.**  Switch\_A# **configure terminal**  Switch\_A(config)# **router bgp 80**  Switch\_A(config-router)# **neighbor 20.1.1.81 remote-as 80** |
| Step 2 | **Sets BGP to use BFD to session with specific neighbor.**  Switch\_A# **configure terminal**  Switch\_A(config)# **router bgp 80**  Switch\_A(config-router)# **neighbor 20.1.1.81 fall-over bfd** |
| Step 3  (Option) | **Sets Multihop bfd session parameter**  Switch\_A# **configure terminal**  Switch\_A(config)# **bfd multihop-peer 20.1.1.81 interval 900 min\_rx 500 multiplier 3** |
| Step 4 | **Shows BFD peer information.**  Switch\_A# **show bfd neighbors** |

The configuration of switch is as follows:

|  |
| --- |
| !  interface Giga7/1  ip address 20.1.1.1/24  !  bfd multihop-peer 20.1.1.81 interval 900 min\_rx 500 multiplier 3  !  router bgp 80  neighbor 20.1.1.81 remote-as 80  neighbor 20.1.1.81 fall-over bfd  ! |

### Sample Three: Configuring BFD for static routing

The example below describes the way of using BFD in the network using static routing:

.



Figure 41 Configuring BFD for static routing

If you use the BFD to check that the next-hop to specific static router is active, do the following tasks:

Table 199 Configuring BFD for static routing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Description** |
| Step 1 | Sets Static route.  Switch\_B# **configure terminal**  Switch\_B(config)# **ip route 35.1.1.0/24 10.1.1.254** |
| Step 2 | **Enables Single hop BGP session and sets bfd session parameter.**  Switch\_B# **configure terminal**  Switch\_B(config)# **interface gi7/1**  Switch\_B(config-if-Giga7/1)# **bfd interval 300 min\_rx 300 multiplier 3** |
| Step 3 | Enable BFD for failure detection with next hop of Static route.  Switch\_B# **configure terminal**  Switch\_B(config)# **ip route static bfd gi7/1 10.1.1.254** |
| Step 4 | **Shows BFD peer information.**  Switch\_B# **show bfd neighbors** |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | To make BFD session to be UP status, you must also set BFD on Switch A conneted with Switch B interface. |

The configuration of Switch\_B is as follows:

|  |
| --- |
| !  interface Giga7/1  ip address 10.1.1.1/24  bfd interval 300 min\_rx 300 multiplier 3  !  ip route 35.1.1.0/24 10.1.1.254  ip route static bfd gi7/1 10.1.1.254  ! |

# LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol)

This chapter describes how to configure IEEE 802.3ad Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) on the switch.

This chapter consists of the following sections:

* Understanding the Link Aggregation Control Protocol
* Configuring 802.3ad Link Aggregation Control Protocol and static link aggregation
* Displaying 802.3ad Statistics and Status

## Understanding Link Aggregation Control Protocol

Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) is part of an IEEE specification (802.3ad) that allows you to bundle several physical ports together to form a single logical channel. LACP allows a switch to negotiate an automatic bundle by sending LACP packets to the peer.

This chapter includes the following descriptions:

* LACP Concept
* LACP Modes
* LACP Parameters

### LACP Operation Principle

LACP is configured in both connected systems. So they exchange the LACPDU to decide the interface status and the link aggregation. The interface where LACP has been configured passes through various statuses through LACPDU. When the conditions of two systems match, link aggregation occurs. When LACP is configured, a logical interface is created. Any interface which receives LACPDU recognizes that LACP is configured in the connected system. The interface then checks its LACPDU transfer interval and sends LACPDU according to the interval. It then checks whether the information received through LACPDU is identical with the information that it has. If it is identical, it connects the physical interface to the logical interface.

### LACPDU Composition

LACPDU has the information of the opponent and the information of the interface that transfers the LACPDU. By using this information, each interface saves such information and compares it to that of the next LACPDU. The following table shows the information included in the LACPDU.

Table 200 LACPDU Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Field** | **description** |
| Actor\_System\_Priority | Priority configured to the system |
| Actor\_System | ID made by using the MAC and priority of the system |
| Actor\_Key | logical interface ID |
| Actor\_Port\_Priority | Port priority |
| Actor\_Port | Port index |
| Actor\_State | The value of the port status (in the unit of bit) |
| Partner\_System\_Priority | System priority of the opponent system |
| Partner\_System | System ID of the opponent system |
| Partner\_Key | ID of the logical interface of the opponent system |
| Partner\_Port\_Priority | Priority of the opponent port |
| Partner\_Port | Index of the opponent port |
| Partner\_State | Status of the opponent port |

### LACP Modes

The port group configuration of a C9500 can be done manually or automatically with IEEE 802.3ad LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol).

To configure a port group with LACP, use the active or passive mode. To start automatic port group configuration with LACP, at least one end of the link needs to be configured to active mode to initiate negotiating. This is due to ports in passive mode passively responding to initiation and never imitating the sending of LACP packets.

The following shows a possible mode in LACP:

Table 201 LACP Modes

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Mode** | **Description** |
| on | This mode do not create port group by LACP. It creates static port group. |
| passive | LACP mode that places a port into a passive negotiating state. The port responds to LACP packets only when it receives the LACP packets and does not start LACP packet negotiation first. |
| active | LACP mode that places the port into an active negotiating state, in which the port starts negotiations with other port by sending LACP packets. |

### LACP Parameters

The parameters used in configuring LACP are as follows:

* System Priority

System priority must be assigned in the switch that is running LACP. System priority can be configured automatically or through the CLI. System priority is used with the switch MAC address to form the system ID and is also used during negotiation with other systems.

* Port Priority

Port priority must be configured in each port of the switch automatically or through CLI. The port priority is used with the port number to form the port identifier. The port priority is used to decide which ports should be configured in standby mode when there is a hardware limitation that prevents all compatible ports from aggregating.

* Administrative key

Administrative key is assigned to each port of switch according to feature of port automatically. Administrative key feature are bandwidth, VLAN id, duplex, and mtu. In the case of the same value, the port can be a part of logical interface.

When LACP is enabled, LACP always attempts to aggregate the mamximum number of ports. If LACP is not able to aggregate all the ports that are compatible, then all the ports that cannot be aggregated are put in hot standby state and are used only if one of the port group ports fails.

## Configuring LACP and SLA

This section describes how to configure port group with LACP:

* Specifying the System Priority
* Specifying the Port Priority
* Specifying an Administrative Key Value
* Specifying the Timeout Value
* Configuration LACP and static port group
* Clearing LACP Statistics

### Specifying the System Priority

The system priority value should be an integer between 1 and 65535. The higher number represents a lower priority. The default priority is 32768.

To specify LACP system priority, follow the steps below from Privileged mode:

Table 202 Specifying the System Priority

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Step | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode |
| **Step2** | **lacp system-priority** *priority* | Specifies the system priority |
| **Step3** | **end** | Return the Privileged mode |
| **Step4** | **show lacp sys-id** | Checks the setting |
| **Step5** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Saves the setting in configuration file (optional) |

To return the system priority to a default setting, use global configuration command “no lacp system-priority”

This example shows how to specify the system priority as “20000”.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# lacp system-priority 20000  Switch(config)# **end** |

### Specifying the Port Priority

The port priority value should be an integer between 1 and 65535. The higher number represents a lower priority with the default priority being 32768.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Note** | Only the ports which belong to the Channel-group of LACP protocol can be configured for Port Priority. |

To specify the port priority, follow the step below from Privileged mode.

Table 203 Specifying the Timeout Value

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Step | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | To enter global configuration mode. |
| **Stpe2** | **interface** interface-id | To enter to interface configuration mode. |
| **Step3** | **lacp port-priority** *priority* | To specify the port priority |
| **Step4** | **end** | To return to Privileged mode |
| **Step5** | **show running-config** | To check the setting |
| **Step6** | **copy running-config startup-config** | To save the setting in configuration file (optional) |

To return the port priority to default setting, use interface configuration command “no lacp port-priority”

The following example shows how to set the port-priority of interface gi6/1 to 10:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# interface Giga6/1  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **lacp port-priority 10**  Switch(config)# **end** |

### Specifying the Timeout Value

LACPDU Timeout Value of port can be specified. The timeout value can be short (1sec) or long (30 sec).

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Note** | **LACP timeout** command affects to LACPDU sending period of the relative switch. |

To specify the timeout value, follow the steps below from the Privileged Mode:

Table 204 Specifying the Timeout Value

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Step | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | To enter global configuration mode |
| **Stpe2** | **interface** interface-id | Enter to interface configuration.mode. |
| **Step3** | **lacp timeout** {**short**|**long**} | To specify LACPDU Timeout |
| **Step4** | **end** | To return to Privileged mode |
| **Step5** | **show running-config** | To check the setting |
| **Step6** | **copy running-config startup-config** | To save the setting in configuration file (optional) |

To return the LACPDU Timeout as default, use Interface Configuration Command “nolacp timeout”.

The following example shows how to set the transmission interval of LACPDU that is connected to gi6/1 to short.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# interface Giga6/1  Switch(config-if- Giga6/1)# **lacp timeout short**  Switch(config)# **end** |

### 

### Configuring LACP and static port group

You can configure the interface of LACP mode.

To change the LACP mode, follow the steps below from the Privileged Mode.

Table 205 Configuration LACP and static port group

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Step | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode |
| **Stpe2** | **interface** interface-id | Enters the interface configuration mode. |
| **Step3** | **Channel-group** *po-id* **mode**  **{active|on|passive}** | Set port group mode.  active, passive: LACP mode  on: static port group |
| **Step4** | **end** | Return the Privileged mode |
| **Step5** | **show running-config** | Checks the setting |
| **Step6** | **copy running-config startup-config** | Saves the setting in configuration file (optional) |

This example shows how to set the interface giga 7/1 as a port-group 1 member.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# interface Giga7/1  Switch(config-if- Giga7/1)# channel-group 1 mode active  Switch(config)# **end** |

The following example shows how to create port-group by static mode rather than LACP.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# configure terminal  Switch(config)# interface Giga6/1  Switch(config-if- Giga6/1)# **channel-group 1 mode on**  Switch(config)# **end** |

### Clearing LACP Statistics

To clear/delete LACP statistics, follow the steps below from the privilege EXEC mode.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Step | **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **Step1** | **clear lacp** [aggregator-id] **counters** | Clears LACP statistics of the port group |
| **Stpe2** | **show lacp counters** | Checks the modification |

The following is an example of deleting LACP statistics of port group 1:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# clear lacp 1 counters |

## Displaying 802.3ad Statistics and Status

The C9500 provides various commands to show the information of all ports.

Table 206 Displaying 802.3ad Statistics and Status

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **show etherchannel** | Shows the information of port connected with port group. |
| **show etherchannel summary** | Shows the brief information of port connected with port group. |
| **show etherchannel detail** | Shows the detail information of port conneted with port group. |
| **show etherchannel load-balance** | Shows the information of load balance mode which are applied to port group. |

The following example shows how to show the information of the static port group:

|  |
| --- |
| shu#show etherchannel  Channel-group listing:  -----------------------  Group: 1  ----------  Group state = L2  Ports: 1 Max Maxports = 8  Port-channels: 1 Max Port-channels = 8  Protocol= -  shu#show etherchannel summary  Flags: D - down P - bundled in port-channel  I - stand-alone s - suspended  H - Hot-standby (LACP only)  R - Layer3 S - Layer2  U - in use f - failed to allocate aggregator  M - not in use, minimum links not met  u - unsuitable for bundling  w - waiting to be aggregated  Number of channel-groups in use: 1  Number of aggregators: 1  Group Port-channel Protocol Ports  ------+-------------+-----------+-----------------------------------------------  1 Po1(SD) - Gi6/1(D)  shu#show etherchannel detail  Channel-group listing:  -----------------------  Group: 1  ----------  Group state = L2  Ports: 1 Max Maxports = 8  Port-channels: 1 Max Port-channels = 8  Protocol= -  Ports in the group:  -------------------  Port: Gi6/1  ------------  Port state = Up Mstr In-Bndl  Channel group = 1 Mode = On Gcchange = -  Port-channel = Port-channel1 GC = - Pseudo port-channel= Port-channel1  Port index = 0 Load = 0xFF  Protocol = -  Age of the port in the current state: 0d:00h:00m:31s  Port-channels in the group:  ----------------------  Port-channel: Port-channel1  -----------------------  Age of the Port-channel = 0d:00h:05m:06s  Number of ports = 1  GC = 0x00000000 HotStandBy port= null  Port state = Up Mstr In-Bndl  Protocol = -  Ports in the Port-channel:  Index Load Port EC state No of bits  ------+------+------------+------------------+-----------  0 FF Gi6/1 On 4  Time since last port bundled: 0d:00h:00m:31s Giga6/1  Time since last port un-bundled: 0d:00h:00m:34s Giga6/1 |

To search/check LACP statistics, use the Privileged command **show lacp counters**.

To search/check LACP statistics of the specific port group, use the Privileged command **show lacp** *aggregator-id* **counters.**

To search/check LACP protocol information and status of switch, use the Privileged command **show lacp internal**. To search/check LACP protocol information and status of the relative switch, use the Privileged command **show lacp neighbor**.

# IP-OPTION

This chapter describes the IP-option of system.

IP option is the function to enable/disable the parameters related to attack prevention of the parameters under /proc/sys/net/ipv4 provided by linux kernel.

## IP OPTION Command Paremeters

The parameters that can be set by IP option command are as follows.

Table 207 IP OPTION command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | Description | Mode |
| ip option icmp-drop icmp-type  (any|<0-255>|echo-reqeust|echo-reply) length *<1-65535>* | Sets the icmp-type and packet size for blocking ICMP packets. | Config |
| no ip option icmp-drop | Disables ICMP packet blocking. | Config |
| ip icmp-ttl-exceed-send | Enables/Disables to send TTL Exceed ICMP errors.  **Default: send** | Config |
| no ip icmp-ttl-exceed-send | Disables to send TTL Exceed ICMP errors. | Config |
| ip option icmp-unreachable-send | Allows / blocks to send ICMP unreachable.  **Default: send** | Config |
| no ip option icmp-unreachable-send | Disable to send ICMP unreachable errors. | Config |
| ip option ip\_default\_ttl *VALUE* | Sets the Default TTL size.  **Default: 64** | Config |
| no ip option ip\_default\_ttl | Changes the Default TTL size to the default value. | Config |
| ip option ipfrag\_time *VALUE* | Sets the duration of IP fragment in the memory.  **Default: 30** | Config |
| no ip option ipfrag\_time | Changes the duration of IP fragment in the memory to the default value. | Config |
| ip option tcp-conn-rate-limit  profile-id *<1-128>* (any|*PORT*)  period *<1-3600>* count *<1-655535>* | Adds a TCP connection rate-limit profile. TCP connection trials to the TCP destination port within period for more than the count value can be logging or blocked. | Config |
| no ip option tcp-conn-rate-limit  profile-id *<1-128>* | Deletes the TCP connection rate-limit profile for the Profile-id. | Config |
| ip option tcp\_fin\_timeout *VALUE* | Sets the socket duration in FIN-WAIT-2 state.  **Default: 60** | Config |
| no ip option tcp\_fin\_timeout | Change the socket duration in FIN-WAIT-2 state to the default value. | Config |
| ip option tcp\_keepalive\_probes *VALUE* | Sets the number of keepalive probe message to generate by the time the connection is determined to be disconnected.  **Default: 9** | Config |
| no ip option tcp\_keepalive\_probes | Changes the number of Keepalive probe messages to the default value. | Config |
| ip option tcp\_keepalive\_time *VALUE* | Sets the keepalive message transmit time when Keepalive is activated,.  **Default: 7200** | Config |
| no ip option tcp\_keepalive\_time | Changes the Keepalive message transmit time to the default value. | Config |
| ip option tcp\_max\_syn\_backlog *VALUE* | Sets the maximum value of TCP syn backlog queue.  **Default: 1024** | Config |
| no ip option tcp\_max\_syn\_backlog | Changes the maximum value of TCP syn backlog queue to the default value. | Config |
| ip option tcp\_max\_tw\_buckets *VALUE* | Sets the number of Timewait sockets.  **Default: 18700** | Config |
| no ip option tcp\_max\_tw\_buckets | Changes the number of Timewait sockets to the default value. | Config |
| ip option tcp\_retries1 *VALUE* | Sets the number of retransmits for suspected TCP session.  **Default: 3** | Config |
| no ip option tcp\_retries1 | Changes the number of retransmits for suspected TCP session. | Config |
| ip option tcp\_retries2 *VALUE* | Sets the number of retransmits before termination.  **Default:15** | Config |
| no ip option tcp\_retries2 | Changes the number of retransmits before termination to the default value. | Config |
| ip option tcp\_syn\_retries *VALUE* | Sends the initialization SYN packet after the specified time for retransmission in active TCP connection.  **Default: 5** | Config |
| no ip option tcp\_syn\_retries | Changes the TCP syn re-transmission time to the default value. | Config |
| ip option tcp\_syncookies  (default|disable|enable) | Sets Syn flood attack defense.  **Default: enable** | Config |
| ip option Telnet-acl access-group <1-99> | Sets to allow/block Telnet from accessing to the access-groups. | Config |
| no ip option Telnet-acl acess-group  <1-99> | Disables Telnet access limit configuration by Access-group. | Config |

# VRRP (Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol)

This chapter describes the VRRP configuration of system.

Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) is a protocol that allows two or more routers to have the same virtual IP address to provide multiple access routes in the LAN, with one of the routers elected as a virtual router. VRRP router uses VRRP protocol to communicate with other routers connected to the LAN. If a router is elected as a master virtual router in VRRP configuration, the other routers will stand by as backup in case of any failure in the master virtual router.

## Information About VRRP

### VRRP Operation

There are several ways that a LAN client may choose to elect the first hop router for any specific destination. The client can use dynamic or static setting methods. The following example shows a dynamic election of router:

* Proxy ARP – The client uses Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) to get its own destination and the router will reply to the ARP request using its own MAC address.
* Routing protocol – The host makes its routing table with using update information of dynamic routing protocol.
* IRDP (ICMP Router Discovery Protocol) client – The client runs Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) router discover client.

If you use dynamic protocol, need to set about host and it occurs overhead by running protocol. Moreover, when router has trouble, the switching may be delayed to another router.

One of the alternatives to the dynamic protocol is to set a default router for the clients. This method is very simple in terms of client configuration and operation. But if there is any failure in the default gateway, the LAN client will be disconnected from the external network.

VRRP can solve static configuration problems. VRRP allows router groups to form a virtual router. LAN client elects the virtual router as its own default gateway. The virtual router standing for the router group is also called VRRP group.

The following figure describes the topology of LAN with VRRP set. In this example, the router A, B and C are the VRRP routers (VRRP running routers) that consists virtual routers. The IP address of the virtual router is set to the IP address same as that of the router A (10.0.0.1).

.

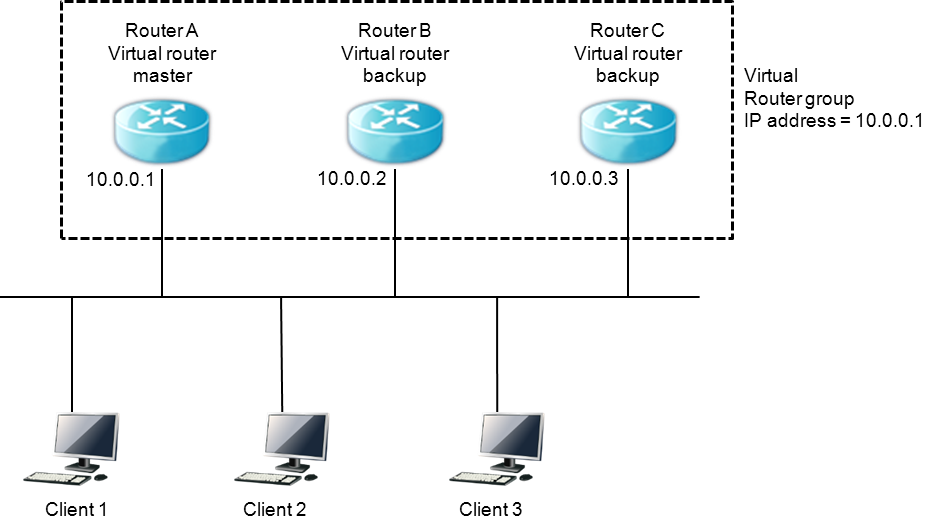


Figure 43 Basic VRRP Topology

Because the virtual router uses the physical address of the router A, router A takes the role of master virtual router and is called IP address owner. The router A, as the master virtual router, controls the IP address of the virtual router, and takes in charge of forwarding of packets forwarded to this IP address. Set the IP address of the default gateway to 10.0.0.1 for Client 1 through 3.

The router B and C work as backup virtual routers. If there is a failure in the master virtual router, the router with higher priority becomes the master virtual router to continue provision of services to the LAN hosts. If the router A is recovered from the failure, it becomes the master virtual router again.

The following figure shows the example in which the VRRP is set to make router A and router B share the traffic. Router A and router B work as backup virtual routers for each other.

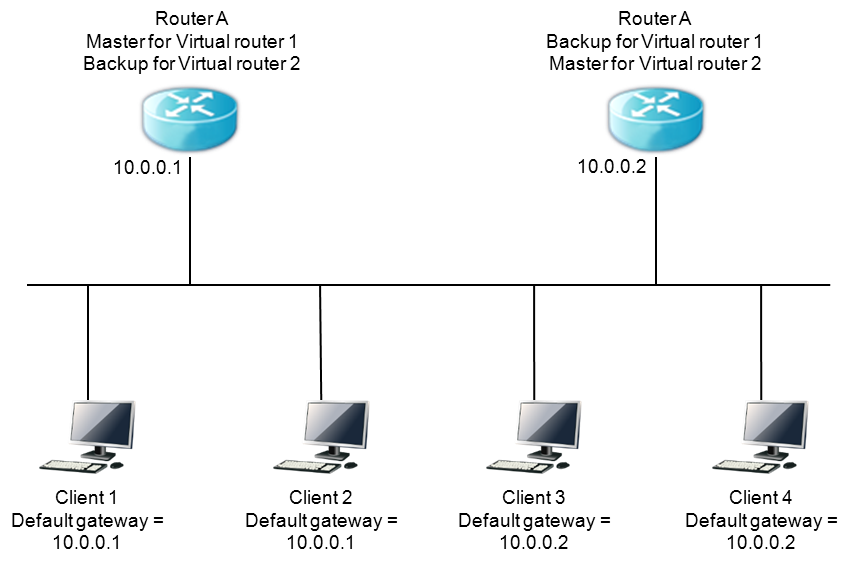


Figure 44 Load Sharing and Redundancy VRRP Topology

In this topology, two virtual routers are configured. In the virtual router 1, router A is the host of IP address 10.0.0.1 and the master virtual router, while router B is the backup virtual router for router A. Client 1 and 2 use 10.0.0.1 for the IP address of the default gateway.

In the virtual router 2, router B is the owner of IP address 10.0.0.2 and the master virtual router, and router A is a backup virtual router for router B. Client 3 and client 4 use 10.0.0.2 for the IP address of the default gateway.

### VRRP Benefits

#### Redundancy

VRRP enables you to set two or more routers as default gateway router. This decreases the risk of single point of failure in the network.

#### Load Sharing

VRRP can be set to make the traffic from LAN clients to be distributred to multiple routers. In this way, the load of traffics can be distributed to several routers.

#### Multiple Virtual Routers

VRRP supports up to 255 virtual routers (VRRP group). By supporting several virtual routers, it is possible to support redundancy and load sharing in the LAN configuration.

#### Preemption

The redundancy scheme of VRRP allows the router with higher priority, when it becomes available, to be elected as the master virtual router on behalf of other backup virtual routers.

#### Advertisement Protocol

VRRP uses exclusive Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) standard multicast address (224.0.0.18) for VRRP advertisement. IANA assigns the IP protocol No. 112 to VRRP.

#### VRRP Object Tracking

By changing VRRP priority according to status of interface or IP route, VRRP object Tracking supports that optimum VRRP router becomes master virtual router.

### Multiple Virtual Rouer Support

For single physical interface of a router, maximum 255 virtual routers can be set. The number of actual virtual routers that a router can support is affected by the following factors:

* Process capability of the router
* Memory capacity of the router
* Maximum number of MAC addresses that the interface of router can provide

### VRRP Router Priority and Preemption

One important factors in VRRP redundance function is VRRP router priority. If there is a failure in the master virtual router, the role of VRRP router is determined according to the priority.

If a VRRP router has the IP address of the virtual router as the IP address of its own physical interface, this router works as the master virtual router.

The priority becomes the basis for electing the master virtual router among the VRRP routers working as back virtual routers when there is a failure in the master virtual router. **vrrp priority** command can be used to set the priority of backup virtual routers in the range of 1 ~ 254.

For example, if there is a failure in router A, that is, the master virtual router in the LAN, alternative master virtual router should be elected among the backup virtual router B and C according to the election procedure. If the priority of router B and router C is set to 101 and 100 respectively, router B becomes the master virtual router since its priority is higher. If the priority of both router B and router C is set to 100, the backup virtual router with higher IP address will be elected as the master virtual router.

The preemptive scheme will be applied to allow the backup virtual router with higher priority to become the master virtual router. **no vrrp preempt** command can be used to bring preemptive scheme to an end. If Preemption is inactivated, the backup virtual router that has become the master virtual router continues to carry out the role of the master till the original master virtual router is recovered to become the master again.

### VRRP Advetisements

The master virtual router transmits the VRRP advertisement to other VRRP routers in the same group. In this Advertisement, the priority and status information of the master virtual router are included. VRRP advertisement is made in IP packet and transmited to the IPv4 multicast address assigned to the VRRP group. The advertisement is transmitted every second by Default, and the transmission interval can also be set.

### VRRP Object Tracking

Object tracking is an independent process that generates and monitors objects such as line-protocol status of the interface etc, and manages their removal. The clients like VRRPs register the objects to track their change status.

The object to be tracked has a unique number assigned by the tracking comman-line-interface (CLI). The client processes such as VRRP specify the object to track using this number.

In the Tracking process, the status of objects is checked periodically and any change in the status value is notified to the clients. The status value of objects is expressed either in up or down.

Throughout the tracking process, VRRP can track the status change of all the objects. Tracking process provides the function to track the status of each object such as line protocol status of the interface and reachability of the route etc.

Each VRRP group can track several objects affecting the priority of VRRP routers. If the number of object to track is specified, VRRP can detect the change status of the object. VRRP increases or decreases the priority value of the virtual router according to the status of object to track.

## How to Configure VRRP

This section covers the following procedures:

* Enabling VRRP
* Disabling VRRP on an Interface
* Configuring VRRP Object Tracking

### Enabling VRRP

To enable VRRP, do the following steps.

Table 208 Enabling VRRP

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**  **Example:**  Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters the Global configure mode |
| **Step 2** | **interface** *interface-name*  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **interface vlan1** | Enters the Interface configuration Mode |
| **Step 3** | **ip address** *ip-address/prefix-length*  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-vlan1)# **ip address 172.16.6.5/24** | set the IP address of interface |
| **Step 4** | **vrrp** *group* **ip address** *ip-address*  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-vlan1)# **vrrp 10 ip 172.16.6.5** | Enables VRRP on the interface  **Note:** All the routers in the VRRP group should be set to the same IP address. If other IP address is to be set, the routers in the VRRP group can’t communicate with each other, and the router with wrong configuration will work as the master by itself. |
| **Step 5** | **end**  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-vlan1)# **end** | Returns the Privileged mode |
| **Step 6** | **show vrrp** [**brief |** *group*]  **Example:**  Switch# **show vrrp 10** | (Option) Shows the status of VRRP group of the router |
| **Step 7** | **show vrrp interface** *interface-name* [**brief**]  **Example:**  Switch# **show vrrp interface vlan1** | (Option) Shows information of VRRP group set in a specific interface |

### Disabling VRRP on an Interface

It is possible to disable only the protocol operation while keeping VRRP settings, by disabling VRRP on the interface. Using **show** **running-config** command you can check the settings of VRRP group and whether or not VRRP is working.

Table 209 Disabling VRRP on an Interface

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**  **Example:**  Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters Global configure mode |
| **Step 2** | **interface** *interface-name*  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **interface *vlan1*** | Enters the Interface configuration mode |
| **Step 3** | **ip address** *ip-address/prefix-length*  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-vlan1**)# ip address 172.16.6.5/24** | set the IP address of interface |
| **Step 4** | **vrrp** *group* **shutdown**  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-vlan1)# **vrrp 10 shutdown** | To shutdown VRRP interface  **Note:** The VRRP can be disabled while VRRP settings are kept. |

### Configuring VRRP Object Tracking

To VRRP object tracking, follow the steps below.

If VRRP group is owner of IP address, the priority of VRRP group fixes 255. The priority does not change with circuit failover.

Table 210 Configuring VRRP Object Tracking

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**  **Example:**  Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters Global configure mode |
| **Step 2** | **track** *object-number* **interface** *interface-name* { **line-protocol | ip routing** }  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **track 2 interface vlan1 line-protocol** | Sets the interface that effect to priority of VRRP group with interface status  Use this command to set the interface.   * + **vrrp track** command, corresponding object number used.   + **line-protocol** keyword is to track whether the status of the interface is ‘up’ or not. **IP**   + **routing** key word is to track whether an IP address is set and the status of the interface is ‘up’.   **track ip route** command can be used to check the reachability of specific IP route. |
| **Step 3** | **interface** *interface-name*  **Example:**  Switch(config)# **interface vlan10** | Enters Interface configuration mode |
| **Step 4** | **ip address** *ip-address/prefix-length*  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-vlan10)# **ip address 10.0.1.1/24** | set the IP address of interface |
| **Step 5** | **vrrp** *group* **ip address** *ip-address*  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-vlan10)# **vrrp 10 ip 10.0.1.20** | To enable VRRP on the interface and set the IP address of the virtual router |
| **Step 6** | **vrrp** *group* **priority** *leve*  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-vlan10)# **vrrp 10 priority 120** | set the priority VRRP router |
| **Step 7** | **vrrp** *group* **track** *object-number* [**decrement** *priority*]  **Example:**  Switch(config-if-vlan10)# **vrrp 10 track 2 decrement 15** | To set VRRP to track the status of the objects. |

## Configuration Examples for VRRP

### Configuring VRRP: Example

In the following examples, switch A and switch B belong to 3 VRRP groups. The configuration of each group is as follows:

* Group 1:
* The virtual IP address is 10.1.0.10.
* The switch A becomes the master of this group, since its priority value is 120.
* Advertising interval is 3 seconds.
* Preemption is activated.
* Group 5:
* The switch B becomes the master of this group, since its priority value is 200.
* Advertising interval is 30 seconds.
* Perrmption is activated
* Group 100:
* The switch A becomes the master of this group, since it has highest IP address (10.1.0.2).
* The Advertising interval is 1 second by default.
* Preemption is inactivated.

|  |
| --- |
| **Router A**  interface vlan1  ip address 10.1.0.2/8  vrrp 1 priority 120  vrrp 1 timers advertise 3  vrrp 1 ip 10.1.0.10  vrrp 5 timer advertise 30  vrrp 5 ip 10.1.0.50  no vrrp 100 preempt  vrrp 100 ip 10.1.0.100  **Router B**  interface vlan1  ip address 10.1.0.1/8  vrrp 1 timers advertise 3  vrrp 1 ip 10.1.0.10  vrrp 5 priority 200  vrrp 5 timer advertise 30  vrrp 5 ip 10.1.0.50  no vrrp 100 preempt  vrrp 100 ip 10.1.0.100 |

### VRRP Object Tracking: Example

In the following examples, the tracking process is set to track the line protocol status of interface vlan10. VRRP on the interface vlan1 is registered to the tracking process to be able to get the information on changes of protocol status in the interface vlan10. If the line protocol status of interface vlan10 turns to down, the priority value of VRRP group decreases by 15.

|  |
| --- |
| track 1 interface vlan10 line-protocol  !  interface vlan1  ip address 10.0.0.2/8  vrrp 1 ip 10.0.0.3  vrrp 1 priority 120  vrrp 1 track 1 decrement 15 |

### VRRP Object Tracking Verification: Example

The following example is to track the settings made in “VRRP Object Tracking: Example” section.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show vrrp**  vlan1 – Group 1  State is Master  Virtual IP address is 10.0.0.3  Virtual MAC address is 0000.5e00.0101  Advertisement interval is 1 sec  Preemption is enabled  Priority is 105  Track object 1 state Down decrement 15  Master Router is 10.0.0.2 (local) priority is 105  Master Advertisement interval is 1 sec  Master Down interval is 3.531 sec  Switch# **show track**  Track 1  Interface vlan10 line-protocol  Line protocol is Down (hw down)  1 change, lasst change 00:06:53  Tracked by:  VRRP vlan1 1 |

### 

### Disabling a VRRP Group on an Interface: Example

The following example explains how to shutdown the VRRP group on interface vlan1 while keeping the settings of interface VRRP group.

|  |
| --- |
| interface vlan1  ip address 10.24.1.1/24  vrrp1 ip 10.24.1.254  vrrp 1 shutdown |

# NTP

This chapter describes the NTP configuration of the system.

C9500 provides time-of-day service. NTP (Network Time Protocol) synchronizes timekeeping among a set of distributed time servers and clients. This synchronization allows events to be correlated when system logs are created and other time-specific events occur.

## Understanding Time Sources

The system has two clocks. One is a hardware clock (Refer to “calendar” Command), which is maintained by the battery. The other is a software clock (Refer to “clock” Command). These two clocks are managed separately.

The default time source is the software clock. The software clock maintains the current time from the system’s start time. The software clock can be set from variable source and sent with various ways to another system. When system initializes or restarts, the software clock initializes with using the hardware clock. You can make changes by using the following sources:

* Network Time Protocol (NTP)
* Passive Setting (Hardware clock)

Software clock manages time information based on Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) or Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). You can set time zone and daylight savings time for supporting time information of the place where the system run in.

### Network Time Protocol

NTP (Network Time Protocol) synchronizes timekeeping among a set of distributed time servers and clients. This synchronization allows events to be correlated when system logs are created and other time-specific events occur.

### Hardware Clock

Even if the system is restarted or turned off, the system has hardware clock maintained by battery for maintaining current time. When the system is restarted, you use the hardware clock for initializing software clock.

## Configuring NTP

This chapter describes how to configure NTP with the following procedure:

* Configuring Poll-Based NTP Associations
* Configuring NTP Authetnication
* Configuring the Source IP Address for NTP Packets
* Configuring the System as an Authoritative NTP Server
* Updating the Hardware Clock

### Configuring Poll-Based NTP Associations

The network system using NTP provides various modes in order to synchronize between the time source and system clock. There are two ways for obtaining the time information from the network. One is a poll-based association from the host server and the other is by listening to NTP information from broadcast network. This section describes the server request mode from server.

The following modes are server request modes used by users:

* Client mode
* Symmetric active mode

In the case of client mode, the system researches time servers to gain current time information. The system synchronizes one of them. In this case, because the system and time servers are in a client and server relationship, the system does not use the time information sent from another-client’s equipment. This mode is useful for a system that does not provide time information to another local client. You can use ntp server command to set time for a server that you want to have time synchronized to client mode.

In the case of symmetric active mode, the system researches the time servers to gain current time information and provides time information to a local host. As this mode is peer- to-peer relation, the system also saves the time information of local network equipment on networking. This mode must use when mutual crossing servers exist via complex network path. Most stratum 1 and stratum 2 severs use this type of network setting. When you set symmetric active mode, use ntp peer command.

To decide NTP mode depend on equipment’s role (server or client) and statum 1 server setting.

Table 211 Setting NTP Server

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch(config)# **ntp server** *ip-adress* | Sets NTP with Client mode. |
| Switch(config)# **ntp peer** *ip-adress* | Sets NTP with Symmetric active |

### Configuring NTP Authentication

Before you use NTP, you must perform an authentication procedure. This procedure starts with creating an NTP packet.

After NTP authentication is set correctly, the system synchronizes a reliable time source and time. When you send or receive the encrypted NTP packet, use the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Table 212 Configuring NTP Authentication

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Command or Action** | **Purpose** |
| **Step 1** | **ntp authenticate** | Enables NTP authentication. |
| **Step 2** | **ntp athentication-key** *key-number*  **md5** *value* | Defines authentication key. |
| **Step 3** | **ntp trusted-key** *key-number* | Defines trusted-key.  If audentication key is trusted key, the system attempts to synchronize time with the system using this key in NTP packet. |
| **Step 4** | **ntp server** *ip-address* **key** *key-number* | Eables to synchronize software clock and NTP time server. |

### Configuring the Source IP Address for NTP Packets

When the system sends an NTP packet, the source IP address of the NTP packet is set with an interface address that sends an NTP packet. If you want to set a specific interface IP address, execute the following commands.

Table 213 Configuring the Source IP Address for NTP Packets

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **ntp source** *interface* | Assign interface to get ip address. |

### Configuring the System as an Authoritative NTP Server

When you synchronize the hardware clock with NTP time, execute the following commands in the config mode:

Table 214 Configuring the System as an Authoritative NTP Server

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **ntp master** [*stratum*] | Sets the system as NTP server. |

The system provides stratum 1 service. However, we do not recommend this service because there is no RF or atomic clock that can connect to this equipment.

### Updating the Hardware Clock

You can set to update hardware clock by software clock from equipment having hardware clock. We recommand the NTP because software clock is more accurate than a hardware clock.

When you synchronize the hardware clock with NTP time, execute the following commands in the config mode:

Table 215 Updating the Hardware Clock

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch(config)# **ntp update-calendar** | Sets update calendar with software clock periodically. |

## Configuring Time and Date Manually

If you do not have an available time source, you can set current time directly after system is booted.

### Configuring the Time Zone

When you set timezone information, execute the following commands in the config mode:

Table 216 Configuring the Time Zone

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch(config)# **clock timezone** *zone hours-offset* [*minutes-offset*] | Sets timezone.  Zone: name of timeband.  Minutes-offset: interval minutes with UTC. |

### Configuring Summer Time (Daylight Savings Time)

If you set daylight savings time, execute the following commands in the config mode:

Table 217 Configuring Summer Time (Daylight Savings Time)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch(config)# **clock summer-time** *zone* **recurring** [*week day month hh:mm week day month hh:mm* [offset]] | Sets recurring start and end summer time.  Offset: minute |

If daylight saving time does not repeat per every year, you can set the exact day when daylight saving time starts. The following command shows how to set it:

Table 218 Configuring Summer Time

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch(config)# **clock summer-time** *zone* **date** *month date year hh:mm month date year hh:mm* [offset]  or  Switch(config)# **clock summer-time** *zone* **date** *date onth date year hh:mm date month year hh:mm* [offset] | Sets specific start and end summer time.  Offset: minute |

### Manually Setting the Software Clock

If the system has hardware clock or synchronizes effective way like NTP, you do not need set software clock. If you have not useful time source, use the following command:

When you set software clock directly, use the following commands:

Table 219 Manually Setting the Software Clock

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch# **clock set** *hh:mm:ss day month year*  or  Switch# **clock set** *hh:mm:ss month day year* | Sets software clock. |

## Using the Hardware Clock

The system has a hardware clock. The hardware clock is a chip that has a chargeable battery. Even though you restart the system, the system can maintain the time information.

The software clock must receive the time information from reliable time source for maintaining exact time information. The software clock must update hardware clock time periodically while the system runs.

The following tasks are for setting hardware clock:

* Setting the Hardware Clock
* Setting the Software Clock from the Hardware Clock
* Setting the Hardware Clock from the Software Clock

### Setting the Hardware Clock

The hardware clock manages the time separately. The hardware clock runs continuously even if the system is restarted or turned off. The hardware clock is only set once when the system is set up.

If you have reliable external time source, you must not set the hardware clock directly. The time will synchronize with using NTP.

If you have no external time source, execute the following command in EXEC mode in order to set the hardware clock:

Table 220 Setting the Hardware Clock

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch# **calendar set** *hh:mm:ss day month year*  or  Switch# **calendar set** *hh:mm:ss month day year* | Sets Hardware Clock |

### Setting the Software Clock from the Hardware Clock

When you set software clock with new hardware clock setting, execute the following commands in EXEC mode:

Table 221 Setting the Software Clock from the Hardware Clock

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch# **clock read-calendar** | Sets software clock with hardware clock. |

### 

### Setting the Hardware Clock from the Software Clock

When you set hardware clock with new software clock setting, execute the following commands in EXEC mode:

Table 222 Setting the Hardware Clock from the Software Clock

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch# **clock update-calendar** | Sets hardware clock with softwareclock. |

## Monitoring Time and Calendar Services

When you show clock, calendar, and NTP information, use the following commands:

Table 223 Monitoring Time and Calendar Services

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| **show calendar** | Shows current hardware clock information. |
| **show clock** | Shows current software clock information. |
| **show ntp associations** [**detail**] | Shows NTP association status. |
| **show ntp status** | Shows ntp status. |

### Clock Calendar and NTP Configuration Examples

The system that has the hardware clock connects with two other server systems and updates the hardware clock periodically.

**clock timezone KST 9**

**ntp update-calendar**

**ntp server 192.168.13.57**

**ntp server 192.168.11.58**

# Dynamic ARP Inspection

This chapter describes the function of dynamic Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) inspection (DAI) which is used for inspecting ARP packet.

This chapter consists of the following sections:

* Understanding DAI
* Default DAI Configuration
* DAI Configuration Guidelines and Restrictions
* Configuring DAI
* DAI Configuration Samples

## Understanding DAI

This section describes the basic function of DAI and the method to protect the ARP spoofing attack by using of DAI function. This section comprises the following subsections:

* Understanding ARP
* Understanding ARP Spoofing Attacks
* Understanding DAI and ARP Spoofing Attacks
* Interface Trust States and Network Security
* Rate Limiting of ARP Packets
* Relative Priority of ARP ACLs and DHCP Snooping Entries
* Logging of Dropped Packets

### Understanding ARP

ARP allows correlating IP address and MAC address by putting into a mapping table so that IP communication can be conducted within Layer 2 broadcast domain. For example, when host B wants to transmit data to host A, let’s assume that there would be no registered MAC address of host A within the ARP table in host B.

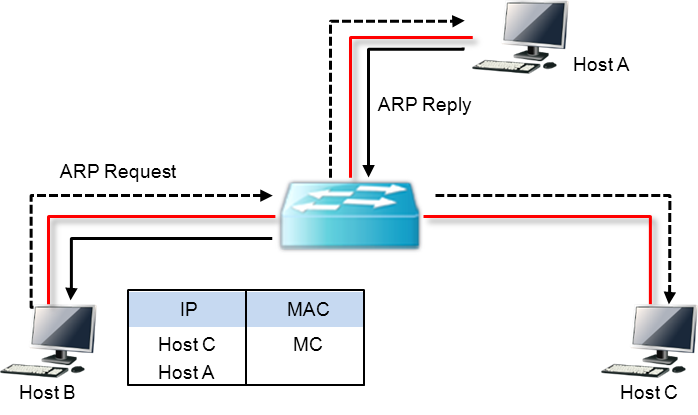


Figure 45 Understanding ARP

To find out the MAC address for host A’s IP address, host B sends out broadcast massage (ARP request) to all the hosts in the broadcast domain. Then all the hosts in the broadcast domain shall receive the ARP request which was sent by host B and host A will reply to this request with its MAC address.

### Understanding ARP Spoofing Attacks

ARP unintentionally gets to have ARP table changed by the gratuitous reply which is sent by a host who has not received ARP request. Due to this defect, the ARP spoofing attack or ARP cache poisoning might happen. After this attack, the traffic of the victimized switch shall be transferred to other routers, switches or hosts via the attacker’s computer.

ARP spoofing attack affects the ARP cache of the host, switch, or router which are connected in the Layer 2 network. It intercepts the traffic which is intended for other networks. The following figures show examples of ARP cache poisoning.

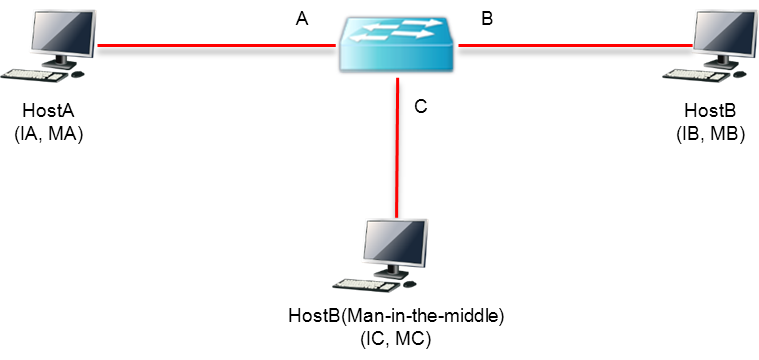


Figure 46 Understanding ARP Spoofing Attacks

Hosts A, B and C are interconnected through the interfaces A, B, and C of the switch centered in the picture, and they are all in same subnet. The IP address and MAC address are shown in parenthesis in the figure. For example, host A uses IP address, ‘IA’ and MAC address, ‘MA’. When host A needs to communicate with host B in IP layer, in order to know the related MAC address of IP address ‘IB’ it sends out ARP request in broadcast manner. If the switch and host B receive the ARP request, they update their ARP cache so as to replace the IP address IA and MAC address MA with latest values.

Host C may pollute the ARP cache of host A and host B by which it sends out broadcasted ARP response that includes the faked MAC address, ‘MC’ at here for IP address IA (or IB). The host that has a polluted ARP cache shall use the MAC address of MC as the destination for the traffic which is intended to be heading for IA or IB. This means that host C intercepts the traffic. Host C knows the genuine MAC address of IA and IB, it can forward the intercepted traffic by inserting the right MAC address to the originally targeted host. Thus host C is placed in between host A and host B, and this symptom is called as ‘*man-in-the middle* attack’.

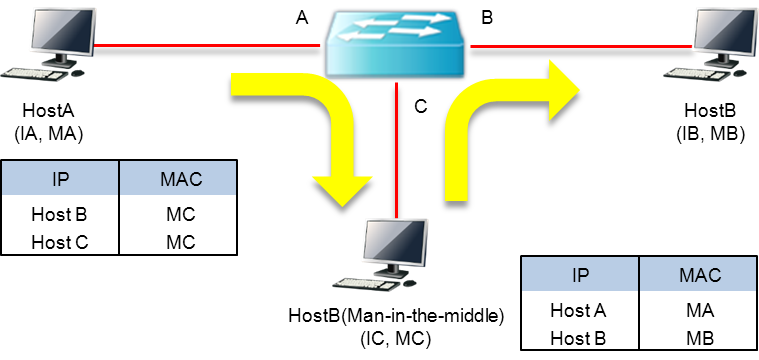


Figure 47 Understanding ARP Spoofing Attacks

### Understanding DAI and ARP Spoofing Attacks

DAI is a security function that is used to check out ARP packet. DAI inspects invalid IP-to-MAC address binding and drop the ARP packet after logging the relevant information. This feature protects the network from the man-in-the-middle attack.

DAI makes sure the ARP table be changed only by valid ARP request and response. The switch that is enabled for DAI function behaves as the following:

* Check out and inspect all ARP packets that come through the untrusted ports.
* Check out the received packets whether it has the valid IP-to-MAC address binding before updating its own ARP cache.
* Drop the invalid ARP packets.

When DAI checks out the validity of ARP packet, it utilizes the reliable data, which is an IP-to-MAC address binding stored in the DHCP snooping binding database.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Note** | When switch and VLAN are enabled for DHCP snooping, by DHCP snooping the DHCP snooping binding database is created. |

Switch behaves as the following, according to the characteristics of the interface which receives the ARP packet:

* Switch does not inspect the ARP packet that come through the trusted interface.
* Switch permits only the valid packets in case the packets have arrived through the untrusted interface.

DAI may use ARP access control lists (ACLs) which administrator has defined with respect to a host that has statically assigned IP address. The switch may leave a log for the discarded packets.

In the case of the following condition, DAI may be configured to discard ARP packets:

* When the IP address of the packets are invalid – for example 0.0.0.0, 255.255.255.255 or IP multicast address.
* When the MAC address in ARP packet body and the address of Ethernet header is not consistent.

### Interface Trust States and Network Security

DAI maintains the information of trust status of each interface in the switch. With respect to the packets that come through the trusted interface, DAI will not take any forms of DAI inspection. On the contrary, for the packets from untrusted interface, DAI inspection will duly take place.

In a typical network formation, the switch ports which are connected to a host are to be configured as ‘untrusted’ and the switch ports to another switch are to be configured as ‘trusted’. In this configuration, all the coming ARP packets into the switch will be inspected. No more validity inspections in VLAN or other network segment will be needed. To configuring trust setting, you can use the command IP arp inspection trust.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Caution** | For security check purpose, if you want to have the switch inspect all the ARP packets, a particular function is required. That is to say, DAI should be able to have the switch CPU get trapped so that unicast ARP packets to be forwarded through forwarding engine can be inspected. To enable the unicast ARP packets to be inspected, refer to the section ‘Enabling DAI on VLANs’ |

In the figure below, consider that the DAI would be enabled for the VLAN which contains host 1 and host 2 of switch A and switch B respectively. If host 1 and host 2 have been assigned IP address from the DHCP server that is connected to switch A, then only switch A has the IP-to-MAC address mapping information for host 1. Therefore, if the interface between switch A and switch B would be untrusted, then the ARP packet that host 1 has sent out will be discarded at switch B. Thus, host 1 and host 2 cannot communicate each other.

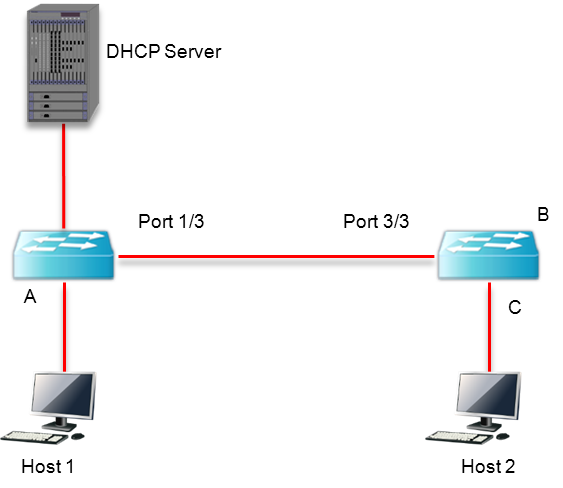


Figure 48 Interface Trust States and Network Security

If there would be any unreliable device within the network when an interface is set to be trusted, there could be a certain kinds of security defects. If DAI is not enabled in switch A, host 1 might pollute the ARP cache of switch B (and if the interface between the switches is set to trusted, then as many as including host 2). This kind of anomaly would happen even when DAI in switch B is in active.

A switch that is enabled to execute DAI prevents its connected hosts from polluting other host’s ARP cache. However, DAI is not able to prevent the unwanted pollution that might affect other hosts which are in DAI active.

In this case, you need to configure the interface between DAI-enabled switch and DAI-disabled switch to be untrusted. To make sure to inspect the packets from the DAI-disabled switch, you need to set the ARP ACLs in DAI-enabled switch. If this configuration would be unable to be set, you ought to separate switches as to whether it uses DAI or not.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Note** | C9500 support the DAI features that inspect all ARP packets. |

### Rate Limiting of ARP Packets

The DAI-enabled switch will control the number of ARP packets that come into the switch CPU. As a default value, with respect to untrusted interface, 15 ARP packets per second (15 pps) are allowed meanwhile there is no limitation on the rate for trusted interface. You can configure the setting by use of the command ip arp inspection limit.

If the rate of ARP packets at a specified port would be over the predefined value, the switch will discard all the received ARP packets at the port. This behavior shall be maintained until user would change the configuration. By use of the command ip arp inspection limit auto-recovery, you can make the port get back to available status after a certain amount of time.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Note** | The rate limit function toward ARP packets are performed at CPU in software manner, you cannot count on it for Denial-of-Service (DoS) attack. |

### 

### Relative Priority of ARP ACLs and DHCP Snooping Entries

When DAI checks out the IP-to-MAC address mapping, it used DHCP snooping binding database.

ARP ACLs are used for inspection before DHCP snooping binding database. The switch will use ACL only when it is configured by ip arp inspection filter command. The switch will inspect ARP packets with ARP ACLs. If the ARP packet is consistent with the deny condition of ARP ACLs, the packet will be discarded even when there is valid binding that has been made by valid DHCP snooping.

### Logging of Dropped Packets

The switch will keep the information about the discarded packets at log buffer and generate system message according to the ratio that has been set in advance. Once the message is generated, the corresponding information at the log buffer will be deleted. In each log there are the flow information including received VLAN id, port number, source and destination IP address, source and destination MAC address.

By use of global configuration command ip arp inspection log-buffer you can adjust the size of buffer and number of log per unit time so as to control the total volume of created messages. And with the global configuration command ip arp inspection VLAN logging you can specify the type of packets to log.

### Default DAI Configuration

The following table shows the default DAI configuration.

Table 224 Default DAI Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Feature** | **Default Setting** |
| DAI | Inactive for all VLAN. |
| Interface trust state | Untrusted for all interfaces. |
| Rate limit of incoming ARP packets | 15 pps for untrusted interfaces.  In the case of trusted interfaces, there is no limitation on rate.  Burst interval is 1 second.  The rate limit for interfaces has a disabled status. |
| ARP ACLs for non-DHCP environments | ARP ACLs is not defined. |
| Validation checks | No inspection is to be conducted. |
| Log buffer | When DAI is enabled, all ARP packet which is denied or dropped will be logged.  The number of log entry is 32.  The number of system message generated is 5 per second.  The period of logging-rate 1 second . |
| Per-VLAN logging | All ARP packets which are denied or dropped will be logged. |

## DAI Configuration Guidelines and Restriction

When DAI is configured, take care of the following points:

* DAI takes care of the ARP table only in the switch. As a better method to protect whole network, the trap function which will have ARP packet to be processed in CPU.
* DAI is intended to be used as an ingress security tool. You ought not to use it at an egress port.
* DAI is not effective for the hosts that are connected to the DAI-disenabled switch. As the man-in-the-middle attack is confined to a single Layer 2 broadcast domain, you ought to seperate a domain which adopts DAI from other domains which don’t use DAI. This will make sure that the ARP table of the switch that are in DAI activated domain.
* DAI uses the DHCP snooping binding database in order to check the IP-to-MAC address binding of the coming ARP request and ARP response packets. To allow the ARP packets which will have dynamically assigned IP address, you ought to activate DHCP snooping.
* If DHCP snooping is inactive or DHCP is not in use, then you can utilize ARP ACL to permit or deny packets.
* Configure the rate of ARP packets considering the characteristics of the port.

## Configuring DAI

In this section, the way to configure DAI is explained:

* Enabling DAI on VLANs (Mandatory)
* Configuring the DAI Interface Trust State (optional)
* Applying ARP ACLs for DAI Filtering (optional)
* Configuring ARP Packet Rate Limiting (optional)
* Enabling DAI Error-Disabled Recovery (optional)
* Enabling Additional Validation (optional)
* Configuring DAI Logging (optional)
* Displaying DAI Information

### Enabling DAI on VLANs

When DAI is enabled for a VLAN, the switch will inspect the ARP packets that come through the VLAN as following:

* Broadcasted ARP packet
* ARP request packets that ask for MAC address of switch
* Reply packets that answer to the requesting ARP request
* All unicast ARP packets that are transferred among terminals

After checking out these packets, it only replies the valid packets and updates the ARP table.

To enable DAI on a VLAN, execute the following commands.

Table 225 Enabling DAI on a VLAN

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch# **configure terminal** | Enter Global configuration mode |
| Switch(config)# **ip arp inspection VLAN** *VLAN-id*  Switch(config)# **no ip arp inspection VLAN** *VLAN-id* | Enables DAI on a VLAN  Enables DAI on a VLAN |
| Switch# **show ip arp inspection** | Checks the setting |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | When you enable DAI on a VLAN, all the ARP packets that flow through the VLAN will be inspected. In other words, the ARP cache of the switch and network are to be protected. |

The following example shows how to enable DAI on VLAN 200:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **ip arp inspection vlan 200** |

The following example shows how to retrieve current settings:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show ip arp inspection**  DHCP Snoop Bootstrap : Disabled  Source MAC Validation : Disabled  Destination MAC Validation : Disabled  IP Address Validation : Disabled  ARP Field Validation : Disabled  Vlan Config Operation ACL Match Static ACL ACL Log DHCP Log  ---- -------- --------- -------------------- ---------- --------- --------  200 Enabled Active No Deny Deny |

If the system uses DAI about unicast ARP packet, you must set a trap to send ARP packet to CPU with using class-map and policy-map.

The following example shows how to set received ARP packet on VLAN 200 to CPU.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch(config)#class-map arp\_trap\_class  Switch(config-cmap)#match ethertype 0806  Switch(config-cmap)#end  Switch#show class-map  CLASS-MAP-NAME: arp\_trap\_class (match-all)  Match Ethertype: 0806  Switch#config terminal  Switch(config)#policy-map arp\_trap\_map  Switch(config-pmap)#class arp\_trap\_class  Switch(config-pmap-c)#trap-cpu  Switch(config-pmap-c)#exit  Switch(config-pmap)#exit  Switch(config)#int vlan200  Switch(config-if-Vlan200)#service-policy input arp\_trap\_map  Switch#show policy-map  POLICY-MAP-NAME: arp\_trap\_map  State: attached  CLASS-MAP-NAME: arp\_trap \_class (match-all)  Trap-cpu  Switch#show service-policy  Interface Vlan200 : input dhcp\_user\_map |

### 

### Configuring the DAI Interface Trust State

Switch will not inspect the ARP packets that come from trusted interface.

The received ARP packets that come through the untrusted interface will be inspected to verify whether it has valid IP-to-MAC address mapping. Switch will discard invalid packets and save a packet log in log buffer by use of **ip arp inspection VLAN logging** command.

To configure the trust status of an interface, use the following commands:

Table 226 IP OPTION command

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch# **configure terminal** | To enter global configuration mode |
| Switch(config)# **interface** *ifname* | To specify the interfaces that are connected to other switched and also get in the mode of configuring interface. |
| Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip arp inspection trust**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **no ip arp inspection trust** | To configure the interface to be trusted (default: untrusted) |
| Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end** | To get back to Enable mode |
| Switch# **show ip arp inspection interfaces** | To check the setting |

The following example shows how to set Gigabit port 1/1 for trust.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **interface gi6/1**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip arp inspection trust**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Switch# **show ip arp inspection interfaces**  Interface Trust State Rate (pps) Burst Interval Auto Recovery  --------------- ----------- ---------- -------------- -------------  Giga6/1 Trusted None 1 Disabled |

### Applying ARP ACLs for DAI Filtering

To utilize ARP ACL feature, use the following commands.

Table 227 Applying ARP ACLs for DAI Filtering

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters the global configuration mode |
| Switch(config)# **ip arp inspection filter** *arp\_acl\_name* **VLAN** *VLAN-id* [**static**] | Enters apply ARP ACL to a VLAN |
| Switch(config)# **end** | Return the Enable mode. |
| Switch# **show ip arp inspection** | Shows the running information. |

When applying ARP ACL, please note the following points:

* To treat implicit deny of ARP ACL as explicit deny and discard packets not matching with any condition of ACL, use a static keyword. In this case, DHCP binding is not used. When the static keyword is not used, DHCP binding is used to determine whether to permit or deny for the packets with no matching condition in the ACL.
* Inspect only the ARP packets with IP-to-MAC address mapping using ACL. Only the packets permitted by Access List are permited.

The following example shows hot to apply the ARP ACL whose name is “example\_arp\_acl” to VLAN 200.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **ip arp inspection filter example\_arp\_acl vlan 200**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show ip arp inspection**  DHCP Snoop Bootstrap : Disabled  Source MAC Validation : Disabled  Destination MAC Validation : Disabled  IP Address Validation : Disabled  ARP Field Validation : Disabled  Vlan Config Operation ACL Match Static ACL ACL Log DHCP Log  ---- -------- --------- -------------------- ---------- --------- --------  200 Enabled Active example\_arp\_acl No Deny Deny |

### Configuring ARP Packet Rate Limiting

Once DAI is enabled then all ARP packets are to be inspected, which will take a lot of CPU capability. Then consequently the switch will be vulnerable to the DoS attack which mainly bombarded ARP packets. Thus by putting a certain amount of limitation on the CPU it can control the amount of ARP packets to be processed rate and lessen the burden of CPU.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Note** | The ARP rate limit that is provided by DAI is a software feature, so it cannot control the usage rate of CPU in direct measure. However by reducing the ARP packets which are to be handled by DAI, the CPU usage rate by DAI can be lowered. |

To set the rate limit upon ARP packets for a port, do the following steps:

Table 228 Configuring ARP Packet Rate Limiting

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode |
| Switch(config)# **interface** *ifname* | Specifys the interface that is connected to other switches and to enter interface configuration mode |
| Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip arp inspection limit** {**rate** *pps*[**burst interval** *seconds*] **| none**}  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **no ip arp inspection limit** | Sets ARP packet rate limit (optional)  To go back to default configuration |
| Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip arp inspection limit enable**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **no ip arp inspection limit enable** | To enable the ARP rate limit of an interface  To disable the ARP rate limit of an interface |
| Switch(config)# **end** | To go back to Enable mode |
| Switch# **show ip arp inspection interfaces** | To check the setting |

When you set the ARP packet rate limit, pay attention to the following items.

* Default value for untrusted interface is 15 pps (packet per second), and for trusted interface is no limitation at all.
* Rate is the upper limit value in terms of pps which may have between 0 to 2048.
* Rate none means there is no limitation on the rate of received ARP packets.
* Burst interval seconds (default is 1) is the time duration for which the system will watch to see if ARP packet rate is over the upper limit. Thus, if the value of rate is reached during the time lapse of burst interval, then the incoming ARP packets will be restricted. The range is 1 ~ 15 (optional).
* If the incoming ARP packet rate is over the predefined value, the switch will discard all the received ARP packets at the port. This setting will be maintained until the operator would change the setting.
* While the rate-limit of an interface is not changed, if the trust status of an interface is changed, then the default value of the rate-limit of an interface will be changed. Once rate-limit value is changed, then even though the trust status would be changed, the configured value will be maintained. By use of the command no ip arp inspection limit the rate-limit of an interface will be returned to default value.
* After configuring by use of the command ip arp inspection limit enable the rate limit for ARP packet will be activated.

The following example shows how to configure ARP packet rate limit upon gi1/1.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **interface gi6/1**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip arp inspection limit rate 20 burst interval 2**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip arp inspection limit enable**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Switch# **show ip arp inspection interfaces**  Interface Trust State Rate (pps) Burst Interval Auto Recovery  --------------- ----------- ---------- -------------- -------------  Giga6/1 Untrusted 20 2 Disabled |

### Enabling DAI Error-Disabled Recovery

Use the following steps in order to restore the restricted port, which has been restricted due to the rate limit for ARP packets, to normal.

Table 229 Enabling DAI Error-Disabled Recovery

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch# **configure terminal** | Enter global configuration mode |
| Switch(config)# **interface** *ifname* | Specifys the interface that is connected to other switches and to enter interface configuration mode |
| Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip arp inspection limit auto-recovery** *seconds*  Switch(config)# **no ip arp inspection limit auto-recovery** | Enables the automatic recovery function (optional)  To disable the automatic recovery function |
| Switch(config)# **end** | Return the enable mode |
| Switch# **show ip arp inspection interfaces** | Checks the settings |

The following example shows the setting of recovering after 10 seconds automatically when ARP packet receiving on interface of gi 1/1 is disconnected by ARP rate limit.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **interface gi6/1**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip arp inspection limit auto-recovery 10**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **ip arp inspection limit enable**  Switch(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Switch# **show ip arp inspection interfaces**  Interface Trust State Rate (pps) Burst Interval Auto Recovery  --------------- ----------- ---------- -------------- -------------  Gi6/1 Untrusted 20 2 10  Gi6/2 Untrusted 15 1 Disabled |

### Enabling Additional Validation

DAI can verify the validity of ARP packet’s destination MAC address, sender and target IP address, source MAC address.

Use the following steps for validity check for IP address or MAC address.

Table 230 Enabling Additional Validation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode |
| Switch(config)# **ip arp inspection validate** {**dst-mac** | **ip** | **src-mac**}  Switch(config)# **no ip arp inspection validate** {**dst-mac** | **ip** | **src-mac**} | Enables additional validation test (optional)  (default: none)  Disables additional validation test |
| Switch(config)# **end** | Goes back to enable mode |
| Switch# **show ip arp inspection** | Checks the setting |

To enable the validation test, pay attention to the following items.

* At least one keyword among options should be used.
* Each ip arp inspection validate command nullify the former command. If, ip arp inspection validate command has enabled src-mac and dst-mac inspection first, and then the second command ip arp inspection validate enables only ip inspection, then the src-mac and dst-mac inspection will be disabled and only the ip inspection will be in its effect.
* Additional validation tests according to command arguments are as below :

**dst-mac** – With respect to the ARP response packet, it makes comparison between the destination MAC address in Ethernet header and the target MAC address in ARP body.

**ip** – It checks out the invalid IP address in ARP body. Thus addresses like 0.0.0.0 or 255.255.255.255 or multicast IP address will be discarded. It also verifies the sender IP address of ARP request and the sender/target IP address of ARP response.

**src-mac** – With respect to all ARP packets, it makes comparison between the source MAC address in Ethernet header and the sender MAC address in ARP body.

The following example shows how to enable the additive validity inspection as to the command argument ‘src-mac’:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **ip arp inspection validate src-mac**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show ip arp inspection**  DHCP Snoop Bootstrap : Disabled  Source MAC Validation : Enabled  Destination MAC Validation : Disabled  IP Address Validation : Disabled  ARP Field Validation : Disabled  Vlan Config Operation ACL Match Static ACL ACL Log DHCP Log  ---- -------- --------- -------------------- ---------- --------- --------  200 Enabled Active No Deny Deny |

The following example shows how to enable the additive validity inspection as to the command argument dst-mac.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **ip arp inspection validate dst-mac**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show ip arp inspection**  DHCP Snoop Bootstrap : Disabled  Source MAC Validation : Disabled  Destination MAC Validation : Enabled  IP Address Validation : Disabled  ARP Field Validation : Disabled  Vlan Config Operation ACL Match Static ACL ACL Log DHCP Log  ---- -------- --------- -------------------- ---------- --------- --------  200 Enabled Active No Deny Deny |

The following example shows how to enable additional validation test as to command argument ip:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **ip arp inspection validate ip**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show ip arp inspection**  DHCP Snoop Bootstrap : Disabled  Source MAC Validation : Disabled  Destination MAC Validation : Disabled  IP Address Validation : Enabled  ARP Field Validation : Disabled  Vlan Config Operation ACL Match Static ACL ACL Log DHCP Log  ---- -------- --------- -------------------- ---------- --------- --------  200 Enabled Active No Deny Deny |

The following example shows to enable the additional validation test as to the command arguments src-mac and dst-mac:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **ip arp inspection validate dst-mac src-mac**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show ip arp inspection**  DHCP Snoop Bootstrap : Disabled  Source MAC Validation : Enabled  Destination MAC Validation : Enabled  IP Address Validation : Disabled  ARP Field Validation : Disabled  Vlan Config Operation ACL Match Static ACL ACL Log DHCP Log  ---- -------- --------- -------------------- ---------- --------- --------  200 Enabled Active No Deny Deny |

## Configuring DAI Logging

This section explains on DAI logging.

* DAI Logging Overview
* Configuring the DAI Logging Buffer Size
* Configuring the DAI Logging System Messages
* Configuring DAI Log Filtering

### DAI Logging Overview

Switch saves information about the discarded packets into log buffer and generates a system message according to the pre-configured generation rate. Once the message is generated, relevant information in the log buffer shall be deleted. Each log has the flow information: such as a received VLAN id, port number, source and destination IP address, source and destination MAC address.

A log buffer entry can hold information of more than one packet. For example if a VLAN receives packets with ARP parameters through the same interface, DAI will create a log buffer entry for these packets and generate one system message.

### Configuring the DAI Logging Buffer Size

Use the following commands in order to adjust the size of DAI log buffer:

Table 231 Configuring the DAI Logging Buffer Size

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode |
| Switch(config)# **ip arp inspection log-buffer entries** *number*  Switch(config)# **no ip arp inspection log-buffer entries** | Sets the size of DAI log buffer (range: 0~ 1024)  Returns to the default, 32 |
| Switch(config)# **end** | Returns to enable mode |
| Switch# **show ip arp inspection log** | Checks the setting |

The following example shows how to set the size of log buffer of DAI to be 64:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **ip arp inspection log-buffer entries 64**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show ip arp inspection log**  Total Log Buffer Size: 32  Syslog rate : 5 entries per 1 seconds.  No entries in log buffer. |

### Configuring the DAI Logging System Messages

To configure the log message that DAL generates, use the following commands:

Table 232 Configuring the DAI Logging System Messages

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode |
| Switch(config)# **ip arp inspection log-buffer logs** *number\_of\_messges* **interval** *length\_in\_seconds*  Switch(config)# **no ip arp inspection log-buffer logs** | Configures the DAI log buffer  Returns to default |
| Switch(config)# **end** | Returns to enable mode |
| Switch# **show ip arp inspection log** | Checks out the setting |

You must pay attention to the following when you configure the logging system message of DAI:

* As to ‘logs number\_of\_messges’ (default: 5): the range is from 0 to 1024. If it is set to be 0, then log message will not be generated.
* As to ‘interval length\_in\_seconds’ (default: 1): the range is from 0 to 86400 (one day). If it is set to be 0, then a log message will be generated immediately. That means that the log buffer is constantly empty.
* The system log message shall be generated in the ratio of ‘number\_of\_messages’ times per ‘length\_in\_seconds’ duration.

The following example shows how to configure the system to generate 12 DAI log messages every 2 seconds:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **ip arp inspection log-buffer logs 12 interval 2**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show ip arp inspection log**  Total Log Buffer Size: 32  Syslog rate : 12 entries per 2 seconds.  No entries in log buffer. |

### Configuring the DAI Log Filtering

After an inspection of ARP packets you can selectively generate the system message according to the result.

Use the following commands in order to configure the log filtering of DAI:

Table 233 Configuring the DAI Log Filtering

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Purpose** |
| Switch# **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode |
| Switch(config)# **ip arp inspection VLAN** *VLAN-id* {**acl-match** {**matchlog** | **none**} | **dhcp-bindings** {**all** | **none** | **permit**}} | Applies log filtering to each VLAN |
| Switch(config)# **end** | Return to enable mode |
| Switch# **show running-config** | Check out the setting |

You must pay attention to the following items setting the logging system message of DAI.

* All denied packets will be logged as default.
* acl-match matchlog - it makes logging work based upon ACL setting. If ‘matchlog’ is specified and ‘log’ keyword is used in the permit or deny command of ARP access-list configuration, the ARP packets that are permitted or denied by ACL will be logged.
* acl-match none - it will NOT log for the packets that are consistent with ACL.
* dhcp-bindings all - it will do log for the packets that are consistent with DHCP binding.
* dhcp-bindings none - it will NOT log for the packets that are consistent with DHCP binding.
* dhcp-bindings permit - it will do log for the packets that are allowed by DHCP binding

The following example shows how to configure the system not to generate log message for the packets that are consistent with ACL:

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **ip arp inspection vlan 200 logging acl-match none**  Switch(config)# **end**  Switch# **show ip arp inspection**  DHCP Snoop Bootstrap : Disabled  Source MAC Validation : Disabled  Destination MAC Validation : Disabled  IP Address Validation : Disabled  ARP Field Validation : Disabled  Vlan Config Operation ACL Match Static ACL ACL Log DHCP Log  ---- -------- --------- -------------------- ---------- --------- --------  200 Enabled Active No None Deny |

### Displaying DAI Information

To retrieve information, use the following commands:

Table 234 Displaying DAI Information

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Description** |
| **show arp access-list** | Shows the information of ARP ACL. |
| **show ip arp inspection interfaces** | Shows the trust status of the interface. |
| **show ip arp inspection VLAN** [*VLAN-id*] | Shows the DAI configuration and its behavior of a VLAN. |
| **show ip arp inspection arp-rate** | Shows the rate of ARP packet reception in the interface. |

To retrieve or initialize DAI statistics, use the following commands.

Table 235 Initialize DAI Statistics

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Description** |
| **clear ip arp inspection statistics** | To initialize DAI statistics |
| **show ip arp inspection statistics** [**VLAN** *VLAN-id*] | To display the DAI statistics of ARP packets |

To show or initialize the DAI logging information, use the following commands:

Table 236 Initialize the DAI logging information

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Description** |
| **clear ip arp inspection log** | To initialize DAI log buffer |
| **show ip arp inspection log** | To display the configuration and contents of DAI log buffer |

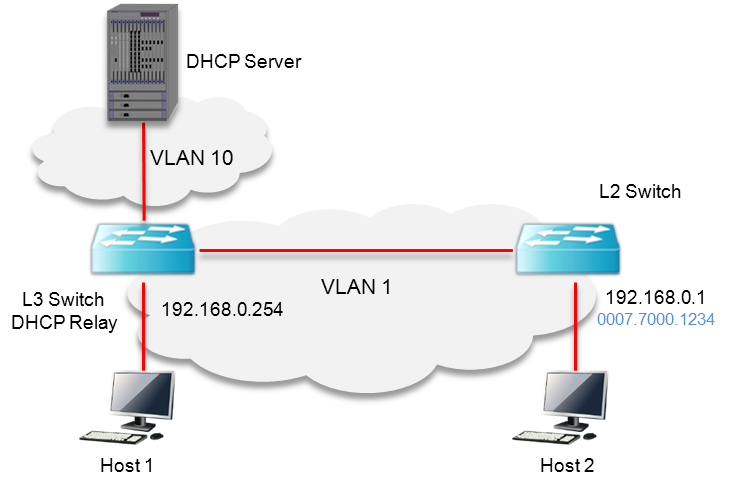
## DAI Configuration Samples

This section includes the following examples:

* Sample One: Interoperate with DHCP Relay
* Sample Two: Interoperate with DHCP Server

### Sample: Interoperate with DHCP Relay

This example explains how you can configure DAI upon a switch that uses DHCP snoop function. Consider the network in the figure below:



L3 switch relays DHCP message to DHCP server via VLAN 10 and connects with host or L2 switch.

The L2 switch connected to L3 switch uses static ip address. The host 1 and host 2 is assigned via DHCP. All switchs and hosts also place with VLAN 1.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Note** | The DAI in this configuration depends on DHCP snooping binding information about IP-to-MAC binding information. Refer to DHCP snooping chapter about DHCP snooping configuration. |

To use DAI on a switch that is enabled for DHCP relay function, do the following steps.

Table 237 DAI Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Step** | **Descripiton** |
| **Step 1** | Enables DHCP relay function.  Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **ip dhcp helper-address 10.1.1.1**  Switch(config)# **service dhcp relay** |
| **Step 2** | To configure IP-to-MAC binding information of host assigned IP from DHCP, enable DHCP snooping within VLAN 10 to build up the IP-to-MAC binding information of a host.  Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **ip dhcp snooping VLAN 1**  Switch(config)# **ip dhcp snooping VLAN 10**  Switch(config)# **ip dhcp snooping** |
| **Step 3** | To permit ARP packet of switch using static ip, set ARP ACL.  Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **arp access-list permit-switch**  Switch(config-arp-nacl)# **permit ip host 192.168.0.1 mac host 0007.7000.1234**  Switch(config-arp-nacl)# **exit**  Switch(config)# **ip arp inspection filter permit-switch VLAN 1**  Switch(config)# **end**  To see if the configuration has been set correctly.  Switch# **show ip arp inspection VLAN 1** |
| **Step 4** | Enables DAI to VLAN1 connected with host.  Switch# **configure terminal**  Switch(config)# **ip arp inspection VLAN 1**  Switch(config)# **end**  To see if the configuration has been set correctly.  Switch# **show ip arp inspection VLAN 1** |

The setting of L3 switch is as follows:

|  |
| --- |
| !  arp access-list permit-switch  permit ip host 192.168.0.1 mac host 0007.7000.1234  !  ip arp inspection vlan 1  ip arp inspection filter permit-switch vlan 1  !  ip dhcp helper-address 10.1.1.1  service dhcp relay  !  ip dhcp snooping vlan 1  ip dhcp snooping vlan 10  ip dhcp snooping  ! |

# Qos and ACL

This chapter describes the QoS configuration and the ACL of system.

## QOS

### Global Configuration

Use the following commands to enable QOS global.

Table 238 QOS Global Configuration Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | Description | Mode |
| **mls qos** | Enables QOS global configuration | Config |
| **no mls qos** | Disables QOS global configuration | Config |
| **show mls qos** | Searches the status of QOS global configuration | Privileged |

All QOS-related settings of a C9500 work only under global configuration. Most QOS-related commands are not possible to set if Mls qos is not enabled.

### TX Scheduling Configuration

C9500 provides SPQ (Strict Priority Queue) and WRR (Weighted Round Robin) for scheduling. These two ways can be used together.

The WRR provided by C9500 is SDWRR (Shaped Deficit Weighted Round Robin) method. DWRR operates as WRR, but has additional feature of managing quota. It controls the amount of incoming data that come regularly and those are burst in. Another feature, shaping, is added to SDWRR in order to reduce latency of data flow.

When weights are given to 2 queues at the ratio of 5:3, WRR (or DWRR) allocates queues in order of 1,1,1,1,1,0,0,0,1,1,1,1,1,0,0,0. On the other hand, SDWRR allocates queues in order of 1,0,1,0,1,0,1,1,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,1 and controls the amount of packets and reduces the latency of traffic.

Each port has 8 queues: Queue 7 has the highest priority, and Queue 0 has the lowest priority.

The following table shows an example about scheduling per queue.

Table 239 TX Scheduling Configuration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Queue** | **Description** |
| Queue 7 | SPQ |
| Queue 6 | SPQ |
| Queue 5 | WRR (30) |
| Queue 4 | WRR (30) |
| Queue 3 | WRR (20) |
| Queue 2 | WRR (10) |
| Queue 1 | WRR (10) |
| Queue 0 | SPQ |

* Q7 and Q6 are set for SPQ. Q7 will be treated as the highest priority because it is the first in order and is SPQ at the same time. Then Q6 will be treated the next.
* Q5,4,3,2,1 are set for WRR and their respective weight is assigned as 30:30:20:10:10. The priority of WRR is lower than that of SPQ.
* Although Q0 is pronounced as SPQ it has the lowest priority. So it will be processes after all the other queues, i.e. from Q7 to Q1 have been done.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | It is not recommended that SPQ is used in-between WRR groups or among lower priority queues. If that is the case, the actual scheduling would not work out as configured. |

In the scheduling setting, it first generates a mapping table then applies to a port. It can apply seven maps to each module.

In fact, it can apply eight maps in total, but queue 0 is used as the default SPQ and it cannot be changed. Therefore you can manage only seven of them.

Table 240 Tx-scheduling map Configuration Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | Description | Mode |
| **mls qos map tx-scheduling NAME queueing-method <0-7> (strict|wrr1|wrr2)** | Sets the queueing-method of nth queue of the mapping table. When no mapping table, it generates a new one. | Config |
| **mls qos map tx-scheduling NAME queueing-method <0-7> (wrr1|wrr2) <1-100>** | When setting wrr1 or wrr2, you can set WRR weights simultaneously. (Default: 1) | Config |
| **mls qos map tx-scheduling NAME wrr-weight <0-7> <1-100>** | Sets the weight for WRR of the selected queue. | Config |
| **no mls qos map tx-scheduling NAME queueing-method <0-7>** | Disables the queueing-method of the queue. Then it changes into the default, strict. | Config |
| **no mls qos map tx-scheduling NAME wrr-weight <0-7>** | Disables the weight of the queue that is set for WRR. (Default :1) | Config |
| **no mls qos map tx-scheduling NAME** | Deletes mapping table with the relevant name. | Config |
| **show mls qos map tx-scheduling** | Displays configuration of Tx-scheduling. | Privileged |

Set a mapping table of tx-scheduling to a designated port using the following settings:

Table 241 Tx-scheduling Configuration Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | Description | Mode |
| **mls qos tx-scheduling NAME** | Sets a mapping table to a relevant port interface with the correct name | Interface |
| **no mls qos tx-scheduling NAME** | Disables the mapping table with the name from the port interface. | Interface |

### Port trust mode

To carry out QOS of traffic leaded into a port, it is designed to check out COS of a packet or the value of DSCP first, and then organize the priority based on the figures found. However you need to determine whether the values of COS and DSCP can be trusted.

With no configuration, it does not refer to COS or DSCP, and operates by the default COS value. The default COS is used for packets with no COS or DSCP (e.g. untagged packet) to define the basic operation.

You can set “trust mode” to either COS or DSCP or neither.

* When a packet has a DSCP value and is in Trust DSCP mode, then use this.
* When a packet has a COS value and is in trust COS mode, then use this.
* When a packet has no COS and is in trust COS, then use the default COS value which is set for the port.
* In other cases, use default COS value.

When a packet has a DSCP and is in trust DSCP mode, it operates QOS based on DSCP. Otherwise, it operates QOS based on COS.

Table 242 port trust Configuration Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | Description | Mode |
| **mls qos trust (cos|dscp|both)** | Sets a port interface for the trust mode. | Interface |
| **no mls qos trust** | Disables the interface set for trust mode.  Then it will be set as none. | Interface |
| **mls qos cos** *<0-7>* | Sets the default COS value of a port. | Interface |
| **no mls qos cos** | Disables the default COS value of a port. | Interface |

### DSCP Conversion Map Configuration

When a packet is carried out by DSCP as a standard in Trust DSCP mode, the packet will be operated as follows.

* Queueing operation by DSCP value
* COS marking (or remarking) operation by DSCP value
* DSCP remarking operation by DSCP value

#### DSCP to COS Configuration

A packet can be carried out COS marking (or remarking) operation depending on DSCP values. This can be set as “enable” or “disable”, and the default is “disable”. For this operation DSCP to COS map is maintained with the global setting.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show mls qos map dscp-cos  DSCP-TO-COS MAP  d1 : d2 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9  -------------------------------------------------  0 : 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1  1 : 1 1 1 1 1 1 2 2 2 2  2 : 2 2 2 2 3 3 3 3 3 3  3 : 3 3 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4  4 : 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 6 6  5 : 6 6 6 6 6 6 7 7 7 7  6 : 7 7 7 7 |

Table 243 dscp-cos map Configuration Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | Description | Mode |
| **mls qos map dscp-cos <0-63> … <0-63> to <0-7>** | Set Dscp-cos map. | Config |
| **no mls qos map dscp-cos** | Initialize Dscp-cos map. | Config |
| **mls qos dscp-cos** | Configure the port interface to set dscp-cos. | Interface |
| **no mls qos dscp-cos** | Configure the port interface not to set dscp-cos. | Interface |
| **show mls qos map dscp-cos** | Display the current dscp-cos map setting. | Privileged |

#### DSCP to DSCP Configuration

A packet can be carried out DSCP remarking operation depending on DSCP values. This is called “mutation” because it changes DSCP of itself. Each port can be set as enable/disable, and the default is “disable”. For this operation DSCP to DSCP map is maintained the global setting. The default is 1:1. Change the map to apply to the port interface before use.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show mls qos map dscp-mutation  DSCP MUTATION MAP  d1 : d2 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9  -------------------------------------------------  0 : 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9  1 : 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19  2 : 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29  3 : 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39  4 : 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49  5 : 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59  6 : 60 61 62 63 |

Table 244 dscp-mutation map Setting

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | Description | Mode |
| **mls qos map dscp-mutation <0-63> … <0-63> to <0-63>** | Set Dscp-mutation map. | Config |
| **no mls qos map dscp-mutation** | Initialize Dscp-mutation map. | config |
| **mls qos dscp-mutation** | Configure the port interface to set dscp remarking. | Interface |
| **no mls qos dscp-mutation** | Configure the port interface not to set dscp remarking. | Interface |
| **show mls qos map dscp-mutation** | Display the current dscp-mutation map. | Privileged |

### COS Conversion Map Configuration

When a packet is carried out by COS as a standard in Trust COS mode, the packet will be operated as follows.

* Queueing operation by COS value
* COS remarking operation depending on COS value

#### COS to COS Configuration

A packet can be carried out COS remarking operation depending on COS values. This is called “mutation” because it changes COS of itself. Each port can be set as enable/disable, and the default is “disable”. For this operation DSCP to DSCP map is maintained the global setting. The default is 1:1. Change the map to apply to the port interface before use.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show mls qos map cos-mutation  COS MUTATION MAP  In COS : 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7  ------------------------------------------  Out cos : 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 |

Table 245 cos-mutation Map Configuration Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | Description | Mode |
| **mls qos map cos-mutation <0-7> <0-7>** | Sets Cos-mutation map. | Config |
| **no mls qos map cos-mutation** | Initializes Cos-mutation map. | Config |
| **mls qos cos-mutation** | Sets cos remarking on the port interface. | Interface |
| **no mls qos cos-mutation** | Disables cos remarking on the port interface. | Interface |
| **show mls qos map cos-mutation** | Displays the current settings of cos-mutation map. | Privileged |

## ACL Configuration

The C9500 has various options in ACL configuration including a feature sorting packets into easily acceptable ones and not easily acceptable ones.

The C9500 provides three ACLs: standard IP ACL, extended IP ACL, and MAC ACL.

Standard IP ACL classifies packets by source IP only. Ranges of <1-99> and <1300-1999> are assigned for Standard IP ACL, and it can be generated with names other than numbers.

Extended IP ACL sorts packets by source IP, destination IP, and protocol type. It can sort TCP and UDP packets by L4 src and dst port, ICMP packets by icmp-type, and IGMP packets by igmp-type. The ranges of <100-199> and <2000-2699> are assigned, and it can be generated with names other than numbers.

MAC ACL sorts packets by MAC address. The command “mac-access-list” is used. The range of <1100-1199> is assigned for MAC ACL.

### Standard IP ACL

Standard IP ACL classifies packets by source IP. A figure or a series of access-list can be connected, each condition can take a permit or deny.

Standard IP ACL was originally designed to set 99 ACLs of <1-99>, and 700 expanded areas of <1300-1999> were added later as additional ACLs are needed. And it is possible to add almost unlimited numbers of ACLs using names by letters.

Table 246 standard IP ACL Configuration Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | Description | Mode |
| **access-list <1-99> (permit|deny)**  **SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS** | Enables standard IP ACL | Config |
| **no access-list <1-99> (permit|deny) SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS** | Disables standard IP ACL | Config |
| **no access-list <1-99>** | Deletes all ACL with the relevant names (numbers) | Config |
| **access-list <1-99> remark LINE** | Adds the description of the relevant ACL | Config |
| **access-list <1300-1999> (permit|deny)**  **SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS** | Sets standard IP ACL of expanded range | Config |
| **no access-list <1300-1999> (permit|deny) SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS** | Disables standard IP ACL of expanded range | Config |
| **no access-list <1300-1999>** | Deletes all ACL with the relevant numbers | Config |
| **access-list <1300-1999> remark LINE** | Adds the description of the relevant ACL | Config |
| **access-list standard WORD (permit|deny)**  **SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS** | Sets named standard IP ACL | Config |
| **no access-list standard WORD (permit|deny) SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS** | Disables named standard IP ACL | Config |
| **no access-list standard WORD** | Deletes all ACLs with the relevant names | Config |
| **access-list WORD remark LINE** | Adds the description of the relevant ACL | Config |
| **Show access-list** | Searches ACL configuration | Privileged |

The command, **SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS** can be set as follows.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **A.B.C.D A.B.C.D** | IP range can be set in the form of wildcard. As opposed to the general IP configuration, marking value is 0 |
| **host A.B.C.D** | Add a host prefix to indicated only one IP address. |
| **A.B.C.D** | It will be treated the same as host A.B.C.D when only one IP is provided. |
| **any** | Use any when assigning all IP addresses. |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | 10.1.1.0/24 means the same as 255.255.255.0 when indicating an IP range in general. This implies an IP range of 10.1.1.0 ~ 10.1.1.255.  However ACL configuration of wildcard needs the opposite way: you should set 10.1.1.0.0.0.255 when assigning the IP range of 10.1.1.0 ~ 10.1.1.255. |

### Extended IP ACL

Extended IP ACL uses both src ip and des tip addresses while standard IP ACL uses only src ip address to sort packets. It is possible to sort packets using protocol type. You can sort TCP and UDP packets using L4 src and dst port, ICMP packets using icmp-type, and IGMP packets using igmp-type.

Extended IP ACL was originally designed to set 100 ACLs of <100-199>, and 700 expanded areas of <2000-2699> were added later as additional ACLs are needed. And it is possible to add almost unlimited numbers of ACLs using names by letters.

Table 247 Extended IP ACL Configuration Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | Description | Mode |
| **access-list <100-199> (permit|deny)**  **(<0-255>|icmp|igmp|ip|ospf|pim|tcp|udp) SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS DST\_IP\_ADDRESS** | Sets Extended IP ACL. | Config |
| **access-list <100-199> (permit|deny) icmp**  **SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS DST\_IP\_ADDRESS ICMP-TYPE** | Sets Extended IP ACL of ICMP type. | Config |
| **access-list <100-199> (permit|deny) igmp**  **SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS DST\_IP\_ADDRESS IGMP-TYPE** | Sets Extended IP ACL of IGMP type. | Config |
| **access-list <100-199> (permit|deny) (tcp|udp)**  **SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS DST\_IP\_ADDRESS eq <0-65536>** | Sets Extended IP ACL of TCP / UDP type. | Config |
| **no access-list <100-199> (permit|deny)  (<0-255>|icmp|igmp|ip|ospf|pim|tcp|udp) SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS DST\_IP\_ADDRESS** | Disables Extended IP ACL. | Config |
| **no access-list <100-199>** | Deletes all ACLs with the relevant name (number). | Config |
| **access-list <100-199> remark LINE** | Adds the description of the relevant ACL. | Config |
| **access-list <2000-2699> (permit|deny)**  **(<0-255>|icmp|igmp|ip|ospf|pim|tcp|udp)**  **SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS DST\_IP\_ADDRESS** | Sets Extended IP ACL of Expanded range. | Config |
| **access-list <2000-2699> (permit|deny) icmp**  **SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS DST\_IP\_ADDRESS ICMP-TYPE** | Sets Extended IP ACL of Expanded range of ICMP type. | Config |
| **access-list <2000-2699> (permit|deny) igmp**  **SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS DST\_IP\_ADDRESS IGMP-TYPE** | Sets Extended IP ACL of Expanded range of IQMP type. | Config |
| **access-list <2000-2699> (permit|deny) (tcp|udp)**  **SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS DST\_IP\_ADDRESS eq <0-65536>** | Sets Extended IP ACL of Expanded range of TCP / UDP type. | Config |
| **no access-list <2000-2699> (permit|deny) (<0-255>|icmp|igmp|ip|ospf|pim|tcp|udp) SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS DST\_IP\_ADDRESS** | Disables Extended IP ACL. | Config |
| **no access-list <2000-2699>** | Deletes all ACLs with the relevant name. | Config |
| **access-list <2000-2699> remark LINE** | Adds the description of the relevant ACL. | Config |
| **access-list extended WORD (permit|deny) (<0-255>|icmp|igmp|ip|ospf|pim|tcp|udp)**  **SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS DST\_IP\_ADDRESS** | Sets Named Extended IP ACL. | Config |
| **access-list extended WORD (permit|deny) icmp**  **SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS DST\_IP\_ADDRESS ICMP-TYPE** | Sets Extended IP ACL of ICMP type. | Config |
| **access-list extended WORD (permit|deny) igmp**  **SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS DST\_IP\_ADDRESS IGMP-TYPE** | Sets Extended IP ACL of IGMP type. | Config |
| **no access-list extended WORD (permit|deny) (<0-255>|icmp|igmp|ip|ospf|pim|tcp|udp) SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS DST\_IP\_ADDRESS** | Disables Named Extended IP ACL. | Config |
| **no access-list extended WORD** | Deletes all ACLs with the relevant. name | Config |
| **access-list WORD remark LINE** | Adds the description of the relevant ACL | Config |
| **Show access-list** | Searches the configuration of ACL | Privileged |

The command, SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS and DST\_IP\_ADDRESS can be set as follows.

Table 248 SRC\_IP\_ADDRESS

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Description** |
| **A.B.C.D A.B.C.D** | IP range can be set in the form of wildcard. As opposed to the general IP configuration, |
| **host A.B.C.D** | Add a host prefix to indicated only one IP address. |
| **any** | Use any when assigning all IP addresses. |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | A.B.C.D is not supported in extended IP ACL to prevent confusion. Host A.B.C.D is used to appoint a single IP. |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | An address such as 10.1.1.0/24 has the same meaning as 10.1.1.0.255.255.255.0 when indicating the IP range of 10.1.1.0 ~ 10.1.1.255.  However ACL configuration of wildcard should be the opposite way: you should set 10.1.1.0.0.0.255 when assigning the IP range of 10.1.1.0 ~ 10.1.1.255. |

### MAC ACL

MAC ACL uses MAC address to sort packets. MAC ACL was originally designed <1100-1199> of ACL. Unlike IP ACL, MAC ACL uses mac-access-list.

Table 249 standard IP ACL Configuration Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | Description | Mode |
| **mac-access-list <1100-1199> (permit|deny) SRC\_MAC\_ADDRESS DST\_MAC\_ADDRESS <1-8>** | Enables MAC ACL | Config |
| **no mac-access-list <1100-1199> (permit|deny) SRC\_MAC\_ADDRESS DST\_MAC\_ADDRESS <1-8>** | Disables MAC ACL | Config |
| **no mac-access-list <1100-1199>** | Deletes all ACLs with the relevant names |  |
| **Show mac-access-list** | Retrieves the configuration of MAC ACL | Privileged |

src\_ip\_address and dst\_ip\_address can be set as follows. however src\_mac and dst\_mac cannot be **any** simultaneously.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Item** | **Description** |
| **H:H:H:H:H:H** | You can set MAC address bandwidth as wildcard. |
| **any** | When all MAC addresses are specified, “any” can be used. |

### Application of ACL to Interface

The ACL set as above can be applied to an interface as follows. The interfaces mentioned here means VLAN interfaces, and they are applicable to port interfaces set as router ports.

Table 250 Commands for the Applying ACL to Interface

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | Description | Mode |
| **ip access-group { <1-199> | <1300>2699> | WORD} } {in|out}** | Sets acl to the relevant interface | Interface |
| **no ip access-group { <1-199> | <1300>2699> | WORD} } {in|out}** | Disables acl of the relevant interface | Interface |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | Router port means a port with no switchport. |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | Service-policy can set up to 16000 rules in the input direction, 4000 rules in the output direction summed with ACLs. |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | In the input direction, you can set service and ACL simultaneously. For the output direction, you can set only either one at a time. |

## Service-policy Configuration

For configurations of complicated QOS you can set various forms of rules and actions using class-map and policy-map.

Class-map sorts packets using one of the choices from ACL, ehtertype, cos, VLAN, protocol, dscp, ip-preedence(TOS), l4 port, tcp flag, and mlps flag, etc.

Traffic that is sorted as a class-map carries out the basic actions like permit / drop, as well as queueing, cos, marking / remarking, dscp marking / remarking, rate-limit etc. PBR (Policy Based Routing) is available when nexthop is linked together. It enables other operations, which are not related to QOS, such as trap-cpu, mirrot, redirect, netflow, etc.

### Class-map

A class-map is produced for the purpose of sorting packets. In other words, ACL is used in sorting packets, and other means can also be used, such as ethertype, cos, VLAN, protocol, dscp, ip-preedence (TOS), I4 port, tcp flag, mlps flag to sort packets.

ACL may use both ip acl and mac-acl together, or only one of the two. Each ACL can have up to 1000 items. In order to apply more than 1000 ACLs, you need to divide ACLs into several groups and generate class-map for each.

In addition, IPv4 ACL should be set in class-map and IPv6 ACL should be set in class-map ipv6..

Sorting options including ACL basically run AND operation. For example if both ACL and DSCP are enabled, only packets that satisfy the two conditions will be sorted.

Table 251 Class-map Configuration Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | Description | Mode |
| **class-map WORD** | Generates a class-map that is classified according to AND operation and moves to the node. | Config |
| **class-map match-all WORD** | Generates a class-map that is classified according to AND operation and moves to the node. | Config |
| **class-map match-any WORD** | Generates a class-map that is classified according to OR operation and moves to the node. | Config |
| **no class-map WORD** | Deletes the Class-map. | Config |
| **match access-group NAME** | Sets the classification criteria using ACL. | cmap |
| **match cos <0-7>** | Sets the classification criteria using COS. | cmap |
| **match ethertype WORD** | Sets the classification criteria using Ethertype. | cmap |
| **match ip-dscp <0-63>** | Sets the classification criteria using DSCP. | cmap |
| **match ip-precedence <0-7>** | Sets the classification criteria using IP-Precedence. | cmap |
| **match layer4 {source-port|destination-port} <1-65536>** | Sets the classification criteria using L4 port. | cmap |
| **match mpls exp-bit topmost <0-7>** | Sets the classification criteria using MPLS flag. | cmap |
| **match tcp-control VALUE** | Sets the classification criteria using TCP-control. | cmap |
| **match vlan <1-4095>** | Sets the classification criteria using VLAN. | cmap |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | Ethertype is classified as a 4-digit hexadecimal. For example, you can enter 0806 for ARP type. |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | TCP-control is classified as a six-digit binary number. For example, you can see the fifth digit, SYN flag by declaring 00010. |

### Policy-map

Traffic that is sorted as a class-map carries out the basic actions such as permit / drop, as well as queueing, cos, marking / remarking, dscp marking / remarking, rate-limit etc. PBR (Policy Based Routing) is available when nexthop is linked together. It enables other operations, which are not related to QOS, such as trap-cpu, mirrot, redirect, netflow, etc.

Each policy-map can assign up to 100 operations. Each Class-map can have up to 1000 entries of ACL, which means a policy-map should control 100,000 entries in theory. However it is not possible to control so many entries due to the restriction of H/W.

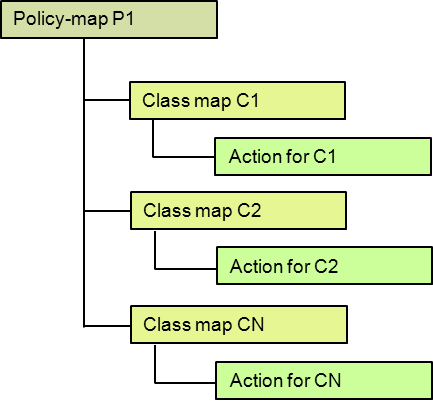


Figure 49 Hierarchy of Policy-Map

Marking and remarking are used without distinction. When there is a correspondent field to an incoming packet remarking will work, when no correspondent field marking will work. It enables other operations, which are not related to QOS, such as trap-cpu, mirrot, redirect, netflow, etc.

Table 252 Class-map Configuration Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | Description | Mode |
| **policy-map NAME** | Generates a policy-map and moves to the corresponding node. | Config |
| **no policy-map NAME** | Deletes the policy-map. | Config |
| **class NAME** | Moves to the sub node which assigns the operation of Class-map. | pmap |
| **no class NAME** | Deletes the class-map setting. | pmap |
| **drop** | Drops traffic that is classified according to the class-map. | pmap-c |
| **set cos <0-7>** | Cos marking setting. | pmap-c |
| **set drop-precedence <0-2>** | Drop precedence setting. | pmap-c |
| **set ip-dscp <0-63>** | Dscp marking setting. | pmap-c |
| **set ip-precedence <0-7>** | Ip precedence (tos) setting. | pmap-c |
| **set queueing <0-7>** | Queueing setting. | pmap-c |
| **Police kbps <1-10000000> <1-10000000> exceed-action drop** | Rate-limit setting by unit of Kbps. | pmap-c |
| **police pps <1-10000000> <1-10000000> exceed-action drop** | Rate-limit setting by unit of PPS. | pmap-c |
| **police aggregate NAME** | Aggregated rate-limit setting. | pmap-c |
| **nexthop A.B.C.D { priority <1-8> | }** | PBR nexthop setting and nexthop priority setting. | pmap-c |
| **netflow** | Netflow setting. | pmap-c |
| **redirect IFNAME** | Redirect setting. | pmap-c |
| **mirror** | Mirror setting. | pmap-c |
| **trap-cpu { high-priority| }** | CPU trap setting. | pmap-c |

### Service-policy

The policy-map as above applies to VLAN interface or router port interface. It can be set as either direction of input or output. The policy-map set as above can be applied to VLAN interface or router port interface. It can be set as either direction of input or output. However, the output direction can have only one of service-policy or ACL; the input direction can have the two simultaneously.

Table 253 service-policy Configuration Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | Description | Mode |
| **service-policy { input | output } NAME** | Applies a policy-map of the relevant name to an interface. | Interface |
| **no service-policy { input | output } NAME** | Deletes the relevant policy-map from the interface. | Interface |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | A router port means a port with no switchport. |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | Service-policy can set up to 16000 rules in the input direction, 4000 rules in the output direction summed with ACLs. |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | In the input direction, you can set service and ACL simultaneously. For the output direction, you can set only either one at a time. |

## COPP

COPP (Control Plane Policing) means the application of rate-limit and QOS policies of traffic which flow into CPU. Various controlling packets, relating to the protocol, flow into the CPU. An excessive inflow of a specific packet can cause a problem in the CPU. In this case, a packet with a higher priority of another protocol may not be carried out. Therefore, a feature that prioritizes packets and sets rate-limits is required in order to organize traffic.

### Service-policy on COPP

The unit performs policing for traffic that flows into the CPU by applying service-policy in the control plane.

Table 254 Commands for Control-plane of Service-policy Configuration

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | Description | Mode |
| **control-plane** | Enters control-plane mode. | configure |
| **service-policy input NAME** | Applies a policy-map to a control-plane. | Control-plane |
| **no service-policy input NAME** | Disables the policy-map on the control-plane. | Control-plane |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | When Service-policy is in use in the control-plane, only policy drop, and set queueing will operate. |

### Rate-limit on COPP

You can set a rate-limit of a specific traffic that flows into the CPU.

Table 255 Commands for Control-plane of Rate-limit Configuration

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | Description | Mode |
| **Rate-limit <0-47> <1-4096> <1-4096>** | Configure the burst and rate-limit to CPU Queue ID by the unit of PPS. | Control-plane |
| **Protocol-queue-map**  **{arp-reply|arp-request|bgp|bpdu|dhcp|filter|icmp|icmpv6|igmp|ipmc\_rsvd|isis|l2-cpu|l3-cpu|mld|nd|ospf|pim|rsvp|telnet}} <0-47>** | Assign CPU Queue for each protocol. | Control-plane |
| **Show control-plane cpu-queue** | Display the CPU Queue ID and protocol mapping table. | Privileged |

### Equipment Protection feature

Table 256 Commands for Equipment protection feature

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **command** | Description | Mode |
| **martian-filter** | Drop the packet if its Source ip belongs to the below range.  10.0.0.0/8  127.0.0.0/8  172.16.0.0/12  192.168.0.0/16  224.0.0.0/4 | Vlan Interface |
| **Source-ip-filter** | Drop the packets if its Source ip is out of the range of the Vlan interface network. | Vlan  Interface |
| **dhcp-filter** | Drop the packets which come from DHCP server so as to prevent dhcp spoofing. | Vlan  Interface |

# Utilites

This chapter describes other functions required for operation of the system.

## Status dump command

### Commands used

“show tech-support” is used to dump the system logging messages of each module (system configuration, multicast, routing, driver, etc.).

|  |
| --- |
| **# show tech-support** |

If a problem occurs in system operation, you need to enter various commands to check the behavior of the modules. This command makes predefined critical commands run for the modules, and shows the result message, enabling the module admins to check the fault immediately.

Because the output messages are not paged, the output of messages continue until running of the command is finished. In order to stop the output during the running of the command, you should enter Ctrl+C.

See the following example.

Show tech command provides a considerable amount of load to CPU, and it takes a long time to process the command.

As CPU continues to run at 100%, there can be a routing interruption. Therefore, the program requests the operator to confirm whether to run the command.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show tech-support**  --- Display the system information ---  --------------------------------------  MODEL-NAME : C9500  SERIAL-NO :  System MAC-ADDRESS: 00:07:70:74:ff:01  --- Display the system version ---  ----------------------------------  CommScope Switch Operating System Software  C9500 Software (C9500), Version 1.1.0  Technical Support: http://www.CommScope.com  Copyright (c) 2001-2010 by CommScope Inc.  BOOTLDR: C9500 Software (u92h\_bsp.r005), Version 1.3.5  Router uptime is 6 minutes  Time since Router switched to active is 4 minutes  System restarted at 1970:01:01-00:08:59  System image file is "tftp://192.168.0.9/u92h.r110\_ssj"  If you require further assistance please contact us by sending email to  spot.team@CommScope.com.  Router Router processor with RouterM bytes of memory.  Processor board ID  460EX CPU at 1000Mhz, Rev 24.162 (pvr 1302 18a2), 1024KB L2 Cache  Last reset from h/w reset  131072K bytes of Flash internal SIMM (Sector size 256K).  --- Show current system's time ---  ----------------------------------  14:26:50 UTC Thu Feb 18 2010  --- Display elapsed time since boot ---  ---------------------------------------  0 days, 5 hours, 11 mins, 39 secs since boot  --- CPU information ---  -----------------------  ... |

## Command history Function

This function shows the commands used by the administrator in order or in reverse order based on time. This function can be used to retrieve the commands used by the administrator, thus helping to identify the cause of any problem and to recover after a system malfunction.

Table 257 Command history Function

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Command | Description | Mode |
| **show history** | * Shows the commands used. | Privileged |
| **show history back** | * Show the commands in reverse time order. | Privileged |
| **show history detail** | * Shows additional information including the time of command used/User/Access IP. | Privileged |

When a command is used repeatedly, it is saved just once.

## Output Post Processing

### Overview of output post processing

Most of the commands that show the current status or setting of a system begin with ‘show’. The show commands generally show the results on a single page, but there are cases where the list of results is very long.

For example, show mac-address-table may result in thousands of lines, and show interface also provides a considerable amount of detail. If the results are very long, it is difficult to find the desired part. In this case, you may use the output post processing function provided by this system.

This function is similar with the Unix pipe function. This system provides 3 predefined output post processing functions. In order to use the output post processing function, you should attach a bar (|) after the show command, and then use the following commands:

Table 258 Overview of output post processing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Commands | Description |
| **| include WORD** | * Shows the string containing a specific word. |
| **| exclude WORD** | * Shows the string without a specific word. |
| **| begin WORD** | * Shows the lines after a string containing a specific word. |
| **| ic-include WORD** | * Shows a certain letter in the running config. * Is case-insensitive. |

### Examples of output post processing

‘show mac-address-table’ outputs a large amount of results. You should use ‘include’ to get the mac addresses containing the desired part only.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#  Switch# **show run | inc service**  service password-encryption  service dhcp |

‘show ip interface’ outputs a large amount of results. You should use ‘begin’ to get the result after a specific VLAN interface.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#show ip interface | begin Vlan1  ...skipping  Vlan1 is up, line protocol is up  Internet protocol processing disabled  IP Flow switching is disabled  Vlan33 is administratively down, line protocol is down  Internet address is 20.1.3.2/24  Broadcast address is 20.1.3.255  MTU is 1500 bytes  Ingress service-policy is not set.  Egress service-policy is not set.  IP Flow switching is disabled  Vlan200 is down, line protocol is down  Internet address is 200.1.1.236/24  Broadcast address is 200.1.1.255  MTU is 1500 bytes  Ingress service-policy is not set.  Egress service-policy is not set.  IP Flow switching is disabled |

## DDM (Digital Diagnostic Monitoring)

C9500 supports the commands that show the status of SFP with DDM in detail. The monitoring items are as follows:

Table 259 IP OPTION command

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Item | Description |
| Temperature | SFP Port Temp |
| Voltage | SFP Port Voltage |
| Current | SFP Port Current |
| RxPower | SFP Port Optic Input Power |
| TxPower | SFP Port Optic Output Power |

### SFP DDM Monitoring

The following commands are used to check the status of the SFP with DDM:

Table 260 SFP DDM Monitoring

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Commands | Mode | Description |
| show interface transceiver | Privileged | Checks the status of DDM supporting SFP. |

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show interface transceiver**  If device is externally calibrated, only calibrated values are printed.  ++ : high alarm, + : high warning, - : low warning, -- : low alarm.  NA or N/A: not applicable, Tx: transmit, Rx: receive.  mA: milliamperes, dBm: decibels (milliwatts).  Optical Optical  Temperature Voltage Current Tx Power Rx Power  Port (Celsius) (Volts) (mA) (dBm) (dBm)  ------- ----------- ------- -------- -------- --------  Gi7/3 42.6 3.32 17.4 -7.7 -40.0 --  Gi7/4 41.5 3.32 15.5 -6.7 -40.0 --................................................................................................  Gi7 gbic ddm 50.6'C 3.5 V 14.0 mA -6.08 dBm -40.00 dBm  Normal Normal Normal Alarm(L) Alarm(L)  (warn) 100.0 -10.0 4.0 1.0 131.0 0.0 8.00 0.00 8.00 0.00  (alarm) 100.0 -10.0 4.0 1.0 131.0 0.0 8.00 0.00 8.00 0.00  ................................................................................................ gi7/2 .  Normal Normal Normal Normal Normal  (warn) 128.0 -128.0 6.6 0.0 131.0 0.0 8.20 -40.00 8.00 -40.00  (alarm) 128.0 -128.0 6.6 0.0 131.0 0.0 8.20 -40.00 8.00 -40.00  .............................................................................. |

# Saving Config File and Software Upgrade

This chapter describes Flash File System management and using USB or Compact Flash (CF) memory. An OS Image and Configuration File are saved in the File System provided by the C9500. When you boot the system, the system loads the saved OS Image and Configuration files. This chapter describes the following commands:

* File system commands for operation
* OS Image and Configuration File management
* Booting Mode Setting

## File System

The system basically provides Flash File system for saving OS image and Configuration file. Moreover, the system supports USB Port. This chapter describes several file system of this product. Flash file system is used for saving OS image and Configuration file.

USB memory can connect or disconnect on the system. When it is connected on the system, you can manage it like Flash File System.

The basic commands for management system files are as follows:

Table 261 File Management Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Description** | **Mode** |
| show flash: | Shows flash file status. | Privileged |
| show usbflash: <0-9> | Shows USB memory status. | Privileged |
| dir (usbflash:| flash:) (<0-9>|) directory | Shows relevant file system. | Privileged |
| erase (flash:|)*filename* | Erase the saved file in flash memory. | Privileged |
| erase (usbflash:) (<0-9>|) filename | Erases the file in CF memory, USB memory. | Privileged |
| rename (usbflash:|flash:)  (<0-9>|) *filename*  (usbflash:|flash:)  (<0-9>|) *change* | Renames file name and changes the place of file system. | Privileged |

The following example shows how to show the file system.

|  |
| --- |
| Router#show flash:  -length- -----------type/info------------ CN path  1260 text file -- dconfig  616 text file B\* igmp\_cpuha  3571 text file -- econfig  1893 text file -- igmp\_mvlan\_final  2048 text file -- igmp\_cpuha\_bk  50274956 [C9500] 1.1.0 -- u92h.r110  59537056 [C9500] 1.1.1 -- u92h.r111  1196 text file -- lacp\_test  19060 Kbytes available (112012 Kbytes used, 86% used)  Router# |

The following example shows how to erase file in USB memory.

|  |
| --- |
| shu#show usbflash:  --------filename-------- -----------type/info------------ CN -length-  1.avi binary data file -- 732508160  2.avi binary data file -- 731899904  ……  1474004 Kbytes available (2147920 Kbytes, 28 % used)  shu#**erase usbflash: 1.avi**  shu#show usbflash:  --------filename-------- -----------type/info------------ CN -length-  2.avi binary data file -- 731899904  ……  2189344 Kbytes available (1432580 Kbytes, 19 % used)  shu# |

## Image/Configuration/BSP Down/Up Load

You can download the Image and configuration file from a remote TFTP (FTP) server. You can upload the image and cofiguration file to a remote FTP (TFTP) server.

To download or upload software from a remote TFTP or FTP server to the System, perform the following tasks:

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Warning** | Do not select image for upgrading without permission because images are diffent as system model and version. |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **알림 및 경고** | **Warning** | The configuration applied via FTP/TFTP is added or changed on the configuration of the current system. In other words, the configuration of the current system is not deleted completely and changes with the downloaded configuration. |

### Download/Upload with the FTP

The following table shows the download/upload commands with using the FTP.

Table 262 Download/Upload with the FTP

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Description** | **Mode** |
| copy ftp: (usbflash:|disk1:| flash:) (<0-9>|) | Saves OS image file from FTP to Flash, USB, and CF. | Privileged |
| copy (usbflash:|disk1:| flash:) (<0-9>|) ftp | Saves OS image from Flash, USB, and CF to FTP. | Privileged |
| copy ftp: config-file | Saves Configuration file from FTP to Flash. | Privileged |
| copy ftp: running-config | Applys Configuration file with the current running-config from FTP | Privileged |
| copy running-config  (usbflash:|disk1:| flash:) (<0-9>|) *filename* | Saves running-config with file filename to relevant file system. | Privileged |
| copy running-config ftp: | Saves current running-config to FTP server. | Privileged |
| copy ftp: bootloader |  | Privileged |

The following example shows how to download a file with using FTP.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **copy ftp: flash**  IP address of remote host ? 10.1.13.4  User ID ? evolution  Password ?  Source file name ? 0621  Destination file name ? 0621  Warning: There is a file already existing with this name  Do you want to over-write [yes/no]? y  Over-writing 0621 file to flash memory |

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **copy ftp bootloader**  IP address of remote host ? 192.168.0.1  User ID ? lns  Password ?  Source file name ? E7xg.bsp  Bootloader key (0xaabb) ? 0x860011  FTP:: 10.1.13.4//E7xg.bsp --> bootloader  Continue [yes/no]? yes  (Omission) |

The following example shows how to save running-config file in the USB memory.

|  |
| --- |
| shu#**copy running-config usbflash: evol.cfg**  shu#show usbflash:  --------filename-------- -----------type/info------------ CN -length-  2.avi binary data file -- 731899904  evol.cfg text file -- 7131  ……  2189336 Kbytes available (1432588 Kbytes, 19 % used)  shu# |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Warning** | The downloaded configuration is added to the current configuration or replaced with the current configuration on the system. That is, the current system configuration is not totally removed or replaced by the downloaded configuration. |

### Down/Up Loading File with the TFTP server

To download and upload the file with the TFTP server, use the following command.

Table 263 Down/Up Loading File with TFTP

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Description** | **Mode** |
| copy tftp: (usbflash:|disk1:| flash:) (<0-9>|) | Saves OS image file from TFTP to Flash, USB, and CF. | Privileged |
| copy (usbflash:|disk1:| flash:) (<0-9>|) tftp: | Saves OS image from Flash, USB, and CF to TFTP. | Privileged |
| copy tftp: config-file | Saves Configuration file from TFTP to Flash. | Privileged |
| copy tftp: running-config | Applys Configuration file with the current running-config from TFTP | Privileged |
| copy running-config tftp: | Saves running-config with file filename to relevant file system. | Privileged |
| copy tftp: bootloader | Saves current running-config to TFTP server. | Privileged |

The following example shows how to download a file from TFTP.

|  |
| --- |
| shu#**copy tftp: usbflash:**  IP address of remote host ? 10.1.13.4  Source file name ? evol.r137  Destination file name ? evol.r137  TFTP::10.1.13.4//evol.r137 --> usbflash: 0 [evol.r137]  Proceed [yes/no]? y |

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **copy tftp bootloader**  IP address of remote host ? 10.1.13.4  Source file name ? E7x.bsp  Bootloader key (0xaabb) ? 0x860011  TFTP:: 10.1.13.4// E7x.bsp --> bootloader  Proceed [yes/no]? yes  (omitted ) |

## Configuration File Management

The system configuration file is a text file that has commands for configuration when the system is booting. It is convenient that you do not need to input commands manually for the system configuration, whenever the system is booting.

The System contains two types of configuration files: the running (current operating) configuration and the startup (last saved) configuration.

The feature of the files is as follows:

### Running configuration

The running configuration is the current (unsaved) configuration that reflects the most recent configuration changes. When a user changes the system configuration, the system configuration is saved in the running configuration file of DRAM and is applied immediately to the system. You can upload or download the running configuration file via FTP or TFTP.

### Startup configuration

The startup configuration is the saved configuration in DRAM and is used when the system initializes. The startup configuration is not removed when the system power is turned off. You can upload or download the startup configuration file via FTP or TFTP.

Table 264 Configuration Management Command

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Description** | **Mode** |
| show startup-config | Shows the configuration of Booting config File saved in the flash memory | Privileged |
| show running-config | Shows the current configuration. | Privileged |
| copy running-config startup-config | Saves running-config as startup-config in the flash memory. | Privileged |
| erase startup-config | Deletes startup configuration file saved in the flash memory. | Privileged |

### Saving Configuration File

If you want to apply the current running configuration file when the system boots next, save the current running configuration file to the startup configuration file before the system is reset or powered off.

To save the current running configuration file to the startup configuration file, use the following command.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show running-config**  !  no service dhcp  !  no logging console  !  ip domain-lookup  ... < > ....  SWITCH# **copy running-config startup-config**  Overwrite ‘system.cfg’? [yes/no] y  SWITCH# **show startup-config**  !  no service dhcp  !  no logging console  !  ip domain-lookup  ... < > ....  SWITCH# |

### Configuration File Erase

When the system restarts, the system reloads the startup-config file in the flash memory. If you want to use another configuration file, you must erase the startup-config. After you set another configuration file, restart the system.

|  |
| --- |
| SWITCH# **erase flash: *System1.cfg***  Warning: System1.cfg is booting config file  Do you want to erase it [yes/no]? y  SWITCH# **boot config *System2.cfg***  SWITCH# **redundancy reload shelf** |

## Boot Mode Setting and System Restart

You can arrange an OS Image and a Config file for the system to be used when next booting takes place. When you restart the system, the arranged OS image and config file will be applied to the system. So pay careful attention when you arrange the OS Image and Config file.

The following table shows how to arrange an OS image and config file for next booting.

Table 265 Boot Mode Setting and System Restart

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Description** | **Mode** |
| boot system flash *filename* | Registers the OS image to be applied when next booting. | Privileged |
| boot system tftp *filename* A.B.C.D | Registers the OS image to be applied when next booting. | Privileged |
| boot config *filename* | Assigns filename as Start-up configuration file. | Privileged |
| reload | Restarts the currently connected SCM. | Privileged |
| redundancy reload shelf | Makes the entire system(i.e. both SCMs) booted up at once. | Privileged |
| redundancy reload (active| standby| peer| myself) | Makes the specified SCM (e.g. active, standby, peer, myself) booted up. But the attempt by Standby SCM for the Active SCM is not allowed. | Privileged |

### Boot Mode Setting

You must be careful as follows:

* When you execute **boot flash** command, you must use the OS image which is for C9500 only.
* When you execute **boot config** conmand, you must use the Config file which is for C9500 only.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch#  Switch# **boot system flash *u92h.r111***  Switch#  Switch# **boot config *lns.cfg***  Switch# |

### Restarting an SCM

You can restart the SCM by **reload command** which is currently associated with your console. The restart of SCM can be reserved for later execution by using a list of sub-commands ‘**in**’ or ‘**at’**. Before you try the reservation, make sure to refer to the system time by using the **show clock** command.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Notice** | When the system is equipped in redundant fashion, i.e. having two SCMs, ‘**redundancy reload shelf’** command can be used to restart the entire system at once. |

Table 266 Boot Mode Setting and System Reload

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Description** | **Mode** |
| reload | Restarts the currently connected SCM. | Privileged |
| reload {in *time*|at *time* *[day]* [*month]*} [*reason*] | Specifies the time for reserving an upcoming system restart.   * in: in time * at: at the specified time * *time*: HH:MM * *day*: 1 - 31 * *month*: (ex. Jan or January) * *reason*: reason for restart | Privileged |
| reload cancel | Cancels the reserved system restart. | Privileged |
| show reload | Shows the reservation information that the system is scheduled to restart. | Privileged |

The following example shows how to restart an SCM with **reload at** command and cancel the schedule with **reload cancel** command.

|  |
| --- |
| Switch# **show clock**  23:52:01 UTC Thu Sep 14 2010  Switch# **reload at 13:00 19 Feb For reload test**  System configuration has been modified. Save? [y/n]: y  Building configuration...  [OK]  Reload scheduled for 13:00:00 KST Fri Feb 19 2010 in ( 13 hours 7 minutes )  Reload Reason: For reload test  continue to reboot ? [yes/no]: y  Switch# **show reload**  Reload scheduled for 13:00:00 KST Fri Feb 19 2010 in ( 13 hours 7 minutes 28 seconds ) on vty/0 (10.1.20.99)  Reload reason: For reload test  Switch#  Switch# **reload cancel**  \*\*\*  \*\*\* --- SHUTDOWN ABORTED ---  \*\*\*  Switch# **show reload**  No reload is scheduled.  Switch# |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Warning** | Before you restart system, you should always save the running configuration in Flash memory. When you execute reload command in config mode, you always make sure if you save the file as follows.  System configuration has been modified. Save? [y/n]: y |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Warning** | Do not forcefully restart the system while it is saving file to Flash File System. |

### Restarting entire system

When the system is equipped in redundant composition, meaning the system has two SCMs, ‘**redundancy reload shelf’** command can be used to restart the entire system. If reload command would be used for a redundantly composed system, you will have to execute the command twice; first for the standby SCM and then for active SCM. It is fair to say ‘**redundancy reload shelf’** command will be more convenient.

Table 265-2. Restart command for a redundant system

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Command** | **Description** | **Mode** |
| redundancy reload shelf | Makes the entire system(i.e. both SCMs) booted up at once. | Privileged |
| redundancy reload (active| standby| peer| myself) | Makes the specified SCM (e.g. active, standby, peer, myself) booted up. But the attempt by Standby SCM for the Active SCM is not allowed. | Privileged |

In case the system is not in redundant composition, meaning the system has one SCM, the result of executing ‘**redundancy reload shelf’** command is same as that of ‘**reload’**.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 알림 및 경고 | **Warning** | The attempt to reboot the active SCM by the standby SCM is prohibited because it might cause system failure. |

# DPoE Provisioning

This chapter describes how to make the setting in relation with DPoE Provisioning.

This chapter consists of the following sections:

* Background and Theory of Operations
* Cable and Bundle Interface management
* vCM and CPE’s DHCP Relay management
* Source Address Verification (SAV) management
* Subscriber management
* ONU Encryption and Authentication
* Certificate Revocation List
* Online Certificate Status Protocol
* EAE Exclusion List
* ONU White List
* CM Offline List
* Optical Monitoring
* vCM TFTP Client Settings
* CM Event Management
* CM Secure Software Download
* MEF-MN Interface
* Subscriber’s Provider Bridging (PB) Services
* Subscriber’s Provider Backbone Bridging (PBB) Services
* IP(HSD) Services
* Quality of Service (QoS)
* Classifiers
* DPoEv2.0 Multicast

## Background and Theory of Operations

This section provides a general context for understanding the DPoE operations.

**The DOCSIS Network**

The below Figure summarizes the primary systems and elements involved in a traditional DOCSIS Cable Modem (CM) and Cable Modem Termination System (CMTS) network.

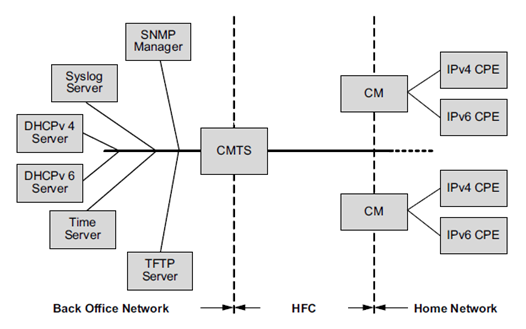


Figure 50 DOCSIS 3.0 HFC Network

**DPoE Network**

The below Figure summarizes the logical interfaces necessary to seamlessly replace the CMTS and CMs with Ethernet Passive Optical Network (EPON), OLT, and optical Node Unit (ONU) devices. This permits operators to take advantage of standard EPON functionality and economics while retaining their investment in back-office operations and systems and leave Customer Premise Equipment (CPE) unchanged.

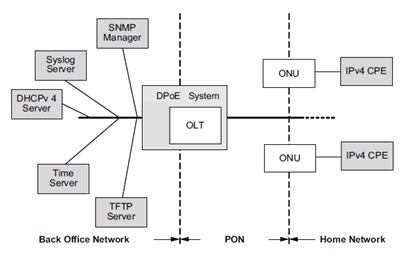


Figure 51 DPoE Reference Network

## Cable and Bundle Interface management

This section describes the guideline of Cable and Bundle Interface management.

**Cable Interface**

A cable interface is a logical entity that represents a DOCSIS CMTS-like interface that provides MAC-domain provisioning and statistics. The cable interface functionality includes Layer 3 (L3) provisioning for vCMs and CPEs, bundle assignment, interface related MIB statistics, and provisioning of the port administrative status (enable/disable). A cable interface maps one-to-one with a PON Interface on an OLT. A cable interface also represents the DPoE MAC Domain interface that is referenced in many of the DOCSIS MIB tables defined for a CMTS.

**Bundle Interfaces**

Cable Bundling is a DOCSIS CMTS-like feature that allows multiple cable interfaces to share a common L3 interface. The shared L3 interface typically provides IP subnets, cable helpers, and DHCP Relay configuration. A cable bundle is defined by associating one or more physical interfaces to a bundle.

The DPoE 1.0 IP Serviing Group (IP-SG) feature standardizes the concept of interface “bundling” which allows operators to apply a common set of IP configuration to one or more PON (TU) interfaces. This is illustrated in the following Figure, which shows PON Port 1, PON Port 2, and PON Port n associated with bundle number 10. The bundle has the CPE IP Gateway address (or DHCP giaddr) configured as the 30.30.30.0/24 network. This allows CPEs to be assigned IP addresses from the 30.30.30.0/24 network across serveral PON interfaces.

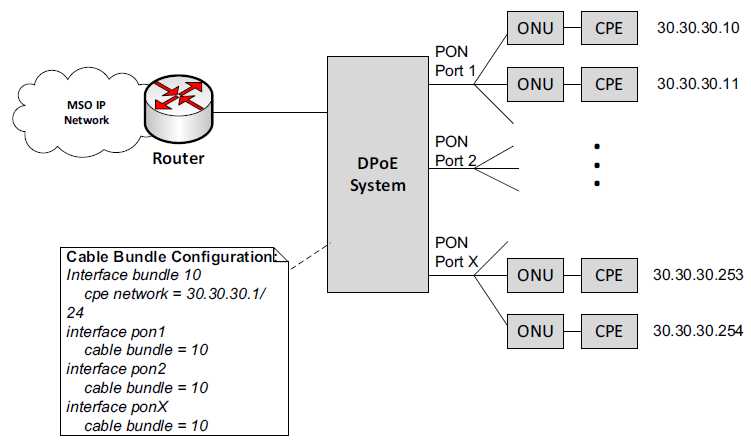


Figure 52 DPoE Reference Network

L3 parameters are configured for a cable bundle using a bundle interface, which can be provisioned with IP networks for vCMs and CPEs, cable helpers, DHCP Relay, and other Layer 3 parameters. Each cable interface that is a member of the bundle shares this configuration.

### Bundle Create and View

To create the Bundle Interface or enter the Bundle Interface mode, use this command. To delete the Bundle Interface, use the 'no' form of this command.

Table 267 Bundle Interface

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **interface Bundle <1-255>** | Creates the Bundle interface. |
| **no interface Bundle <1-255>** | Removes the Bundle interface. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface Bundle 10**  Router(config-if-Bundle10)# **end**  Router# **show bundle**  VLAN Name Status Ports  ---- -------------------------------- --------- --------------------  4001 BUNDLE010 active    VLAN MTU BridgeNo BrdgMode  ---- ---------- -------- ------------ ---------------  4001 1500 0 vlan-bridge  Router# |

### Bundle VLAN

VLAN IDs starting from 4001 are reserved for the bundle interface and can be easily changed using the following command.

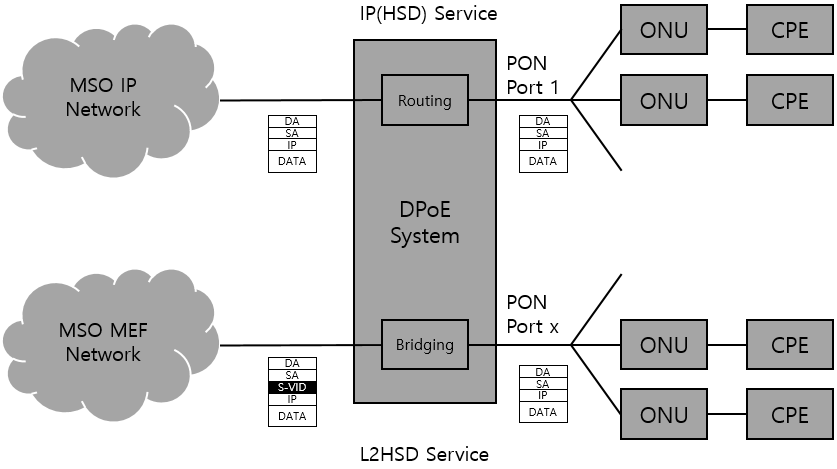
Note that the configuration is applied after the system is rebooted.

Table 268 Bundle VLAN

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **reserved-vlan bundle <2-4094> <2-4094>** | Specifies the range of VLAN IDs to be reserved for the bundle interface.  The configuration is applied after the system is rebooted. |
| **no reserved-vlan bundle** | Removes the Bundle interface. |

### IP(HSD) and L2HSD Services

IP (HSD) services provide routing functionalities within the DPoE System whereas L2HSD services are L2 bridges forwarding traffic to an external interface. The two services look alike; however, to provide L2HSD services, the DPoE system adds the operator-specified S-VID to the traffic that is received by the PON interface and sent to the NNI interface.



### Bundle Sub-Interface

IP Serving Group (IP-SG) configurations are largely an organizational function that allows an operator to group a set of similar service flows together (representing similar services). IP(HSD) IP-SGs are used to forward traffic to a common IP interface on the router within the DPoE System. L2(HSD) IP-SGs are used to forward traffic to an external interface.

To create the Bundle Sub-Interface or enter the Bundle Sub-Interface mode, use this command. To delete the Bundle Sub-Interface, use the 'no' form of this command.

Table 269 Bundle Sub-Interface

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **interface Bundle <1-255>.<0-4096>** | Creates the Bundle Sub-interface. |
| **no interface Bundle <1-255>.<0-4096>** | Removes the Bundle Sub-interface. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface Bundle 1.100**  Router(config-if-Bundle1.100)# **end**  Router# **show bundle**  VLAN Name Status Ports  ---- -------------------------------- --------- --------------------  4001 BUNDLE1 active  4002 BUNDLE1.100 active  VLAN MTU BridgeNo BrdgMode  ---- ---------- -------- ------------ ---------------  4001 1500 0 vlan-bridge  4002 1500 0 vlan-bridge  Router# |

To manage subscriber traffic, the operator can specify “SF Required Attribute Mask (TLV24/25.31)” per service-flow using the configuration file or service-class. Subscriber traffic that is carried by service-flow is forwarded to a bundle sub-interface that conforms to TLV24/25.31.

The bundle sub-interface provides IP (HSD) services by default; L2 (HSD) services can be provided by specifying S-VID to the bundle sub-interface.

The following commands are available for the bundle sub-interface.

Table 270 Additional Commands of Bundle Sub-Interface

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **docsis attribute-mask HEXAVALUE** | Specifies the 32bit attribute-mask value of Bundle Sub-Interface |
| **no docsis attribute-mask** | Removes the specified attribute-mask |
| **s-vlan <2-2094>** | Specifies the S-VID for L2HSD service |
| **no s-vlan** | Removes the specified S-VID for L2HSD service |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface Bundle 1.100**  Router(config-if-Bundle1.100)# **docsis attribute-mask 80000001**  Router(config-if-Bundle1.100)# **s-vlan 30** |

### Cable Bundle Setting and View

To configure a cable interface to belong to an Bundle interface, use this command in the INTERFACE mode of cable interface. To delete a cable interface of Bundle interface, use the 'no' form of this command.

Only a bundle interface can be specified as a cable interface; a bundle sub-interface cannot be specified as a cable interface because it manages subscriber traffic.

Table 271 cable bundle

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable bundle <1-255>** | Adds cable into bundle |
| **no cable bundle <1-255>** | Removes cable from bundle |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface EponInterface 2/1**  Router(config-if- Epon2/1)# **cable bundle 10**  Router(config-if- Epon2/1)# **end**  Router# **show bundle**  VLAN Name Status Ports  ---- -------------------------------- --------- --------------------  4010 BUNDLE010 active Ep2/1  VLAN MTU BridgeNo BrdgMode  ---- ---------- -------- ------------ ---------------  34010 1500 0 vlan-bridge  Router# |

## vCM and CPE’s DHCP Relay management

This section describes the guideline of vCM and CPE’s DHCP Relay management.

Please refer to the “*Chapter 5. DHCP*” for configuring the general DHCP Relay features.

### vCM’s DHCP helper-address Setting and View

To specify a DHCP Server so that cable modem sends Unicast DHCP packet, use this command in Bundle interface. To disable this feature, use the 'no' form of this command.

Table 272 vCM’s DHCP Helper-address

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable helper-address A.B.C.D cable-modem** | Specifies the DHCP Server of vCM. |
| **no cable helper-address A.B.C.D cable-modem** | Removes the specified DHCP Server of vCM. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface Bundle 10**  Router(config-if-Bundle10)# **cable helper-address 10.1.1.2 cable-modem**  Router(config-if-Bundle10)# **end**  Router# **show bundle**  VLAN Name Status Ports  ---- -------------------------------- --------- --------------------  **4010 BUNDLE010** active Ep2/1  VLAN MTU BridgeNo BrdgMode  ---- ---------- -------- ------------ ---------------  4010 1500 0 vlan-bridge  Router#  Router# **show ip dhcp relay**  DHCP relay : Enabled  DHCP Smart Relay feature : Enabled  DHCP Smart Relay retry count : 1  DHCP server-id based relay : Disabled  Verification of MAC address : Enabled  Insertion of option 82 : Enabled  DHCP relay information policy : keep  DHCP Option82 Management-IP : 0.0.0.0  DHCP maximum hop count : 10  DHCP helper-address for CPE is configured on following servers:  **DHCP helper-address for vCM is configured on following servers:**  **10.1.1.2(Bundle10)**  Router# |

### CPE’s DHCP helper-address Setting and View

To specify a DHCP Server so that DHCP Relay forwards CPE’s DHCP packets, use this command in Bundle interface. To disable this feature, use the 'no' form of this command.

Table 273 CPE’s DHCP Helper-address

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable helper-address A.B.C.D host** | Specifies the DHCP Server of vCM. |
| **no cable helper-address A.B.C.D host** | Removes the specified DHCP Server of vCM. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface Bundle 10**  Router(config-if-Bundle10)# **cable helper-address 10.1.1.2 host**  Router(config-if-Bundle10)# **end**  Router# **show bundle**  VLAN Name Status Ports  ---- -------------------------------- --------- --------------------  **4010 BUNDLE010** active Ep2/1  VLAN MTU BridgeNo BrdgMode  ---- ---------- -------- ------------ ---------------  4010 1500 0 vlan-bridge  Router#  Router# **show ip dhcp relay**  DHCP relay : Enabled  DHCP Smart Relay feature : Enabled  DHCP Smart Relay retry count : 1  DHCP server-id based relay : Disabled  Verification of MAC address : Enabled  Insertion of option 82 : Enabled  DHCP relay information policy : keep  DHCP Option82 Management-IP : 0.0.0.0  DHCP maximum hop count : 10  **DHCP helper-address for CPE is configured on following servers:**  **10.1.1.2(Bundle10)**  DHCP helper-address for vCM is configured on following servers:  10.1.1.2(Bundle10)  Router# |

### CPE’s DHCP Option82 Setting

To enable the system to insert the DHCP Option82 into CPE’s DHCP message, use this command. To disable this feature, use the 'no' form of this command.

(hcpd.)

Table 274 CPE’s DHCP option82

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable relay-agent-option host** | Specifies the CPE’s DHCP Option82 |
| **no cable relay-agent-option host** | Disable the CPE’s DHCP Option82 |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface Bundle 10**  Router(config-if-Bundle10)# **cable relay-agent-option host**  Router(config-if-Bundle10)# **end**  Router# |

### Cable GIADDR

To modify the GIADDR field for the DHCP DISCOVER and REQUEST packets with a relay IP address before they are forearded to the DHCP server, use this command. To set the GIADDR field to its default, use the ‘no’ form of this command.

Table 275 cable GIADDR modification

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable dhcp-giaddr A.B.C.D (cable-modem | host)** | Specifies the GIADDR of vCM and CPE |
| **no cable dhcp-giaddr A.B.C.D (cable-modem | host)** | Removes the Specified GIADDR of vCM and CPE |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface Bundle 10**  Router(config-if-Bundle10)# **cable dhcp-giaddr 10.1.1.1 cable-modem**  Router(config-if-Bundle10)# **cable dhcp-giaddr 20.1.1.1 host**  Router(config-if-Bundle10)# **end**  Router# |

To select the control policy, so that the primary address is used for cable modems and the secondary address is used for hosts and other customer premises equipment (CPE) devices, use this command.

Table 276 cable GIADDR policy

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable dhcp-giaddr policy strict** | Specifies the GIADDR policy |
| **no cable dhcp-giaddr policy strict** | Disable the Specified GIADDR policy |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface Bundle 10**  Router(config-if-Bundle10)# **cable dhcp-giaddr policy strict**  Router(config-if-Bundle10)# **end**  Router# |

### DHCP Option 43/17 for Vendor Specific Information

CableLabs defined Vendor Specific Information(Option43/17) as a DHCP IPv4/IPv6 option for cable operator’s provisioning system information about product that can be used to make device and service configuration decisions during the CM provisioning process.

To add Vendor Specific Information to the DHCP option, the CM vendor model must be specified with the following command.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable modem embeded vendor WORD model WORD** | Specifies the embedded CM for Option43/17 |
| **no cable modem embeded vendor WORD model WORD** | Removes the specified the embedded CM |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable modem embeded vendor CommScope model C1004**  Router(config)# **end**  Router# |

The following sub-options of Option43/17 are currently supported for the DPoE system.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| DHCP Option 43/17 | Value | Description |
| Sub-option 2 | <Device Type> | Device type of the component making the DHCP request. |
| Sub-option 3 | “ECM:<eSAFE1:…:eSAFEn>” | Colon-separated list of eCM and eSAFE(s) contained in the complete eDOCSIS device. First on the list MUST be "ECM" for eCM.  <eSAFE> is a embedded Router in case of DPoE product. |
| Sub-option 5 | <Hardware version> | Hardware version number. Identical to value as reported in the <Hardware version> field in the MIB object sysDescr. |
| Sub-option 6 | <Software version> | Software version number. Identical to value as reported in the <Software version> field in the MIB object sysDescr. |
| Sub-option 7 | <Boot ROM version> | Boot ROM version. Identical to value as reported in the <Boot ROM version> field in the MIB object sysDescr. |
| Sub-option 9 | <Model number> | Device model number. Identical to value as reported in the <Model number> field in the MIB object sysDescr. |
| Sub-option 10 | <Vendor name> | Vendor name or ID. Identical to value as reported in the <Vendor name> field in the MIB object sysDescr. |

To use the Vendor Specific Information(Option43/17) for CableLabs, use this command.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable dhcp-option-insert vendor-specific-info** | Enables the Option43/17 |
| **no cable dhcp-option-insert vendor-specific-info** | Disable the Option43/17 |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface Bundle 1**  Router(config-if-Bundle1)# **cable dhcp-option-insert vendor-specific-info**  Router(config-if-Bundle1)# **end**  Router# |

### DHCP Option 6 for MSO defined text

Operator can specify the specific MSO definded text to a cable interface. It can be utilized by the provisioning server to determine the profile for the user.

To use the MSO defined text(Option 6), use this command.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable dhcp-option-insert mso-defined-text LINE** | Specifies the MSO defined text |
| **no cable dhcp-option-insert mso-defined-text** | Removes the specified MSO defined text |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface *TponInterface* 1/1**  Router(config-if-Tpon1/1)# **cable dhcp-option-insert mso-defined-text SUB1**  Router(config-if-Tpon1/1)# **end**  Router# |

### DHCP Option 82 Sub-option for DPoE Version

To insert the DPoE Version suboption into DHCP Option 82, use this command.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable dhcp-option-insert dpoe** | Enables the DPoE Version Sub-option in DHCP Option 82 |
| **no cable dhcp-option-insert dpoe** | Disable the specified DPoE Version Sub-option |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface Bundle 1**  Router(config-if-Bundle1)# **cable dhcp-option-insert dpoe**  Router(config-if-Bundle1)# **end**  Router# |

## Source Address Verification (SAV) management

Source Address Verification (SAV) is a feature originally defined by DOCSIS. SAV is an enforcement mechanism that requires that all CPE IP addresses either are assigned via DHCP or are statically configured via the CM configuration file. Any upstream freames with IP source addresses that are not assigned via DHCP or statically provisioned must be dropped and counted.

### CPE’s SAV Setting

To enable verification of IP addresses for CPE devices on the upstream, use this command. To disable verification, use the ‘no’ form of this command.

Table 277 Source Address Verification (SAV)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable source-verify** | Enable SAV feature |
| **no cable source-verify** | Disable SAV feature |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface Bundle 10**  Router(config-if-Bundle10)# **cable source-verify**  Router(config-if-Bundle10)# **end**  Router#  Router# **show cable modem cpe**  MAC Address IP Address Dual IP Device Class  0001c.25bc.c546 10.25.8.211 no cpe  Router# **show cable modem dpoe-cpe**  CM MAC Addr CM IP Addr I/F S/C CPE MAC Addr CPE IP Addr  000d.b641.c3e8 172.17.10.100 1(CMCI) 10/3 001c.25bc.c546 10.25.8.211  Router# |

### Static SAV Setting

SAV CM Authorizations are used to ensure that CPEs located behind CMs cannot successfully spoof addresses in order to obtain access to services or to disrupt services to others. SAV CM Authorizations define subnets from which CPEsare allowed to use statically assigned addresses and not have to obtain them via DHCP.

To enable the use of SAV CM Authorications, use this command. This feature is only applicable when the “**cable source-verify**” command of bundle interface is enabled.

Table 278 Static Source Address Verification (SAV)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable source-verify enable-sav-static** | Enable Static SAV feature |
| **no cable source-verify enable-sav-static** | Disable Static SAV feature |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable source-verify enable-sav-static**  Router(config)# **end**  Router# |

The Instances of TLV-43.7 in the CM configuration file refer to the following group name of SAV CM Authorization prefix rules. To create a group name of SAV CM Authorization prefix rules, use the following command.

Table 279 Source Address Verification (SAV) group

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable source-verify group GROUPNAME** | Create SAV group |
| **no cable source-verify enable-sav-static** | Remove SAV group |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable source-verify group savCfgList**  Router(config-sav-group-savCfgList)# **static-sav-address 10.50.1.0/24**  Router(config-sav-group-savCfgList)# **end**  Router# |

## Subscriber Management

Subscriber Mangement in DPoE System focuses on two main areas. First is the learning of CPE Addresses and controlling the number allowed to be learned on a per-ONU basis. Second is the filtering of subscriber frames based on various criteria.

Both the DPoE system and the DPoE ONU take part in subscriber management functionality. This section describes the subscriber management functionality supported by system.

### CPE Learning Control at the DPoE System

To specify the default value for the maximum number of IPv4 addresses allowed for CPEs behind an ONU, use this command. This value is used whenever TLV-35 (subscriber management control) is not present in a CM config file.

The default maximum number of IPv4 addresses allowed for CPEs behind an ONU is 16.

Table 280 default maximum number of IPv4 CPEs behind an ONU

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable submgmt default max-cpe (<1-1023> | unlimit)** | Specifies the default maximum number of IPv4 addresses allowed for CPEs behind an ONU. |
| **no cable submgmt default max-cpe** | Changes the specified value to default. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable submgmt default max-cpe unlimit**  Router(config)# **end**  Router# |

To define the docsSubmgt3BaseCpeActiveDef value that controls whether a limit is placed on how many CPE IP Addresses can be learned and pass data from behind an ONU, use this command. If TLV-35 is not present in a CM Configuration file, this value is used in place of the TLV-35 “Active” bit value.

This value is Diabled by defualt.

Table 281 docsSubmgt3BaseCpeActiveDef control

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable submgmt default active** | Enable docsSubmgt3BaseCpeActiveDef control |
| **no cable submgmt default active** | Disable docsSubmgt3BaseCpeActiveDef control |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable submgmt default active**  Router(config)# **end**  Router# |

To define the docsSubmgt3BaseCpeLearnableDef value that controls whether CPE IP Addresses will be learned and allowed to pass traffic from behind an ONU, use this command. If TLV-35 is not present in a CM Configuration file, this value is used in place of this TLV-35 “Learnable” bit value.

This value is Enabled by default.

Table 282 docsSubmgt3BaseCpeLearnableDef control

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable submgmt default learnable** | Enable docsSubmgt3BaseCpeLearnableDef control |
| **no cable submgmt default learnable** | Disable docsSubmgt3BaseCpeLearnableDef control |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable submgmt default learnable**  Router(config)# **end**  Router# |

### CPE Learning Control at the ONU

ONUs are required by DPoE to perform dynamic learning of CPE addresses, and to limit and control the number of addresses that are allowed to exist behind the ONU. This learning and control is for L2 MAC Addresses, as well as for L3 IP Addresses.

To control the number of CPE MAC Addresses, the “Maximum Number of CPEs” TLV-18 is used in the CM Configuration File. If this override is configured, any TLV-18 value found in a CM Configuration file is ignored and the override value is used. This system only applies the TLV-18 or global override value to ONUs that are configured for IP(HSD) service.

TLV-18 does not apply to MEF services.

Although DPoE requires the control of L3 CPE addresses at the ONU, it is currently not possible because DPoE OAM does not provide any applicable messaging. Due to this, ONUs are currently only able to control L2 CPE addresses.

To define a global override for TLV-18 values found in CM Configuration files, use this command.

This value has 65535(disables override) by default.

Table 283 global override (Maximum Number of CPEs)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable modem max-cpe-mac <0-65535>** | Specifies the global override value.  “0” means “unlimited” |
| **no cable modem max-cpe-mac** | Change specified global override value to default. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable modem max-cpe-mac 10**  Router(config)# **end**  Router# |

### Filtering at the DPoE System

DPoE requires filtering of subscriber frames to be performed by the DPoE System. These filtering requirements are the same as those required by DOCSIS on CMTS equipment.

To define both docsSubmgt3BaseSubFilterDownDef value that specifies the CPE downstream filter group to use and docsSubmgt3BaseSubFilterUpDef value that specifies the CPE upstream filter group to use, the docsSubmgt3FilterGrpTable must be configured.

To modify the parameters of docsSubmgt3FilterGrpTable, docsSubmgt3FilterGrpTable must be created. To create docsSubmgt3FilterGrpTable, use the following commands.

Table 284 submgt filter group creation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable filter-group <1-1024> index <1-65535>** | Creates docsSubmgt3FilterGrpTable  “<1-1024>” means “Group Id”  “<1-65535>” means index of filter group in “Group Id”. |
| **no cable filter-group <1-1024> index <1-65535>** | Removes docsSubmgt3FilterGrpTable |

To modify the parameters of filter group, use the following command in the filter-group command node.

Table 285 parameter setting of filter group table

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **match-action (accept | drop)**  **no match-action** | The action to take when this filter rule matches a packet.  (default: permit) |
| **priority <1-65535>**  **no priority** | Defines the order in which the filter rules are compared against packets. The higher the value, the higher the priority.  (default: 0) |
| **ip-tos low <1-255> high <1-255>**  **no ip-tos** | The low and high value of a range of IP ToS octet values.  (default: low 0, high 0) |
| **ip-tos-mask <1-255>**  **no ip-tos-mask** | The mask value that is bitwise ANDed with the IP ToS octet in an IP packet, and the resulting value, are used for range checking against ip-tos-low and ip-tos-high.  (default: 0) |
| **ip-proto <1-257>**  **no ip-proto** | The value of the IP Protocol field required for IP packets to match this filter rule. The value 256 matches traffic with any IP protocol value. The value 257 by convention matches both TCP and UDP.  (default: 256) |
| **ip-version ipv4**  **no ip-version** | The type of IP address for src-ip, src-mask, dest-ip, and dest-mask. IPv6 is not currently supported.  (default: unknown) |
| **src-ip A.B.C.D src-mask A.B.C.D**  **no src-ip** | The values of the IP Source Address required for packets to match this filter rule. An IP packet matches the rule when the packet’s IP Source Address, bitwise ANDed with the src-mask value, equals the src-ip value.  (default src-ip: 0.0.0.0, default src-mask: 0.0.0.0) |
| **dest-ip A.B.C.D dest-mask A.B.C.D**  **no dest-ip** | The value of the IP Destination Address required for packets to match this filter rule. An IP packet matches the rule when the packet’s IP Destination Address, bitwise ANDed with the dest-mask value, equals the dest-ip value.  (default dest-ip: 0.0.0.0, default dest-mask: 0.0.0.0) |
| **range-src-port <0-65535> <0-65535>**  **no range-src-port** | The low-end and high-end inclusive range of TCP/UDP source port numbers to which a packet is compared. This command is irrelevant for non-TCP/UDP packets.  (default start port: 0, default end port: 65535) |
| **range-dest-port <0-65535> <0-65535>**  **no range-src-port** | The low-end and high-end inclusive range of TCP/UDP destination port numbers to which a packet is compared. This command is irrelevant for non-TCP/UDP packets.  (default start port: 0, default end port: 65535) |
| **dest-mac-addr H.H.H**  **no dest-mac-addr** | This value of the Destination MAC Address required for packets to match this filter rule. An Ethernet packet matches an entry when its destination MAC address, bitwise ANDed with the dest-mac-mask, equals the value of the dest-mac-addr.  (default: 0000.0000.0000) |
| **src-mac-addr H.H.H**  **no src-mac-addr** | The value to match against an Ethernet packet source MAC address.  (default: ffff.ffff.ffff) |
| **eth-proto-type etherType**  **no eth-proto-type** | “etherType” indicates the format of the L3 protocol ID in the Ethernet packet. The fileter rule applies only to frames that contain an EtherType value.  (default: none) |
| **eth-proto <1-65535>**  **no eth-proto** | This value represents the Ethernet protocol type to be matched against the packets. With eth-proto-type set to “none”, this value is ignored when considering whether a packet matches the filer rule. If the value eth-proto-type is “etherType”, this value gives the 16-bit value of the EtherType that the packet must match in order to match the filer rule.  (default: 0) |
| **vlan-id <1-4094>**  **no vlan-id** | This value applies only to Ethernet frames using the 802.1p/Q tag header. Tagged packets must have a VLAN Identifier that matches the value in order to match the filter rule.  (default: 0) |
| **cm-inf-mask HEXVALUE**  **no cm-inf-mask** | This value represents a bit-mask of the CM inbound interfaces to which this filter rule applies. This attribute only applies to Upstream Drop Classifiers being sent to CMs during the registration process. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable filter-group 1 index 1**  Router(config-filter-group-1,1)# **match-action drop**  Router(config-filter-group-1,1)# **ip-proto 257**  Router(config-filter-group-1,1)# **end**  Router#  Router# **show cable filter**  FilterID SrcAddr/Mask DestAddr/Mask Prot SPort DPort Action  0001,0001 0.0.0.0/00 0.0.0.0/00 257 0 0 drop  Router#  Router# **show cable filter group 1 index 1**  Filter Group : 1  Filter Index : 1  Matches  Match Action : drop  Priority : 0  IP TOS Low : 0  IP TOS High : 0  IP TOS Mask : 0  IP Protocol : 257  InetAddrType : unknown  IP Src Addr : 0.0.0.0  IP Src Mask : 0.0.0.0  IP Dst Addr : 0.0.0.0  IP Dst Mask : 0.0.0.0  Src Port : 0 ~ 65535  Dst Port : 0 ~ 65535  Dst MAC Addr : 0000.0000.0000  Dst MAC Mask : 0000.0000.0000  Src MAC Addr : FFFF.FFFF.FFFF  Enet-Proto Type: none  Enet-Proto : 65535  User Priority : 0 ~ 7  Vlan ID : 0  CM If Mask :  Router# |

## ONU Encryption and Authentication

This system supports Early Authentication and Encryption (EAE) as defined by the DPoE 1.0 Security Specification.

To enable or disable the “ONU Encryption and Authentication” feature, use the following command in the PON Interface.

This feature is disabled by default.

Table 286 Early Authentication and Encryption (EAE) enable/disable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable privacy eae-policy total-enforcement** | Enables EAE on the interface |
| **no cable privacy eae-policy total-enforcement** | Disables EAE on the interface |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface EponInterface 2/1**  Router(config-if-Epon2/1)#**cable privacy eae-policy total-enforcement**  Router(config-if-Epon2/1)#**end**  Router# |

### Security and Certificate Settings

To enable or disable two ONU Authentication checks performed by system when it validates an ONU certificate, use the following command.

Table 287 security and certificate settings

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable privacy certificate (trusted|untrusted) skip-validity-period (true|false) tek-lifetime <0-604800>** | Specifies the security and certificate. |
| **no cable privacy certificate (trusted|untrusted) skip-validity-period (true|false) tek-lifetime <0-604800>** | Changes the configured value to default |

**certificate (trusted|untrusted)**

The default trust of the self-signed manufacturer certificate entries, cantained in docsBpi2CmtsCACertTable and created after this object is set.

Default: untrusted

**skip-validity-period (true|false)**

Setting this object to True causes all chained and root certificates in the chain to have their validity periods checked against the current time of day when the DPoE system receives a request from the OLT SoC to authorize the ONU.

Default: True

**tek-lifetime <0-604800>**

The lifetime, in seconds, of the traffic encryption key (TEK) used on each ONU link.

Default: 43200

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface EponInterface 2/1**  Router(config-if-Epon2/1)# **cable privacy certificate trusted skip-validity-period false tek-lifetime 1800**  Router(config-if-Epon2/1)# **end**  Router# |

### CA Certificate

CA Certificate is used to provision the trust value of a CA cetificate. System makes use of the trust value when verifying the ONU device certificate chain during the ONU Authentication process.

To create a CA Certificate entry, use the following command.

Table 288 CA Certificate entry creation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **crypto ca trustpoint <1-4294967295> cli** | Creates CA Cetificate entry  “<1- 4294967295>” means the index of entry |
| **no crypto ca trustpoint <1-4294967295> cli** | Removes CA Certificate Table |

To modify the parameters of CA Certificate entry, use the following command in the crypto-ca-trustpoint command node.

Table 289 parameter setting of CA Certificate

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **trust (1|2|3|4)**  **no trust** | Specifies the trust state of the CA certificate.  - Trusted (1): CA Certificate is to be trusted even if the certificate was found to be invalid.  - Untrusted (2): CA Certificate is to be untrusted even if the certificate was found to be valid.  - Chained (3): CA Certificate is chained to a root CA certificate.  - Root (4): CA Certificate is a root CA certificate.  Default is Chained (3). |
| **certificate DER-ENCODED-CA**  **no certificate** | Specifies the X.509 DER-encoded ONU device certificate |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **crypto ca trustpoint 1 cli**  Router(crypto-ca-trustpoint-1)# **trust 1**  Router(crypto-ca-trustpoint-1)# **certificate** **3082036030820248a0030201**  **02021009b02ee36372146e062f335b65f1653a300d06092a864886f70d0101050500304a310b300906035504061302555331123010060355040a13094361626c654c616273312730250603550403131e4361626c654c616273204d616e75666163747572657220526f6f74204341301e1……………**  Router(crypto-ca-trustpoint-1)# **end**  Router# |

### CM Certificate

CM Certificate is used to provision the trust value of an ONU device certificate. System makes use of the trust value when verifying the ONU device certificate during the ONU Authentication process.

To create a CM Certificate entry, use the following command.

Table 290 CM Certificate entry creation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **crypto ca certificate chain H.H.H cli** | Creates CM Cetificate entry  “H.H.H” means the MAC address of the ONU |
| **no crypto ca certificate chain H.H.H cli** | Removes CM Certificate Table |

To modify the parameters of CM Certificate entry, use the following command in the crypto-ca-certificate-chain command node.

Table 291 parameter setting of CM Certificate

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **trust (1|2)**  **no trust** | Specifies the trust state of the provisioned ONU certificate.  - Trusted (1): ONU certificate is to be trusted even if the certificate was found to be invalid.  - Untrusted (2):ONU certificate is to be untrusted even if the certificate was found to be invalid.  Default is Untrusted (2). |
| **certificate DER-ENCODED-CERT**  **no certificate** | Specifies the X.509 DER-encoded ONU device certificate |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **crypto ca certificate chain 000d.b640.5060 cli**  Router(crypto-ca-certificate-chain-000d.b640.5060)# **trust 1**  Router(crypto-ca-certificate-chain-000d.b640.5060)# **certificate** **3082**  **036030820248a003020102021009b02ee36372146e062f335b65f1653a300d06092a864886f70d0101050500304a310b300906035504061302555331123010060355040a13094361626c654c616273312730250603550403131e4361626c654c616273204d616e7566616374757265722…….**  Router(crypto-ca-certificate-chain-000d.b640.5060)# **end**  Router# |

## Certificate Revocation List

This system supports a feature that allows an operator to configure whether system will use a Certificate Revocation List (CRL) during the ONU Authentication process, and where system Must retrieve the CRL. This feature is used to fulfill requirements of DPoE Security specification.

A CRL is a file containing a list of X.509 certificates that have been revoked. If provisioned to do so, system downloads the CRL from the provisioned CRL server URL. System then makes use of the CRL whenever it authenticates an ONU. System checks the CRL to determine if either the Manufacturer CA certificate or the ONU device certificate passed up to system have been revoked. If either or both certificates have been revoked and either or both certificates have not been provisioned as trusted, then system fails the ONU Authentication process for that ONU.

To specify the CRL method, use the following command.

Table 292 Certificate Revocation List (CRL) Method

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable privacy revocation method (crl|ocsp|both)** | Specifies which certificate revocation method is to be used by system to verify the ONU certificate validity.  Default: none |
| **no cable privacy revocation method (crl|ocsp|both)** | Changes specified CRL method to default |

**crl**

System does not attempt to determine the revocation status of a certificate.

**ocsp**

System uses a Certificate Revocation List (CRL) as defined by the “**cable privacy revocation crl url WORD**” command.

**both**

System uses both CRL and OCSP.

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable privacy revocation method crl**  Router(config)# **end**  Router# |

To specify the URL of CRL, use the following command.

Table 293 URL of Certificate Revocation List (CRL)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable privacy revocation crl (url WORD|refresh-interval <1-524160>)** | Specifies the URL of CRL and refresh interval. |
| **no cable privacy revocation crl (url|refresh-interval)** | Changes specified value to default |

**url WORD**

The URL from where system will retrieve the CRL. The maximum length of the URL is 255 characters.

**refresh-interval <1-524160>**

This is the refresh interval, in minutes, for system to retrieve the CRL with the purpose of updating its Certificate Revocation List.

Default refresh interval is 10,080 minutes (7 days)

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable privacy revocation crl url http://www.crls.com**  Router(config)# **cable privacy revocation crl refresh-interval 14400**  Router(config)# **end**  Router# |

## Online Certificate Status Protocol

This system supports a feature that allows an operator to configure whether system will use the Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) during the ONU Authentication process. This feature is used to fulfill requirements of DPoE Security specification.

If provisioned to do so, system sends a request to the provisioned OCSP URL to query the revocation status of a certificate. System queries the revocation status of both the Manufacturer CA certificate and the ONU device certifiate passed up to system. If the OCSP reply indicates that either or both certificates have been revoked and either or both certificates have not been provisioned as trusted, then system failes the ONU Authentication process for that ONU.

To specify the OCSP during the ONU Authentication process, use the following command.

Table 294 Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable privacy revocation ocsp (url WORD|skip-sig-check|timeout <1-600000>)** | Specifies the OCSP feature |
| **no cable privacy revocation ocsp (url|skip-sig-check|timeout)** | Changes specified OCSP values to default |

**url WORD**

The URL from which system will retrieve the OCSP information. The maximum length of the URL is 255 characters.

**skip-sig-check**

Used to enable or disable signature checking on OCSP response messages.

Default is False.

**timeout <1-600000>**

The time, in milliseconds, that system will wait for an OCSP response.

Default is 1000 msec.

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)#**cable privacy revocation ocsp url http://www.ocsp.com**  Router(config)#**cable privacy revocation ocsp skip-sig-check**  Router(config)#**cable privacy revocation ocsp timeout 5000**  Router(config)#**end**  Router# |

## EAE Exclusion List

This system supports a feature that allows an operator to configure which ONUs are allowed to bypass ONU Encryption and Authentication when registering with the DPoE System. This feature also allows the operator to configure which ONUs are allowed to bypass Secure Software download when they are upgraded.

Entries in the EAE Exclusion List consist of a base MAC Address and a MAC Address Mask to allow ranges of MAC addresses to be specified (similar to IP Network Address/Mask). Entries within the EAE Exclusion List are not allowed to overlap. If an entry being created overlaps an existing entry, an error status is retruned in response to the provisioning request.

When an ONU starts the registration process with system, system checks if the ONU’s primary link MAC address is contained within an entry of the EAE Exclusion List. MAC addresses tat match an entry in the EAE Exclusion List cause system to skip link encryption and ONU Authentication for that ONU.

This feature is provided to allow operators to register ONUs that do not support EAE, so that they can be upgraded to a version of firmware that supports both ONU Link Encryption and ONU Authentication.

When the software download process is initiated for an ONU, if the ONU’s primary link MAC address is contained within an entry of the EAE Exclusion List, Secure software Download is not performed. This allows a raw ONU image to be downloaded and installed onto the ONU for the case where the ONU is running an older version of firmware that does not support Secure Software Download.

To add ONU MAC Addresses in the EAE Exclusion List, use the following command.

Table 295 EAE Exclusion List

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable privacy eae-exclude H.H.H (mask <1-48>|)** | Add ONU MAC Address in the EAE Exclusion List. |
| **no cable privacy eae-exclude H.H.H** | Delete ONU MAC Address from the EAE Exclusion List |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable privacy eae-exclude 000d.b6ea.0080 mask 48**  Router(config)#**end**  Router#  Router# **show cable privacy eae-exclude**  EAE Exclusion List:  MAC: 000d.b6ea.0080 Mask: ffff.ffff.ffff  Router# |

## ONU White List

The ONU White List is a feature that enables an operator to configure the DPoE System PON Ports on which an ONU is permiited to register. This ONU White List is used to fulfill requirements of the DPoE Security specification.

The ONU White List works by having system ignore all Link Discovery Autonomous HMI messages for a particular ONU when tat ONU is trying to register on a PON port that it is not provisioned to be on.

When the ONU White List is used, it is important to note that it is necessary to configure each and every ONU that is supposed to register on the DPoE System. In other words, if the table is empty, ONUs can register on any PON interface. When the ONU White List contains one or more entries, only ONUs that match these values are permitted into the DPoE System.

If an ONU might connect to more than one PON port, the operator must include an entry for the ONU MAC address for each PON port. In this way, an ONU can be moved between PON ports while the ONU White List feature is operating.

To add ONU Maccesses for each PON port, use the following command.

Table 296 ONU White List

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable modem allow-list H.H.H** | Add ONU MAC Address into White List |
| **no cable modem allow-list H.H.H** | Delete ONU MAC Address from White List |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **int EponInterface 2/1**  Router(config-if-Epon2/1)# **cable modem allow-list 000d.b641.c3e8**  Router(config-if-Epon2/1)# **end**  Router#  Router# **show cable modem allowed**  I/F MAC Address  C2/1 000d.b641.c3e8  Router# |

## CM Offline List

### CM Offline List

The CM Offline list is a diagnostic feature to assist operators in identifying ONUs that were once connected, but are no longer connected to the DPoE System. When a virtual CM goes offline due to an ONU reset or other virtual CM Operation (e.g., failure to complete authorization, registration, IP address acquisition, CM configuration file download, etc.), the DPoE system’s representation of the virtual CM remains accessible for a provisioned period of time.

To modify the CM Offline List aging feature, use the following command.

Table 297 CM Offline List aging

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable offline-list aging <1-864000>** | Modifies the period of time, in seconds, that a virtual CM will remain in the offline state.  (Deafult: 86400s (1 day) |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable offline-list aging 86400**  Router(config)# **end**  Router#  Router# **show cable modem offline**  Interface MAC address Prim Previous Offline Rx Rx SM  Sid State Time Power SNR Exhaust  Count  Router# **clear cable modem offline delete**  Router# |

### CM Flap List

The CM Flap List is a diagnostic feature to assist operators in identifying instability associated with ONU connectivity and initialization. Operators monitor and analyze the CM Flap List to determine if a specific vCM is having difficulty completing registration (e.g., improperly configured modem provisioning files will result in the vCM, associated with the ONU, failing registration, and resetting the ONU). Operators also monitor and analyze the Flap List to determine if specific segments of the fiber plant are unstable, for example, many vCM flap entries for ONUs on a specific interface may indicate poor plant conditions.

To provision the CM Flap List, use the following command.

Table 298 CM Flap List provisioning

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable flap-list (aging <1-86400>|size <1-65535>|insertion-time <60-86400>)** | Modifies the CM Flap List feature. |

**aging <1-86400>**

The period of time, in minutes, that a virtual CM will remain on the Flap List.

Default is 10080 minutes. (7 days)

**size <1-65535>**

The maximum number of entries on a given downstream interface that are permitted on the Flap list. Once full, no additional entries can be inserted onto the list.

This maximum value is defined as a per-downstream limit applied to the channel-based representation of the Flap List. This maximum is multiplied by the number of provisioned downstream interfaces to define a DPoE System-wide limit for the legacy representation of the Flap List.

Default is 100.

**insertion-time <60-86400>**

Specifies the minimum insertion (registration) time interval in seconds. Any vCM that makes a registration request more frequently than this period of time is placed in the Flap List.

Default is 180s. (3 minutes)

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable flap-list aging 10080**  Router(config)# **cable flap-list size 200**  Router(config)# **cable flap-list insertion-time 300**  Router(config)# **end**  Router#  Router# **show cable modem offline**  Interface MAC address Prim Previous Offline Rx Rx SM  Sid State Time Power SNR Exhaust  Count  Router# **show cable flap-list**  MAC Address CableIF Ins Hit Miss CRC P-Adj Flap Time  Router#  Router# **clear cable flap-list ?**  **H.H.H** MAC address (HHHH.HHHH.HHHH)  **all** All cable modems  Router# clear cable flap-list |

## Optical Monitoring

This System provides access to the PON Optical Monitoring information provided by OLTs and ONUs, which can be used to detect and diagnose problem in the optical network. Optical monitoring information includes:

* + For OLT PON Ports:

- Transmit laser power  
- Laser supply voltage  
- Laser bias current  
- Laser Temperature  
- Received idle laser power

* + For ONUs:

- Transmit laser power  
- Laser supply voltage  
- Laser bias current  
- Laser Temperature  
- Received laser power

In addtion to the optical monitoring data, system also provides CRC and Line Coding errors, as well as statistics on how well Forward Error Correction (FEC) is working on the upstream PON.

The following example CLI commands demonstrate the use of the Optical Monitoring information.

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **show interface epon downstream**  I/F Power VCC Bias Temp Bytes Frames FEC Blks TX  (dBm) (V) (mA) (C)  C2/1 0.00 0.00 0 0.00 0 0 0  C2/2 0.00 0.00 0 0.00 0 0 0  C2/3 0.00 0.00 0 0.00 0 0 0  C2/4 0.00 0.00 0 0.00 0 0 0  C2/5 0.00 0.00 0 0.00 0 0 0  C2/6 0.00 0.00 0 0.00 0 0 0  C2/7 0.00 0.00 0 0.00 0 0 0  C2/8 5.04 3.28 10 41.07 10895936 1732749 0  Router# **show interface epon upstream**  I/F Power Frames CRC-8 Errs Coding Errs Pckt Errs  (dBm)  C2/1 0.00 0 0 0 0  C2/2 0.00 0 0 0 0  C2/3 0.00 0 0 0 0  C2/4 0.00 0 0 0 0  C2/5 0.00 0 0 0 0  C2/6 0.00 0 0 0 0  C2/7 0.00 0 0 0 0  C2/8 -36.99 0 0 0 0  Router# **show epon onu monitor**  MAC Addr TX Power VCC Bias Temp RX Power  (dBm) (V) (mA) (C) (dBm)  0010.1899.d848 2.49 3.20 33 56.27 -7.84 |

### CM Power Levels

System provides access to transmit and receive laser power information in the following units wherever power levels are reported.

* + Power in units of tenths of a microWatt
  + Power in units of dBm

To support the reporting of power-level information for existing DOCSIS MIBs and existing CLI commands, System also provides power measurements in units of tenths of dBm V x 10 for power levels reported for each vCM/ONU on the DPoE System.

The following example CLI commands demonstrate the use of the power level information.

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **show epon onu**  MAC Address OLT LLID EPON RX RTT Prod Prod Frmw OAM  Port Power Code Vers Vers  0007.70e8.f48c 000d.b623.0020 0000 0/0 -8.53 380 2000 0001 E324 ---  Router# **show cable modem**  MAC Address IP Address I/F MAC Prim RxPwr Timing Num BPI  State Sid (db) Offset CPEs Enb  0007.70e8.f48c 10.50.101.186 C2/1 online 1 38.7 62 0 N |

## CM TFTP Client Settings

The relatively long retry and time-out duration values for the TFTP download Retry and TFTP Wait parameters may not be desired in lab environments or real deployments.

In most cases, vCM configuration files should be under 1 MB in size and ONU firmware files should be under 100 MB in size. System provides protection from operator errors or malicious activity that result in transferring huge files (hundreds of MB or GB in size) to the system. By default, system permits file transfers of no more than 500 KB.

To modify the vCM TFTP Client settings, use the following command.

Table 299 vCM TFTP Client settings

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable modem tftp-max-file-size <150-104857>**  **no cable modem tftp-max-file-size** | Changes the maximum file size, in 1 KB units.  (Default: 1100 KB) |
| **cable modem tftp-retries <0-99>**  **no cable modem tftp-retries** | Changes the maximum number of retries that will be attempted when retrieving a file from a TFTP server.  (Default: 3) |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable modem tftp-max-file-size 1000**  Router(config)# **cable modem tftp-retries 5**  Router(config)# **end**  Router# |

## CM Event Management

In this chapter, the system for managing the CM in the Event management is described. Event of the CM collected from the system are sent to the server using the Syslog message, or, to the SNMP trap receiver using SNMP TRAP message. All the collected events can be stored in non-volatile memory for events after the system reboots so that they can be utilized to trace the events.

In order to collect CM Event the Event Id must be registered in the system, and non-registered Event Event Id will be automatically discarded.

In order to register the Event Id, use the following command.

Table 300 CM Event Id registration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable event ctrl-event-id <0-4294967295>** | Register the Event Id.  Event Id “0” enables the Event of every CM to be collected in the system. |
| **no cable event ctrl-event-id <0-4294967295>** | Remove the registered Event Id. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable event ctrl-event-id 0**  Router(config)# **end**  Router#  Router# **show cable event**  - Ev TrapLog Level : 5  - Ev ThrottleThresholdExceeded : FALSE  Last Issued Date EvCounts Lv EvId EvText  2013-12-09 04:32:48 00000003 5 3098281942 Cmts : Link down;ifIndex=200120  2013-12-09 04:32:48 00000003 5 80000101 Link down;ifIndex=200120;ifAlias=US-Cable2/1  2013-12-09 04:32:48 00000001 4 82010400 Failed to receive Periodic RNG-REQ from modem (SID 1), timing-out SID;CM-MAC=00:07:70:e8:  f4:8c;CM-QOS=1.1;CM-VER=3.0;CMTS-VER=3.0;REG-ID=1;Link loss alarm, de-registering CM in state Operational (8);  Router#  Router# **clear cable event**  Router#  Router# **show cable event**  - Ev TrapLog Level : 5  - Ev ThrottleThresholdExceeded : FALSE  Router# |

### Event Log Control

The Event that occurs in each CM is written in a volatile local log which will be recorded into a permanent storage. The stored information at the permanent storage will be used to restore the Event Table to the event status after the system reboots.

The Event Logs which CM generates can be transferred to syslog servers according to the operator's preference. They can issue SNMP TRAP to SNMP Trap Receiver.

In order to manage Event Log, use the following commands.

Table 301 Event Log Control

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable event control (all|<0-8>|alerts|critical|**  **debugging|emergencies|errors|informational|notifications|warnings|trace) volatile** | Write the Events of specified Event Level to volatile storage only. |
| **no cable event control (all|<0-8>|alerts|critical|**  **debugging|emergencies|errors|informational|notifications|warnings|trace) volatile** | Write the Events of specified Event Level to non-volatile storage only |
| **cable event control (all|<0-8>|alerts|critical|**  **debugging|emergencies|errors|informational|notifications|warnings|trace) (local|traps|syslog|none)** | Assign the Action of the Event Level. |
| **no cable event control (all|<0-8>|alerts|critical|**  **debugging|emergencies|errors|informational|notifications|warnings|trace) (local|traps|syslog|none)** | Change the Action of the assigned Event Level to default. |

**local**

Write all the received Event Log to both volatile and non-volatile storage.

**traps**

Transfer the received Event Log via SNMP TRAP. The way to adjust the SNMP Trap Host can be found at “Chapter 1 Overview”.

**syslog**

Transfer the received Event Log to Syslog server. The way to configure the Syslog server can be found at Logging configure in “Chapter11 Satistics Monitoring”.

**none**

Make no action to the received Event Log.

The system works out the Event management as Default, which is specified in DPoE 1.0 Specification. The Default actions are summarized as below.

Table 302 Default Actions of Event Level

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Event Level | Default Action |
| **Emergencies (0)** | Local |
| **Alerts (1)** | Local |
| **Critical (2)** | Local, Trap, Syslog |
| **Errors (3)** | Trap, Syslog |
| **Warnings (4)** | Trap, Syslog |
| **Notifications (5)** | Trap, Syslog, volatile local log |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable event control all local**  Router(config)# **end**  Router#  Router# **show cable event**  - Ev TrapLog Level : 5  - Ev ThrottleThresholdExceeded : FALSE  Last Issued Date EvCounts Lv EvId EvText  2013-12-09 17:19:45 00000003 5 3098281942 Cmts : Link down;ifIndex=200120  2013-12-09 17:19:45 00000003 5 80000101 Link down;ifIndex=200120;ifAlias=US-Cable2/1  2013-12-09 17:19:45 00000001 4 82010400 Failed to receive Periodic RNG-REQ from modem (SID 1), timing-out SID;CM-MAC=00:07:70:e8:  f4:8c;CM-QOS=1.1;CM-VER=3.0;CMTS-VER=3.0;REG-ID=1;Link loss alarm, de-registering CM in state Operational (8);  Router#  Router# **show cable event logging**  2013-12-09 17:25:02 [5] [3098281942] Cmts : Link down;ifIndex=200101  2013-12-09 17:25:02 [5] [0080000101] Link down;ifIndex=200101;ifAlias=Cable2/1  2013-12-09 17:25:02 [5] [3098281942] Cmts : Link down;ifIndex=200110  2013-12-09 17:25:02 [5] [0080000101] Link down;ifIndex=200110;ifAlias=DS-Cable2/1  2013-12-09 17:25:02 [5] [3098281942] Cmts : Link down;ifIndex=200120  2013-12-09 17:25:02 [5] [0080000101] Link down;ifIndex=200120;ifAlias=US-Cable2/1  2013-12-09 17:25:02 [4] [0082010400] Failed to receive Periodic RNG-REQ from modem (SID 1), timing-out SID;CM-MAC=00:07:70:e8:f4:8c  ;CM-QOS=1.1;CM-VER=3.0;CMTS-VER=3.0;REG-ID=1;Link loss alarm, de-registering CM in state Operational (8);  Router#  Router#  Router# **show cable event logging flash**  2013-12-09 17:25:02 [5] [3098281942] Cmts : Link down;ifIndex=200101  2013-12-09 17:25:02 [5] [0080000101] Link down;ifIndex=200101;ifAlias=Cable2/1  2013-12-09 17:25:02 [5] [3098281942] Cmts : Link down;ifIndex=200110  2013-12-09 17:25:02 [5] [0080000101] Link down;ifIndex=200110;ifAlias=DS-Cable2/1  2013-12-09 17:25:02 [5] [3098281942] Cmts : Link down;ifIndex=200120  2013-12-09 17:25:02 [5] [0080000101] Link down;ifIndex=200120;ifAlias=US-Cable2/1  2013-12-09 17:25:02 [4] [0082010400] Failed to receive Periodic RNG-REQ from modem (SID 1), timing-out SID;CM-MAC=00:07:70:e8:f4:8c  ;CM-QOS=1.1;CM-VER=3.0;CMTS-VER=3.0;REG-ID=1;Link loss alarm, de-registering CM in state Operational (8);  Router#  Router#  Router# |

### Event Log Size

The size of Cable Event Table which the system manages is limited to be 10. The content of Cable Event Table can be referred by “**show cable event**” command as well as collected to SNMP via docsDevEventTable MIB.

To change the size limit of Cable Event Table, use the following command.

Table 303 Event Log Size

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable event trap-buff-size <10-128>** | Change the size of Cable Event Table.  (Default: 10) |
| **no cable event trap-buff-size** | Return the changed size of Cable Event Table to defualt. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable event trap-buff-size 20**  Router(config)# **end**  Router#  Router# **show cable event**  - Ev TrapLog Level : 5  - Ev ThrottleThresholdExceeded : FALSE  Last Issued Date EvCounts Lv EvId EvText  2013-12-09 04:32:48 00000003 5 3098281942 Cmts : Link down;ifIndex=200120  2013-12-09 04:32:48 00000003 5 80000101 Link down;ifIndex=200120;ifAlias=US-Cable2/1  2013-12-09 04:32:48 00000001 4 82010400 Failed to receive Periodic RNG-REQ from modem (SID 1), timing-out SID;CM-MAC=00:07:70:e8:  f4:8c;CM-QOS=1.1;CM-VER=3.0;CMTS-VER=3.0;REG-ID=1;Link loss alarm, de-registering CM in state Operational (8);  Router# |

### Event Throttling

System uses the objects in the docsDevEvent to control how many traps and syslog messages are genrated by system within a given time frame. The operator can throttle the events to stay under a predefined threshold, stop generating events when the threshold is reached, or stop generating events altogether.

To control the transmission of traps and syslog messages with respect to the trap pacing threshold, use the following command.

Table 304 Throttle Admin Status

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable event throttle-admin**  **(unconstrained|maintainBelowThreshold|stopAtThreshold|inhibited)** | Change the Throttle Admin Status.  (Default: Unconstrained) |
| **no cable event throttle-admin** | Return the changed Throttle Admin Status to default. |

**unconstrained**

Unconstrained causes traps and syslog messages to be transmitted without regard to the threshold settings.

**maintainBelowThreshold**

maintainBelowThreshold causes trap transmitssion and syslog messages to be suppressed if the number of traps would otherwise exceed the threshold.

**stopAtThreshold**

stopAtThreshold causes trap transmitssion to cease at the threshold and not to resume until directed to do so.

**inhibited**

inhibited causes all trap transmission and syslog messages to be suppressed.

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable event trap-buff-size 20**  Router(config)# **end**  Router#  Router# **show cable event**  - Ev TrapLog Level : 5  - Ev ThrottleThresholdExceeded : FALSE  Last Issued Date EvCounts Lv EvId EvText  2013-12-09 04:32:48 00000003 5 3098281942 Cmts : Link down;ifIndex=200120  2013-12-09 04:32:48 00000003 5 80000101 Link down;ifIndex=200120;ifAlias=US-Cable2/1  2013-12-09 04:32:48 00000001 4 82010400 Failed to receive Periodic RNG-REQ from modem (SID 1), timing-out SID;CM-MAC=00:07:70:e8:  f4:8c;CM-QOS=1.1;CM-VER=3.0;CMTS-VER=3.0;REG-ID=1;Link loss alarm, de-registering CM in state Operational (8);  Router# |

To change the number of events in the configured interval when throttling will occur, use the following command.

Table 305 Event Throttle Threshold

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable event throttle-threshold <1-10000>** | Set the value of Throttle Threshold.  (Default: 0) |
| **no cable event throttle-threshold** | Return the set Throttle Threshold to default. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable event throttle-threshold 20**  Router(config)# **end**  Router# |

To change the length of time, in seconds, that defines the interval over which the event rate will be calculated, use the following command.

Table 306 Event Throttle Interval

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable event throttle-interval <1-3600>** | Change the Throttle interval.  (Default: 1s) |
| **no cable event throttle-interval** | Return the changed Throttle interval to default. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable event throttle-interval 10**  Router(config)# **end**  Router# |

## CM Secure Software Download

System supports upgrading of ONU firmware using the standard mechanisms and interfaces outlined by the DPoE specifications. These specifications closely follow what specified in the DOCSIS 3.0 specifications, but there are some fundamental differences:

* + ONU firmware upgrade is a “two-step” process, in which the vCM (residing on the DPoE System) first retrieves the image from the TFTP server and then sends the image to the ONU using DPoE OAM via the OLT.
  + The validation of the VCVs embedded within the firmware image is performed by the vCM, not by the physical ONU. CVC validation is not performed if the ONU is provisioned on the EAE Exclusion list.
  + The Time Varying Controls associated with the image are updated by the vCM in the ONU as a separate OAM operation.
  + Similarly, the image filename is also stored on the ONU by the vCM. If the TVCs or filename cannot be updated, then the entire upgrade operation is deemed to have failed.

To enable or disable Secure Software Download, use the following command.

Table 307 secure software download

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable secure-download (enable|disable)** | If enabled secure-download, system assumes that the image file contains certificates that need to be extracted and validated before sending the image to the ONU. If disabled, the image is forwarded to the ONU without modification.  (Default: Disabled) |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable secure-download enable**  Router(config)# **end**  Router#  Router# **show cable firmware**  MAC Address IP Address Op Version Filename  000d.b640.5868 172.18.200.231 0t A263 (3CBCC658) signed\_App3714\_DPoE\_A263\_78.96  Router# |

## MEF-MN Interface

To construct PB/PBB Network over the system, the upstream interface should be included in Service VLAN so as to enable upstream and downstream traffic to flow bothway. The system may designate any particular Interface to be a MEF-MN Interface so that the Interface can be included in Service VLAN automatically. Also the interface can be included into Service VLAN in manual manner.

The system, when an ONU is connected, will bring the vCM Configuration File of the ONU from TFTP server. And the system will create the Service VLAN which is specified in the Configuration File, and assign the MEF-MN Interface to the created Service VLAN automatically.

For the way to include the MEF-MN Interface into Service VLAN manually, refer to “Chapter 3. VLAN” in this manual.

In order to include the MEF-MN Interface into Service VLAN in automatic manner, use the following command.

Table 308 MEF-MN interface

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **dpoe mef-mn (all|<2-4094>)** | Designate the VLAN for including MEF-MN Interface. |
| **dpoe mef-mn range VLAN\_ID\_LIST** | Set the range of VLAN for MEF-MN Interface. |
| **no dpoe mef-mn** | Make the assigned MEF-MN Interface to be Disabled. |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 6/1**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **dpoe mef-mn all**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Router# |

## Subscriber’s Provider Bridging (PB) Serivces

This section describes the provisioning of subscriber services supported by system

### Provider Bridging Services

This section describes the Provider Bridging (PB) services and related features supported by system. DPoE defines two modes of operation for MEF services: encapsulation mode and transport mode. These modes and related features are described in the sections below.

### 802.1ad PB Encapsulation Mode

802.1ad PB Encapsulation Mode is a MEF service used to establish a point-to-point L2VPN for a subscriber. For this service, the ONU is responsible for adding and removing an outer SVLAN tag. The DPoE System forwards the SVLAN-tagged framges between the PON and DPoE MN without adding and removing any tags. The following Figure shows the frame formats used for 802.1ad PB encapsulation Mode.

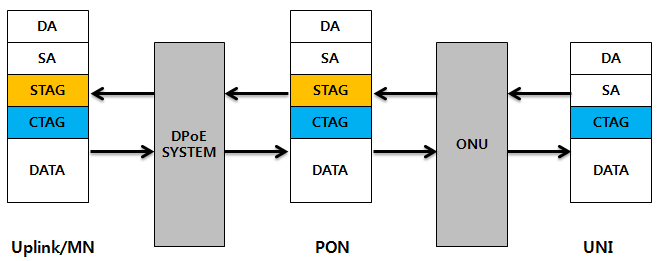


Figure 53 802.1ad PB Encapsulation Mode

For the upstream direction, ONU adds an SVLAN tag to the user frame before transmitting the frame on the PON. DPoE System forwards the frame from the PON out the MN without modifying the frame.

For the downstream direction, DPoE System forwards the SVLAN-tagged frames received from the MN to the PON interface containing the ONU that is terminating the service.

The following Figure shows a CTAGS present in each of the frames. However, System also supports encapsulation of untagged and SVLAN-tagged frames as required by DPoE.

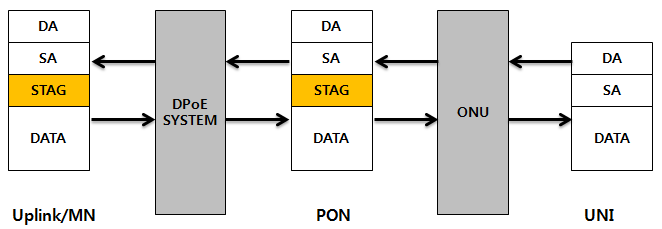


Figure 52 802.1ad PB Encapsulation Mode with Untagged Traffic

If an upstream frame arrives at the ONU UNI with an SVLAN tag, the ONU will add a second SVLAN tag to the frame before forwarding the frame upstream. For this scenario, the DPoE System receives a service frame with two SVLAN tags.

The following example shows how to setup the MEF MN interface and displaying statistics and information for PB services configured for ONUs in system.

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 6/1**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **no shutdown**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **dpoe mef-mn all**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **dot1q ethertype 0x8100**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Router#  Router# **show interface cable 3/1 l2-vpn dot1ad**  Sfid Dir CM MAC Addr VLAN ID/ Mode NNI CM Customer Name/  I-SID I/F VPN ID  1 US 0007.7000.0000 100 dot1ad-en 1 PB-EN-S-1  2 DS 0007.7000.0000 100 dot1ad-en 1 PB-EN-S-1  Router#  Router# **show interface cable 3/1 l2-vpn dot1ad tpid**  Sfid Dir CM MAC Addr VLAN ID/ Mode NNI TPID UNI TPID  I-SID  1 US 0007.7000.0000 100 dot1ad-en 0x88a8 -  2 DS 0007.7000.0000 100 dot1ad-en 0x88a8 -  Router#  Router# **show cable modem interfaces**  MAC Address IP Address I/F Type Service S-VLAN C-VLAN  /I-SID  0007.7000.0000 10.50.101.198 1 MU dot1ad-en 100 0  Router#  Router# |

### 802.1Q PB Encapsulation Mode

802.1Q PB Encapsulation Mode is an MEF service used to establish a point-to-point L2VPN for a subscriber, and is similar to 802.1ad PB Encapsulation Mode except that the ONU is responsible for adding and removing an outer CVLAN tag.

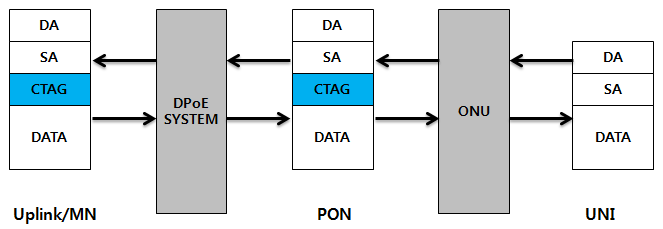


Figure 53 802.1Q PB Encapsulation Mode

For the upstream direction, ONU adds a CVLAN tag to the userframe before transmitting the frame on the PON. System forwards the frame from the PON out the MN without modifying the frame.

For the downstream direction, System forwards the CVLAN-tagged frames received from the MN to the PON interface containing the ONU that is terminating the service. ONU can recemove the tag before forwarding the frame out the UNI.

The following example shows how to setup the MEF MN interface and displaying statistics and information for PB services configured for ONUs in system.

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 6/1**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **no shutdown**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **switchport mode trunk**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **switchport trunk allowed vlan add 80**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Router#  Router# **show interface cable 3/1 pb**  I/F CM MAC Addr CM I/F Type Service S-VLAN C-VLAN  C3/1 0007.7000.0000 1 MU dot1ad-en 80 0  Router# |

### PB Transport Mode

PB Transport Mode is a MEF subscriber service used to establish a point-to-point L2VPN for a subscriber. For this service, the device attached to the ONU UNI (typically a DPoE DEMARC) is responsible for adding and removing VLAN tags. The ONU and DPoE System simply switch and forwards the VLAN-tagged frames to the correct destination based on the VLAN IDs in the frame. The ONU and DPoE System do not add or remove VLAN tags.

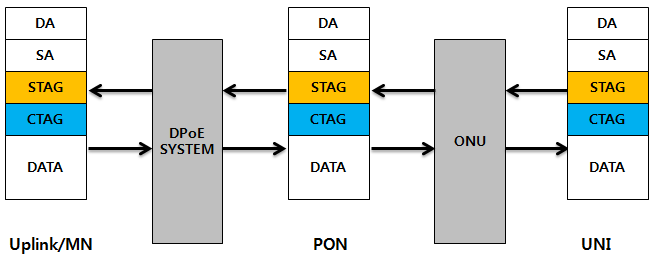


Figure 54 PB Transport Mode

In the upstream direction, ONU classifies traffic received on the UNI to EPON Links (LLIDs) based on the SVID and, if provisioned, the CVID contained in the frame. For Transport Mode configurations, the ONU never adds, removes, or modifies VLAN tags. System forwards the frame from the PON out the MN without modifying the frame.

In the downstream direction, System uses the SVID and, if provisioned, the CVID to switch and forward the VLAN-tagged frames received from the MN to the PON interface containing the ONU that is terminating the service. ONU can forward the frame from the PON to the UNI without modifying the frame.

System also supports Transport Mode for SVLAN-tagged-only frames as required DPoE. The following Figure shows the frame format used for transporting SVLAN-tagged-only frames (single-tagged frames with TPID 88A8). In addition, System supports Transport Mode Configuration for CVLAN-tagged-only frames (single-tagged frames with TPID 8100).

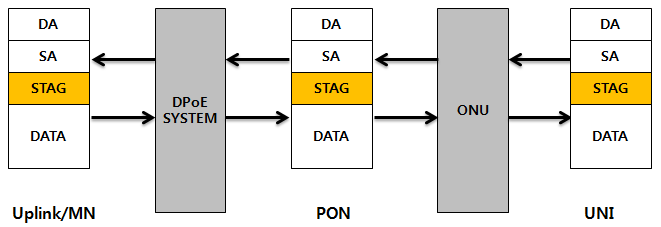


Figure 55 PB Transport Mode with SVLAN Tag Only

The following example shows how to setup the MEF MN interface and displaying statistics and information for PB services configured for ONUs in system.

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface GigabitEthernet 6/1**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **no shutdown**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **dpoe mef-mn all**  Router(config-if-Giga6/1)# **end**  Router#  Router# **show interface cable 3/1 l2-vpn dot1ad**  Sfid Dir CM MAC Addr VLAN ID/ Mode NNI CM Customer Name/  I-SID I/F VPN ID  1 US 0007.7000.0000 100 dot1ad-tr 1 PB-TR-S-1  2 DS 0007.7000.0000 100 dot1ad-tr 1 PB-TR-S-1  Router#  Router# **show interface cable 3/1 l2-vpn dot1ad tpid**  Sfid Dir CM MAC Addr VLAN ID/ Mode NNI TPID UNI TPID  I-SID  1 US 0007.7000.0000 100 dot1ad-tr 0x88a8 0x88a8  2 DS 0007.7000.0000 100 dot1ad-tr 0x88a8 0x88a8  Router#  Router# **show cable modem interfaces**  MAC Address IP Address I/F Type Service S-VLAN C-VLAN  /I-SID  0007.7000.0000 10.50.101.198 1 MI dot1ad-tr 100 0  Router#  Router# **show cable l2-vpn dot1q-vc-map**  MAC Address Ethernet Intf VLAN ID Cable Intf SID Customer Name/VPN ID  0007.7000.0000 GigE3/1 100 Cable3/1 1 PB-TR-S-1  Router# |

## Subscriber’s Provider Backbone Bridging (PBB) Serivces

This section describes the Provider Backbone Bridging (PBB), otherwise known as “mac-in-mac” services and related features supported by system.

### PBB Encapsulation Mode

802.1ah PBB Encapsulation Mode is an MEF service used to establish a point-to-point L2VPN for a subscriber. For this service, the ONU is responsible for adding and removing the entire 902.1ah header, including the backbone destination MAC address (B-DA), backbone source MAC address (B-SA), and the six-byte I-Tag. The DpoE System forwards the 902.1ah encapulated frames from the PON to the uplink/MN without adding or removing any 802.1ah encapsulation headers. DPoE PBB Encapsulation Mode does not insert or use a backbone VLAN tag (B-Tag).

The following Figure shows the frame formats used for 902.1ah PBB Encapsulation modem.

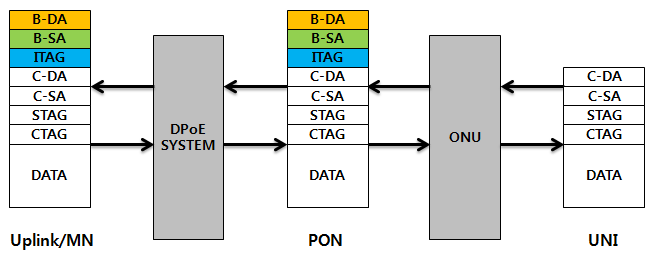


Figure 56 PBB Encapsulation Mode

For the upstream direction, ONU adds a B-DA, B-SA, and I-Tag to the service frame before transmitting the frame on the PON. System forwards the frame from the PON out the MN without modifying the frame.

For the downstream direction, system uses the I-SID to switch and forward the I-Tagged frames received from the MN to the PON interface containing the ONU that is terminating the service. ONU can remove the 802.1ah encapsulation (B-DA, B-SA, and I-Tag) before sending the frame out the UNI.

### PBB Transport Mode

802.1ah PBB Transport Mode is an MEF serivce used to establish a point-to-point L2VPN for a subscriber. For this service, the device attached to the ONU UNI (typically a DPoE DEMARC) is responsible for adding and removing the 802.1ah, “mac-in-mac” encapsulation. The ONU and DPoE System switch and forward the encapsulated frames to the correct destination based on the I-SID in the frame. The ONU and DPoE System are not responsible for adding or removing 802.1ah encapsulation.

The following Figure shows the frame formats used for PBB Transport Mode



Figure 57 PBB Transport Mode

For the upstream direction, ONU classifies traffic received on the UNI to EPON Links(LLIDs), based on the I-SID contained in the frame. For Transport Mode configurations, the ONU never adds, removes, or modifies the 802.1ah encapsulation header (B-DA, B-SA, I-Tag). System forwards the frame from the PON out the MN without modifying the frame.

For the downstream direction, System uses the I-SID to switch and forward the I-Tagged frames received from the MN to the PON interface containing the ONU that is terminating the service. ONU can forward the frame from the PON to the UNI without modifying the frame.

Unlike PBB Encapsulation Mode, DPoE requires the ONU and DPoE System to forward 802.1ah frames that contain a B-Tag. However, the B-Tag should be “ignored” by the DPoE System and ONU, and the B-Tag should not be used for switching purpose. In DPoE 1.0, the ONU always forwards frames with or without B-Tags.

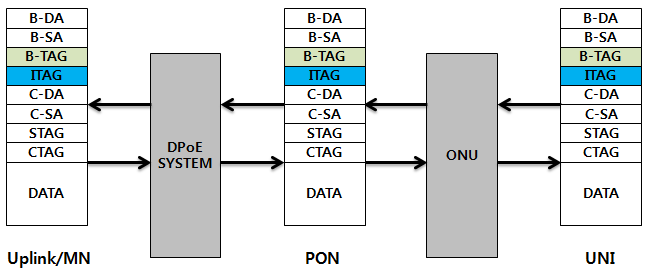


Figure 58 PBB Transport Mode with B-Tags

The following example shows information for PBB services configured for ONUs in system.

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **show interface cable 3/1 l2-vpn dot1ah**  Sfid Dir CM MAC Addr VLAN ID/ Mode NNI CM Customer Name/  I-SID I/F VPN ID  1 US 0007.7000.0000 256 dot1ah-tp 1 EPL-1  2 DS 0007.7000.0000 256 dot1ah-tp 1 EPL-1  3 US 0007.7000.0001 65536 dot1ah-en 1 EPL1  4 DS 0007.7000.0001 65536 dot1ah-en 1 EPL1  Router#  Router# **show interface cable 3/1 l2-vpn dot1ah bmac**  Sfid Dir CM MAC Addr B-DA B-SA I-SID Mode  1 US 0007.7000.0000 - 0000.0011.1111 256 dot1ah-tp  2 DS 0007.7000.0000 0000.0011.1111 - 256 dot1ah-tp  3 US 0007.7000.0001 0000.5e01.0203 0000.0011.1111 65536 dot1ah-en  4 DS 0007.7000.0001 0000.0011.1111 0000.5e01.0203 65536 dot1ah-en  Router#  Router# **show interface cable 3/1 l2-vpn dot1ah tpid**  Sfid Dir CM MAC Addr VLAN ID/ Mode NNI TPID UNI TPID  I-SID  1 US 0007.7000.0000 256 dot1ah-tp 0x88e7 0x88e7  2 DS 0007.7000.0000 256 dot1ah-tp 0x88e7 0x88e7  3 US 0007.7000.0001 65536 dot1ah-en 0x88e7 -  4 DS 0007.7000.0001 65536 dot1ah-en 0x88e7 -  Router#  Router#**show interface cable 3/1 pbb**  I/F CM MAC Addr CM I/F Type Service I-SID  C3/1 0007.7000.0000 1 MI dot1ah-tp 256  C3/1 0007.7000.0001 1 MU dot1ah-en 65536  Router#  Router# **show cable modem interfaces**  MAC Address IP Address I/F Type Service S-VLAN C-VLAN  /I-SID  0007.7000.0000 10.50.101.197 1 MI dot1ah-tp 256 0  0007.7000.0001 10.50.101.198 1 MU dot1ah-en 65536 0  Router# |

## IP(HSD) Services

This section describes the IP(HSD) service-related features supported by system. System supports DPoE IP(HSD) and system also supports as defined by DOCSIS, which is referred to as Legacy IP(HSD).

The differnece between DPoE IP(HSD) and Legacy IP(HSD) services is that in DPoE IP(HSD) MEF Provider Bridging tags are added to the IP(HSD) frames prior to transmission on the PON. These tags only on the PON, and are not allowed to exit the DPoE System “D” interface or the ONU UNI. In Legacy IP(HSD) mode, no additional tags are added to frames.

### DPoE IP(HSD)

In DPoE IP(HSD) mode, MEF PB tags (S+C) are added to IP frames prior to transmission on the PON. The following Figure shows the frame formats used when in DPoE IP(HSD) mode.

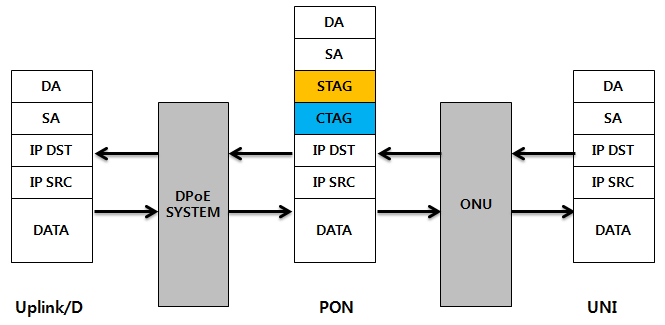


Figure 59 DPoE IP(HSD)

As shown above, tags are added by the ONU and OLT prior to transmission on the PON. Tags are removed before transmitting over the Uplink/D and ONU UNI.

To enable or disable IP(HSD), use the following command.

Table 309 IP(HSD)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **iphsd tagging (enable|disable)** | Specifies the IP(HSD) traffic over the PON interfaces.  (Default: Disabled) |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **iphsd tagging enable**  Router(config)# **end**  Router# |

### Serving Groups

The DPoE IP Network Elements specification introduced the concept of an IP Serving Group, or IP-SG. An IP-SG is used to define which S-VID(s) are used for tagging the IP(HSD) traffic going to/from a particular set of ONUs over the PON.

In System, a serving group is assigned to a particular Bundle Interface as a Sub-Interface. Each serving group has a configurable type and can be assigned S-VID. when DPoE IP(HSD) is in use, all IP(HSD) traffic to/from ONUs registering on a “cable interface” or “cable bundle” referencing a serving group of type IP, gets tagged in accordance with the S-VID(s) defined by the serving group.

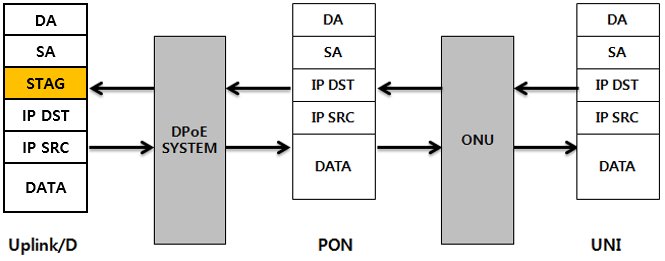


Figure 60 Serving-Group Frame Formats

### Legacy IP(HSD)

The Tagging Style can be set so that system does not use DPoE IP(HSD) tagging on the PON. In this case, IP frames traverse the PON without any additional S+C tagging. This is similar to how a DOCSIS CMTS operates today. The following Figure shows the frame formats used when in Legacy IP(HSD) Mode.

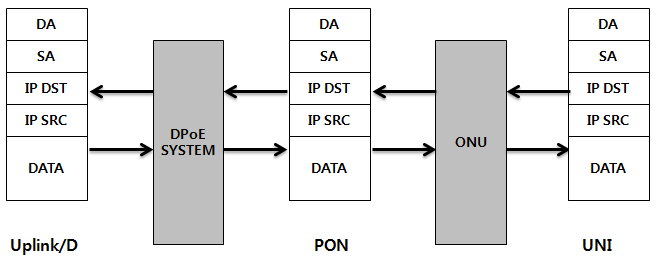


Figure 61 Legacy IP(HSD) Frame Formats

As shown above, no tags are added by the ONU or the DPoE System prior to transmission on the PON. Frames are forwarded based on either L2 or L3 learned address information. The OLT and ONU switch based on the Destination MAC Address. The DPoE System uses IP Destination Address to make its forwarding decisions.

## Quality of Service (QoS)

System provides support for DPoE Quality of Service functionality.

### Service Flows

A service flow is defined as a DPoE MAC-layer service that provides unidirectional transport of frames. System supports the concept of service flows and uses the EPON Link as the tranport mechanism. System maps pairs of upstream and downstream flows to EPON Links and provides support for all required MIBs that provide service flow related information.

DPoE requires support for a subset of the DOCSIS Quality of Service parameters that define service flow scheduling behavior. Typically, these parameters are configured via TLVs in the CM configuration file, but they can also be preconfigured in the DPoE System via Service Classes.

The QoS parameters currently supported by system are listed below. System configures SLAs and Shapers in the OLT and ONU devices using these parameters.

Table 310 QoS parameters

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Parameters | Description |
| **Maximum Sustanined Traffic Rate** | This parameter defines a rate in bits per second that frame transmissions over a service flow cannot exceed. This parameter applies to both upstream and downstream flows. |
| **Maximum Traffic Burst** | This parameter defines a limit on the number of “back-to-back” data bytes that can be sent on a service flow at the maximum speed of the underlying media. This parameter applies to both upstream and downstream flows. |
| **Minimum Reserved Traffic Rate** | This parameter defines a rate in bits per second that must be guaranteed for frame transmissions over a service flow. This parameter applies to both upstream and downstream flows. |
| **Traffic Priority** | This parameter specifies a priority assigned to service flow transmissions and allows a DPoE System to provide differentiated scheduling services beased on the value. This parameter applies to both upstream and downstream flows. |
| **Scheduling Type** | This parameter specifies a method of upstream scheduling. Although this parameter is more applicable to CMTS Scheduling of RF channels, it is required in DPoE. Only BE and RTP types are required to be supported, but System also supports NRTP. The scheduling types determine which additional QoS parameters need to be specified for upstream service flows. In other words, there are parameter interdependencies that must be enforced. This parameter applies only to upstream flows. |
| **Request/Transmission Policy** | This parameter is a bitmap that provides a means to enable or disable various features of a DOCSIS CMTS scheduler. For DPoE, only support for Bit #4 is required. It controls the “force report” behavior of the OLT scheduler. This parameter applies only to upstream flows. |
| **Nominal Polling Interval** | This parameter defines how often (in microseconds) an EPON Link is asked to send an MPCP REPORT message advertising how much data it has to send. The DPoE System is not required to implement the Nominal Polling Interval exactly as configured. It may be approximated, as long as the approximated value is displayed in the relavant MIB tables. This parameter applies only to upstream flows. |
| **Maximum Concatenated Burst** | This parameter defines how many bytes can be sent upstream on an EPON Link in response to a single MPCP GATE allocation. DPoE requires that this parameter NOT be supported and that it must be ignored if configured, which system does by default. This parameter applies only to upstream flows. |
| **IP TOS Overwrite** | This parameter defines a masking capability that allows modification of the IPv4 TOS field of frames passing through a service flow. This parameter applies to upstream and downstream flows. |

QoS parameters can be configured via Service Classes. A Service Class is a set of service flow parameters that are preconfigured in the system. A CM configuration file can reference a Service Class via TLV in a service flow encoding, and these Service Class parameters will be used in the absence of explicit TLVs.

To create a Service Class Table, use the following command.

Table 311 Service Class Table

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable service-class downstream class-index WORD**  **no cable service-class downstream class-index WORD** | Creates or Removes Service Class Table for downstream |
| **cable service-class upstream class-index WORD**  **no cable service-class upstream class-index WORD** | Creates or Removes Service Class Table for upstream |

To configure parameters of Service Class, use the following command in the config-cable-service command node.

Table 312 parameters of Service Class Table

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **max-burst <1522-4294967295>**  **no max-burst** | Specifes the value for Maxmum Transmit Burst, in units of bytes.  (Default: 3200) |
| **max-concat-burst (<1-65535>|unlimit)**  **no max-concat-burst** | Specifes the value for Maximum Concatenated Burst, in units of bytes.  (Defualt: 1600) |
| **max-rate <1-4294967295>**  **no max-rate** | Specifies the value for Maximum Sustained Traffic Rate, in bits per second.  (Default: 0) |
| **min-rate <1-4294967295>**  **no min-rate** | Specifies the value for Minimum Reserved Traffic Rate, in bits per second.  (Default: 0) |
| **poll-interval <1-4294967295>**  **no poll-interval** | Specifies the value for Nominal Polling Interval, in units of microseconds.  (Default: 0) |
| **priority <1-7>**  **no priority** | Specifies the value for Traffic Priority.  (Default: 0) |
| **req-trans-policy HEXA-DECIMAL**  **no req-trans-policy** | Specifies the value for Request/Transmission Policy. There is no enforced range for this parameter, but this parameter is a bitmap and only Bit #4 has meaning in DPoE.  (By default, all bits in this bitmap are set to 0) |
| **sched-type (be|nrtp|rtp|ugsad|ugs)**  **no sched-type** | Specifies the value for Scheduling Type.  - BE: Best Effort  - NRTP: Non-Real-Time Polling  - RTP: Real-Time Polling  - UGS: Unsolicited Grant Service  - UGSAD: Unsolicited Grant Service  with Activity Detection  (Default: BE) |
| **tos-overwrite (and-mask|or-mask) HEXA-DECIMAL**  **no tos-overwrite (and-mask|or-mask)** | Specifies the value for the “And Mask” or “Or Mask” portion of the IP TOS Overwrite field. There is no enforced range for this parameter. The default value for “And Mask” is 255, which means IP TOS will not be overwritten if “Or Mask” is also set to its default value. The default value for “Or Mask” is 0, which means IP TOS will not be overwritten if “And Mask” is also set to its default value. |
| **req-attr-mask HEXAVALUE**  **no req-attr-mask** | Specifies the 32bit attribute-mask value of TLV24/25.31 for IP Serving-Group |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable service-class upstream class-index Upstream\_RTP**  Router(config-cable-service-upstream,Upstream\_RTP)# **max-burst 16000**  Router(config-cable-service-upstream,Upstream\_RTP)# **max-rate 1000000**  Router(config-cable-service-upstream,Upstream\_RTP)# **sched-type rtp**  Router(config-cable-service-upstream,Upstream\_RTP)# **poll-interval 5000**  Router(config-cable-service-upstream,Upstream\_RTP)# **end**  Router#  Router# **show cable service-class**  Index Name Dir Sched Prio MaxSusRate MaxBurst MinRsvRate  1 Upstream\_RTP US BE 0 0 3200 0  Router# |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **show cable modem**  MAC Address IP Address I/F MAC Prim RxPwr Timing Num BPI  State Sid (db) Offset CPEs Enb  0007.70e8.f48c 10.50.101.186 C2/1 online 1 0.0 62 0 N  Router#  Router# **show cable modem 0007.70e8.f48c qos**  Sfid Dir Curr Sid Sched Prio MaxSusRate MaxBrst MinRsvRate Throughput  State Type  1 US act 1 BE 7 0 12800 0 374  2 DS act N/A UNDEF 7 0 12800 0 15613  Router#  Router# **show cable modem 0007.70e8.f48c qos verbose**  Sfid : 1  Current State : Active  Sid : 1  Traffic Priority : 7  Maximum Sustained rate : 0 bits/sec  Maximum Burst : 12800 bytes  Mimimum Reserved rate : 0 bits/sec  Mimimum Packet Size : 0 bytes  Admitted QoS Timeout : 200 seconds  Active QoS Timeout : 0 seconds  Maximum Concatenated Burst : 0 bytes  Scheduling Type : Best Effort  Request/Transmission policy : 0x00  IP ToS Overwrite[AND-mask, OR-mask] : 0xff,0x00  Current Throughput : 373 bits/sec, 5 packets/sec  Sfid : 2  Current State : Active  Sid : N/A  Traffic Priority : 7  Maximum Sustained rate : 0 bits/sec  Maximum Burst : 12800 bytes  Mimimum Reserved rate : 0 bits/sec  Mimimum Packet Size : 0 bytes  Admitted QoS Timeout : 200 seconds  Active QoS Timeout : 0 seconds  Maximum Concatenated Burst : 0 bytes  Scheduling Type : Undefined  Request/Transmission policy : 0x00  IP ToS Overwrite[AND-mask, OR-mask] : 0xff,0x00  Current Throughput : 15594 bits/sec, 10 packets/sec  Router#  Router# **show interface cable 2/1 service-flow**  Sfid Sid Mac Address QoS Param Index Type Dir Curr Active BG / CH  Prov Adm Act State Time  1 1 0007.70e8.f48c 0 0 0 prim US act 0h43m N/A  2 N/A 0007.70e8.f48c 0 0 0 prim DS act 0h43m N/A  Router# |

### Statistics per Service Flow

The following real-time statistics are available for the service-flows being provisioned as the CM becomes ONLINE.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **dpoe service-flow counter (enable|** **disable)** | Enables the service-flow counter  (Default: Enabled) |
| **dpoe service-flow counter interval <60-600>** | Specifies the retrieving interval of service-flow counter  (Default: 300s) |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **show cable modem 0024.4503.77c8 service-flow counter**  Sfid Packets Bytes FCS Errors Bits/Sec Bytes/Sec  -----------------------------------------------------------------------------------  1 388 68676 0 40 5  2 388 79540 0 48 6  3 0 0 0 0 0  4 0 0 0 0 0  5 0 0 0 0 0  Router#  Router# **show cable modem 0024.4503.77c8 service-flow counter detail**  Service-Flow 01 (Upstream)  Freames : 388  Bytes : 68676  MulticastFrames : 0  BroadcastFrames : 0  UnicastFrames : 388  64ByteFrames : 194  65To127ByteFrames : 0  128To255ByteFrames : 0  256To511ByteFrames : 194  512To1023ByteFrames : 0  1024To1518ByteFrames: 0  1519BytePlusFrames : 0  FcsErrors : 0  Service-Flow 02 (Downstream)  Freames : 388  Bytes : 79540  MulticastFrames : 0  BroadcastFrames : 0  UnicastFrames : 388  64ByteFrames : 194  65To127ByteFrames : 0  128To255ByteFrames : 0  256To511ByteFrames : 194  512To1023ByteFrames : 0  1024To1518ByteFrames: 0  1519BytePlusFrames : 0  FcsErrors : 0  Service-Flow 03 (Downstream)  Freames : 0  Bytes : 0  MulticastFrames : 0  BroadcastFrames : 0  UnicastFrames : 0  64ByteFrames : 0  65To127ByteFrames : 0  128To255ByteFrames : 0  256To511ByteFrames : 0  512To1023ByteFrames : 0  1024To1518ByteFrames: 0  1519BytePlusFrames : 0  FcsErrors : 0  Service-Flow 04 (Downstream)  Freames : 0  Bytes : 0  MulticastFrames : 0  BroadcastFrames : 0  UnicastFrames : 0  64ByteFrames : 0  65To127ByteFrames : 0  128To255ByteFrames : 0  256To511ByteFrames : 0  512To1023ByteFrames : 0  1024To1518ByteFrames: 0  1519BytePlusFrames : 0  FcsErrors : 0  Service-Flow 05 (Downstream)  Freames : 0  Bytes : 0  MulticastFrames : 0  BroadcastFrames : 0  UnicastFrames : 0  64ByteFrames : 0  65To127ByteFrames : 0  128To255ByteFrames : 0  256To511ByteFrames : 0  512To1023ByteFrames : 0  1024To1518ByteFrames: 0  1519BytePlusFrames : 0  FcsErrors : 0  Router# |

## Classifiers

System provides support for required DPoE Classification functionality.

### Downstream

Down clasifiers are used to match frames coming from the northbound interface of a DPoE System, and determine which service flows (and therefore which EPON Links) they should be sent on to traverse the PON and arrive at a particular ONU.

Downstream clasifiers are configured via the CM configuration file, using TLV-23. System creates clasification rules based on these TLV settings and communicates them to the OLT which services the ONU.

### Upstream

Upstream classifiers match frames coming into the UNI interfaces of a DPoE ONU and determine which service flows (and therefore which EPON Links) they should be sent on to traverse the PON and arrive at the DPoE System.

Upstream classifiers are configured via the CM configuration file, using TLV-22. System creates classification rules based on these TLV settings and communicates them to the OLT that services the ONU. In turn, the OLT sends DPoE OAM to configure the ONU as appropriate.

### Upstream Drop Classifiers

Upstream Drop classifiers match frames coming into the UNI interfaces of a DPoE ONU and determine whether they should be dropped. They are packet filters, implemented in the ONU so that frames are dropped prior to traversing the PON.

Upstream Drop classifiers are configured via the CM configuration file, using TLV-60 or TLV-62. System creates filter rules based on these TLV settings and communicates them to the OLT that services the ONU. In turn, the OLT sends DPoE OAM to configure the ONU as appropriate.

To enable the Upstream Drop Classifier, use the following command.

Table 313 parameters of IP(HSD) Serving Group Table

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable privacy udc-policy (enable|disable)** | Enable Upstream Drop Classifier on the specified cable interface.  (default: Disabled) |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **int EponInterface 2/1**  Router(config-if-Epon2/1)# **cable privacy udc-policy enable**  Router(config-if-Epon2/1)# **end**  Router#  Router#  Router# **show interface cable 2/1 service-flow**  Sfid Sid Mac Address QoS Param Index Type Dir Curr Active BG / CH  Prov Adm Act State Time  1 1 0007.70e8.f48c 0 0 0 prim US act 0h33m N/A  2 N/A 0007.70e8.f48c 0 0 0 prim DS act 0h33m N/A  Router#  Router# **show interface cable 2/1 service-flow 1 verbose**  Sfid : 1  MAC Address : 0007.70e8.f48c  Type : Primary  Direction : Upstream  Current State : Active  Current QoS Indexes [Prov, Adm, Act] : [0,0,0]  Active Time : 0h33m  Sid : 1  Admitted QoS Timeout : 200 seconds  Active QoS Timeout : 0 seconds  Packets : 4904358  Bytes : 349481904  Rate Limit Delayed Packets : 0  Rate Limit Dropped Packets : 0  Current Throughput : 1388899 bits/sec, 2436 packets/sec  Classifiers:  Router# |

## DPoEv2.0 Multicast

System provides support for required DPoEv2.0 Multicast functionality.

### Multicast Operation

The DPoEv2.0 Specifications support IP multicast for IP(HSD) services by adopting the IP multicast model defined in [MULPIv3.0]. This model supports the delivery of Any Source Multicast (ASM) and Source-Specific Multicast (SSM) IP multicast streams to D-ONUs. As defined in [MULPIv3.0], the D-ONU is not aware of IP multicast control protocols. In DPoE specifications, the D-ONU does not proxy or snoop to track Layer-3 IP multicast group membership. Instead, all of the processing and management functionality related to multicast group membership is at the DPoE System.

System supports the provisioning and operation of IP multicast for IP(HSD) as defined in [MULPIv3.0], and this includes:

* Support for forwarding Source Specific Multicast traffic for IGMPv3 [RFC 3376] and MLDv2 [RFC 3810] CPE devices
* Support for forwarding Any Source Multicast traffic for IGMPv1/v2 and MLDv1 CPE devices
* Support for downstream multicast QoS
* Support for static multicast
* Support for downstream encrypted multicast
* Support for IPv4 and IPv6 multicast traffic
* Explicit tracking at the DPoE System of CPEs joined to a given multicast group

The following exceptions and differences from [MULPIv3.0] for support of IP multicast apply to this version of DPoE specifications:

* Upstream multicast is not defined in this version of the DPoE specification but the forwarding of upstream multicast traffic is not actively prevented. There is no upstream support defined for functionality such as multicast QoS or upstream multicast encryption.
* Pre-Registration IP multicast is not supported.
* Downstream Service ID (DSID) defined in [MULPIv3.0] is replaced with a multicast LLID (mLLID).

### Single Session vs Aggregate Session

Single Session is that one channel is forwarded by one Multicast LLID, and each channel must belong to Multicast Service Profile. In short, the Multicast LLID is assigned to each channel.

Aggregate Session is that multiple channels are forwarded by one multicast LLID. The traffic of channels that do not match Multicast Service Profile is forwarded through the Broadcast Domain.

### Multicast QoS

To perform DPoEv2.0 Multicast in 10G Line-Card, Downstream Service-Class, Group-QoS-Config (GQC) and Group-Config (GC) should be defined in advance.

To specify a Group-QoS-Config, use this command.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable multicast group-qos default scn SCN-NAME aggregate (session-limit <1-1000> |)** | Specifies the default aggregate session for GQC |
| **no cable multicast group-qos default scn SCN-NAME aggregate** | Removes the specified default aggregate session for GQC |
| **cable multicast group-qos GQC-ID scn SCN-NAME single** | Specifies the single session for GQC. GQC-ID is used for identifying Group-Config (GC). |
| **no cable multicast group-qos GQC-ID scn SCN-NAME single** | Removes the specified single session for GQC |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable multicast group-qos default scn MDEFAULT aggregate**  Router(config)# **cable multicast group-qos 10 scn MSINGLE single** |

To create a Group-Config (GC), use this command.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable multicast qos group <1-255>** | Creates the Group-Config profile |
| **no cable multicast qos group <1-255>** | Removes the Group-Config profile |
| **session-range A.B.C.D A.B.C.D** | Specifies the session range to Group-Config |
| **group-qos <1-255>** | Specifies the GQC-ID to Group-Config |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **cable multicast qos group 1**  Router(config-mqos-1)# **session-range 231.1.1.0 255.255.255.0**  Router(config-mqos-1)# **group-qos 10**  Router(config-mqos-1)# **end**  Router# |

To associate Group-Config into forwarding cable interface, use this command.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Description |
| **cable multicast-qos group <1-255>** | Specifies the GC-ID for multicast QoS |
| **no cable multicast-qos group <1-255>** | Removes the multicast QoS |

|  |
| --- |
| Router# **configure terminal**  Router(config)# **interface TponInterface 1/1**  Router(config-if-Tpon1/1)# **cable multicast-qos group 1**  Router(config-if-Tpon1/1)# **end**  Router#  Router# **show cable modem 0024.4504.812e multicast**  Group address CPE IP Address CPE Mac Address Uptime Exptime GQC-ID GC-ID  Router#  Router# **show cable multicast 10/1 db**  Group address CPE IP Address CPE Mac Address CM Mac Address Uptime Exptime Mode LLID  Router#  Router# **show cable multicast 10/1 dsid**  Session LLID Ch # Total bytes Current Kbps  ------------------------------------------------------------------  Router# |

## Rate setting for PON interface port

PIM-8XE card which takes care of 10Gbps tranmission rate for subscriber side communication in DPoE C9500 is able to support different rate combinations unlike PIM-8EB which supports only 1Gbps rate.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| *알림 및 경고* | **Notice** | PIM-8EB supports only the transmission rate of 1Gbps/1Gbps (downstream/upstream) |

### Available rates for PIM-8XE

Depending on the factors like what kind of optic modules are used in OLT and ONU and whether OLT is configured for Turbo mode or not, transmission speed will be determined.

Table 314 Transmission rates of DPoE C9500 PON segment

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Optic module in OLT** | **Optic module in ONU** | **OLT configuration** | **Transmission rates**  (downstream/upstream) |
| Turbo Optics | Turbo optic | Turbo mode | 2Gbps/1Gbps |
| 1GE optic | Not supported |
| Turbo optic | None | 1Gbps/1Gbps |
| 1GE optic | 1Gbps/1Gbps |
| 10/10/1 Coexistence Optics | 1GE optic | None | 1Gbps/1Gbps |
| 10/1 optic | 10Gbps/1Gbps |
| 10/10 optic | 10Gbps/10Gbps |
| 10/10/1 Coexistence Optics | Turbo optic | Turbo mode | 2Gbps/1Gbps |
| 10/1 optic | 10Gbps/1Gbps |
| 10/10 optic | 10Gbps/10Gbps |

### Setting for Turbo PON mode

OLT Configuration has two modes of Turbo mode and None mode. When OLT is configured to be Turbo mode and the optic modules in both OLT and ONU are Turbo optic modules, the outcome speed will be 2Gbps/1Gbps which is expected as Turbo mode operation.

1. CLI sequence for Turbo PON mode setting

----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Switch[A/L](config-if-Tpon2/1)#shutdown

Switch[A/L](config-if-Tpon2/1)#pon speed 2Gbps

Switch[A/L](config-if-Tpon2/1)#no shutdown

...

----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

1. CLI sequence to release from Turbo PON mode (Returning to None mode)

----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Switch[A/L](config-if-Tpon2/1)#shutdown

Switch[A/L](config-if-Tpon2/1)#no pon speed 2Gbps

Switch[A/L](config-if-Tpon2/1)#no shutdown

...

----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------